



International Federation of
Library Associations and Institutions

UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual

Prepared by Permanent UNIMARC Committee (PUC)

Online edition

Version: 1.1.0, 2024

Edited by Gordana Mazić and Branka Badovinac with Saeedeh Akbari-Daryan, Maria Aslanidi, Héloïse Lecomte, Miguel Mimoso Correia, Florence Tfibel and Olga Zhlobinskaya

Endorsed by the IFLA Professional Council (March 2025).



IFLA, Permanent UNIMARC Committee (PUC), 2024.

©2024 by IFLA, Permanent UNIMARC Committee (PUC). This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International (CC BY 4.0) license. To view a copy of this license, visit:
<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0>

IFLA
P.O. Box 95312
2509 CH Den Haag
Netherlands
www.ifla.org

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ONLINE EDITION VERSIONS HISTORY
FOREWARDS TO EDITIONS
1 INTRODUCTION
2 DEFINITIONS
3 GUIDELINES FOR FORMAT DESIGN
4 FUNCTIONAL BLOCKS
5 GUIDELINES FOR MANUAL USE
6 FORMAT USE
7 EXPLANATORY NOTES
RECORD LABEL
DIRECTORY
0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK
1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK
CONTROL SUBFIELDS
2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
3-- NOTES BLOCK
4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK
5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
6-- SUBJECT ANALYSIS AND ENTITY HISTORY BLOCK
7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK
8-- SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK
9-- NATIONAL USE BLOCK

ONLINE EDITION VERSIONS HISTORY

Version	Version status	Release date	Notes
1.1.0	Official version	2025-01-20	Endorsed by the IFLA Professional Committee (March 2025). Edited by Gordana Mazić, Branka Badovinac with Saeedeh Akbari-Daryan, Maria Aslanidi, Héloïse Lecomte, Miguel Mimoso Correia, Florence Tfibel and Olga Zhlobinskaya
1.0.0	Published version	2023-10-24	Initial version. Not yet endorsed by the IFLA Professional Committee or Governing Board. Includes 2023 revision and updates. Edited by Gordana Mazić and Branka Badovinac.

Legend

Version: The version numbering of the online editions is determined by the type of updates and revisions. The structure of the version numbering is as follows X.Y.Z (e.g. 1.0.0). Major changes in modelling or approach to the structure of the format are recorded as a change to major version X, major updates or changes to the content of the format are recorded as a change to minor version X, editorial changes are recorded as a change to patch version Z.

Version status: The version status gives information on the implementation of the format. The statuses are as follows:

- *Official version:* published version, endorsed by IFLA
- *Published version:* stable version for implementation, but not yet endorsed by IFLA

FOREWARDS TO EDITIONS

Foreword to the Online Edition

The first version of the online edition of the UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual was published in 2023, replacing previous editions¹. It includes changes agreed upon by the UNIMARC Permanent Committee (PUC) from 2010 to 2023. This edition also includes corrections in the text and examples, a reorganisation of the appendices and a new manual structure (tables of subfields, occurrence, repeatability, history paragraphs).

The new UNIMARC Authorities Format documentation is an online integrated resource intended to be a permanently complete documentation and usually updated once a year. The Permanent UNIMARC Committee expresses its great appreciation to the Institute of Information Science, Maribor (Slovenia), who supported the preparation of the first version of the online edition.

The UNIMARC Authority Format was originally designed to carry information about the authorised forms of names, titles, and subjects used to create access points in bibliographic records. Since the FR family of conceptual models has expanded and, in particular, since the *IFLA Library Reference Model* (IFLA LRM) was developed, the UNIMARC Authorities format has evolved towards an explicit identification of the entities of the bibliographic information, detailed description of its characteristics and to support relationships between specific instances of these entities. By adopting the new concepts and terminology, the UNIMARC Authorities format online has modified the definitions of fields, subfields, and control subfields.

By harmonizing the two UNIMARC formats with IFLA LRM, UNIMARC can support cataloguing based on entity relationships while still supporting the use of the “classic” UNIMARC bibliographic and authority data scheme.

Gordana Mazić

October 2023

Foreword to the Third Edition

The third edition of the UNIMARC Authorities format is evidence of the last decade’s intensive developments and change of concept in the field of Universal Bibliographic Control, and, in particular, in the field of authority control, brought about by the necessity for efficient and economical sharing of authority data in the web environment in order to meet the needs of users in a qualitative and authoritative way.

The list of changes to the format since the publication of UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format, 2nd revised and enlarged edition in 2001 points to that fact.

The publication of the 2nd edition of Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records (GARR), immediately following the publication of the UNIMARC Manual in 2001, brought about what can be called a paradigm shift in the concept of UBC which has proved to have seminal impact on the further developments in the field. The UBC concept of requiring the use of the same form for headings globally, i.e., a uniform heading, is considered “not practical and [...] no longer necessary”, because “with computer capabilities developing more sophistication, we can link the authority records created in one country according to one set of cataloguing rules with those in another country to facilitate sharing of authority records and potentially to enable computer-assisted switching to display authorized forms”.³ The Guidelines subsequently change the terminology, and instead of the term “uniform heading” promote the

¹ Willer, M. & International Federation of Library Associations. (2009). *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* (3rd ed.). K.G. Saur. <https://doi.org/10.1515/9783598441820>.

² Riva, P., Le Boef, P. & Žumer, M. (2017). *IFLA Library Reference Model: A Conceptual Model for Bibliographic Information*. IFLA. <https://www.ifla.org/publications/node/11412>.

³ *Guidelines for Authority Records and References*. – 2nd ed./revised by the Working Group on GARE Revision. – München : K. G. Saur, 2001, p. ix.

use of “authorized heading”, although “uniform title” is preserved as a terminus technicus for the authorized form by which variant titles are collocated. It should also be noted that the Guidelines retain the 7 International Standard Authority Data Number area, yet they refer their reader to the discussions about the purpose and use of the ISADN which was started by the IFLA UBCIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN (MLAR),⁴ and followed up by the IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR).

The IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code’s Statement of International Cataloguing Principles published in February 2009⁵ confirm the new concept and the terminology of “authorized access point”, more precisely, “controlled access points” within the domain of the authority control. The issue of the ISADN is being dealt with in the report prepared by Barbara B. Tillett for the IFLA Working Group on FRANAR and published under the title *A Review of the Feasibility of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN)*. The report, also approved by the Standing Committee of the IFLA Cataloguing Section, recommends that “IFLA should not pursue the idea of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN) as it has been defined”, and that “IFLA should continue to monitor the progress of efforts of the ISO ISNI (International Standard Name Identifier) Working Group and the VIAF Project⁶ and any potential numbering that may result from those efforts”.⁷

The major undertaking of the Working Group on FRANAR, however, is the design of the conceptual model for authority data, based on the entity-relationship analysis technique which was introduced to the field of bibliographic control by Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records (FRBR) in 1998.⁸ The Functional Requirements for Authority Data: A Conceptual Model (FRAD) prepared by the Working Group and published in June 2009⁹ continue the work which the FRBR initiated by extending the model to authority data. Entities, which are the key objects of interest to users of authority data, and defined to form the fundamental basis for the FRAD conceptual model are Bibliographic Entities (those defined by the FRBR with additional entity Family), Name and/or Identifier, and Controlled Access Point. The relationships between these entities are defined as follows: bibliographic entity (e.g., a person) may be known by one or more names (appellation relationship), or can be assigned one or more identifiers (assignment relationship); names and identifiers serve as the basis for controlled access points which are eventually recorded in bibliographic or some other types of systems.¹⁰ Apart from the relationships between these primary entity types, FRAD specifies relationships between specific instances of these entities, such as relationships between bibliographic entities (e.g., person to person: pseudonymous or sibling relationship), relationships between various names of entities (e.g., earlier/later name relationship), and between controlled access points (e.g., parallel language or different rules relationships). The

⁴ *Mandatory Data Elements for Internationally Shared Resource Authority Records : Report of the IFLA UBCIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN*. – [Frankfurt/Main] : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme, 1998 (accessed: 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://archive.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-2/mlar.htm>.

⁵ *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles* (February 2009) (accessed: 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/statement-of-international-cataloguing-principles>.

⁶ VIAF: The Virtual International Authority File. A joint project with the Library of Congress, the Deutsche Nationalbibliothek, the Bibliothèque nationale de France and OCLC (accessed 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://www.oclc.org/research/projects/viaf/> [reference added by M.W.].

⁷ Tillett, Barbara B. *A Review of the Feasibility of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN)* / prepared for the IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records, edited by Glenn E. Patton, 1 July 2008; approved by the Standing Committee of the IFLA Cataloguing Section, 15 September 2008 (accessed: 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://archive.ifla.org/VII/d4/franar-numbering-paper.pdf>, p. 1.

⁸ *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records : Final Report* / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. – München : K. G. Saur, 1998. Electronic version (accessed 2009-06-14) available from: <http://archive.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/frbr.pdf>

⁹ *Functional Requirements for Authority Data: A Conceptual Model* / edited by Glenn Patton ; IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR). – Final Report, December 2008 / approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Cataloguing Section and IFLA Classification and Indexing Section, March 2009. – München : K. G. Saur, 2009.

¹⁰ Note that FRAD is a conceptual model and does not implicate any particular implementation: “the model focuses on data, regardless of how it may be packaged (e.g. in authority records)”, p. 1.

controlled access points are governed by rules, which in turn are applied by (bibliographic) agencies, two additional entities defined by the model.

The FRAD's clarity of concepts and precision in naming entities and their relationships influenced the change of terminology, definition of fields, and control subfield \$5, Relationship Control in UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format. The blocks are renamed to 2-- Authorized Access Point, 4-- Variant Access Point, 5-- Related Access Point, and 7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script, while tags designate names of the entities which the controlled access points represent, such as Personal Name, Corporate Body Name, Title. The new edition also shows the consistency with definitions of entities published in the Statement of International Cataloguing Principles (ICP). The vision that "computer capabilities [will] develop more sophistication" expressed in GARR's Introduction, and the recommendation that the idea of the ISADN "as has been defined" should not be pursued by IFLA, have both been incorporated into the new edition. Field 015, International Standard Authority Data Number is made obsolete, while a new field 003 Persistent Record Identifier is introduced, "open[ing] the possibilities of the UNIMARC authority record to be used in the web environment and by semantic web tools".¹¹

The new edition is also based on the 3rd edition of the UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format,¹² published in 2008, by which the two corresponding formats are updated, as well as on the comments and proposals from UNIMARC users and the members of the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. The extensions of the format include new fields such as music incipit, identifiers ISTC, ISWC, ISAN and ISRC, printer/publisher device, conventional name/title for legal and religious texts, and activity note pertaining to printer/publisher. It also includes changes in name and function of the fields such as biography and activity note, and place and date of publication, performance, provenance, etc. It is hoped that these, and other changes and additions to the UNIMARC Authorities format will promote values that IFLA stands for, and further the international sharing of authority data.

Mirna Willer

June 2009

Foreword to the Second Edition

This new edition of the UNIMARC Authorities format is the first revision since the format was published in 1991. That such a long period should elapse without revision testifies to the foresight and expertise of the IFLA Steering Group on UNIMARC Format for Authorities.

Responsibility for maintenance of the format now resides with the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. At its meeting in Zagreb in 1997, the PUC decided to prepare a new edition of the UNIMARC Authorities Format. The proposals for revision were agreed at the meeting in Lisbon in February 2000.

The revisions reflect developments in telecommunications and information technology and consequent evolution of the possibilities for universal bibliographic control. The development of communications protocols such as FTP and Z39.50 (ISO 23950) and more recently the explosion of the Internet and the World Wide Web has created an infrastructure in which bibliographic records can be freely and easily exchanged.

Despite projects such as the European project AUTHOR¹³, which demonstrated methodologies for sharing authority data, the exchange of authority data has lagged behind. IFLA established the Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and International Standard Authority Data Number¹⁴ to investigate the barriers to exchange of authority data. The recommendations of the MLAR group included the definition of data elements that should be mandatory in all authority records in order to facilitate exchange and reuse of authority data. The new edition incorporates these recommendations.

¹¹ See Definition and Notes on Field Contents of the 003 field.

¹² *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*. – 3rd edition edited by Alan Hopkinson. – München : K. G. Saur, 2008.

¹³ *AUTHOR: Transnational Application of National Name Authority Files*, final report, June 1998.
<http://www.bl.uk/information/author.pdf>.

¹⁴ *Mandatory data elements for internationally shared resource authority records: report of the IFLA UBCIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN*. IFLA UCBIM, 1998. <http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-2/mlar.htm>.

When the first edition was published the Internet was virtually unknown and the World Wide Web did not exist. They are now pervasive and changes have been implemented to support links to Web resources and to facilitate web cataloguing. The development of a shared environment means that we are more and more dependent on each other. PUC has recognized this by tracking developments in other authority formats and adopting them for UNIMARC/A. There is no substitute for practical experience; the PUC could not develop the format without the recommendations for improvement received from UNIMARC users. Finally, to make use of the format easier the content and style are updated for consistency with the UNIMARC Bibliographic Format.

The pace of change is accelerating and therefore it is unlikely that the format will remain stable for the next ten years. As previously mentioned, the evolution of UNIMARC is determined in large part by the requirements of the users. Details of how the format is maintained will be found in the Introduction below.

Mirna Willer, Chair Permanent UNIMARC Committee

Foreword to the First Edition

The establishment of UNIMARC as the format for the international exchange of bibliographic records created an immediate need to develop a companion format to transmit the records for authoritative forms of headings. IFLA responded to this need by first developing a standard for content and display of authority information: Guidelines for Authority and Reference Entries (GARE). GARE sets forth the data elements that appear in authority and reference entries in eye-readable form. It thus serves as a foundation for building the machine format, UNIMARC/Authorities, to exchange the specified data.

Since UNIMARC/Authorities is part of the UNIMARC group of interdependent formats there are several standards to which it must adhere. These relate to the three basic parts of a machine-readable record format:

- 1) The structure of the record, which is the physical representation and layout of the information.
- 2) The content designators for the record, which identify and supply information about elements.
- 3) The data content of the record, which are the data that are being communicated.

First the authorities format must be structure-compatible with UNIMARC, since the two types of records will be used together in systems. Thus the International Organization for Standardization standard format for bibliographic information interchange (ISO 2709) must be utilized choosing the same options as in UNIMARC. Second, the content designation for headings must be the same as that used in UNIMARC, where the same data elements appear in both formats. The interaction of headings in bibliographic and authority records should not be burdened with differences in content designation, since the degree of compatibility will have a direct effect on the ease of understanding and use of the format. This generally means subfields should correspond for like data elements, although tagging will differ because of the different functions of data elements in bibliographic and authority records. Also, the user of the UNIMARC formats is best served if the same guidelines for design are used in this format wherever the concepts correspond. Another standard that the format must follow is the new GARE. The basic data elements in certain types of authority records are specified by the GARE, which identifies the headings, relationships, and information that comprise authority entries and reference entries.

The form of the data recorded in the authority record is subject to the rules and codes used by an agency that creates the record. There are, however, recommendations that have been published by IFLA for the form of headings, such as Form and Structure of Corporate Headings, and these should be followed where possible. The IFLA recommendations are used by or influence many cataloguing codes.

An individual agency using UNIMARC/Authorities will have its own rules and conventions for when records are created, what references are included in records, and how parallel headings forms are carried in records. For example, an agency may make no authority records for personal names, or may set a numerical limit to cross references. This format can still be used by such agencies, although agencies that receive their records should be made aware of the conventions of the sending agency.

When a model for an international authority system is worked out by IFLA, targets for data element requirements may be set so that records exchanged internationally will have more consistency. Such a

model may also indicate the need to add data elements to UNIMARC/Authorities in order to accommodate and facilitate exchange in a world-wide environment.

The IFLA group responsible for the GARE was the IFLA Working Group on an International Authority System which was organized in 1979 by the Section on Information Technology and the Section on Cataloguing to carry out a number of tasks relating to the international exchange of authority data. In 1983, that work was largely completed with the submission of the GARE to IFLA committees for approval. That Working Group suggested that one task, the development of a format, be undertaken immediately. Thus the Steering Group on a UNIMARC Format for Authorities was formed with the following members:

Marie-Louise Bachmann, Kungliga Biblioteket, Stockholm

Christine Boßmeyer, Chairperson, Deutsche Bibliothek, Frankfurt

Diana B. Dack, National Library of Australia, Canberra

Tom Delsey, National Library of Canada, Ottawa

J. M. Feyen, Pica Samenwerkingsverband, Koninklijke Bibliotheek, Den Haag

Françoise Finelli-Lemelle, Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris

Günter Franzmeier, Staatsbibliothek Preußischer Kulturbesitz, Berlin

Paula Goossens, Koninklijke Bibliotheek Albert I., Brussels

Anthony Long, The British Library, London

The project editor for the UNIMARC/Authorities format was Sally McCallum. The Steering Group was responsible for general advice and for comments on draft texts. This work was mainly carried out by correspondence. Three successive drafts were sent out to all Steering Group members for comment: 1st draft 1984-26-05; 2nd draft 1985-10-21; 3rd draft 1987-03-13. Based on the comments received the 4th draft was prepared for wider distribution and comment. In February of 1988 the 4th draft was circulated to members of the Section on Cataloguing and the Section on Information Technology.

In closing, I would like to thank Sally McCallum who carried the main burden in drafting the format and preparing the documents, and all members of the Steering Group who contributed so much of their time and effort to the development of the UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Christine Boßmeyer

May 1989

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose and Scope

The primary purpose of UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual is to facilitate the international exchange of authority data in machine-readable form among national bibliographic agencies.

UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual specifies the tags, indicators and subfield identifiers to be assigned to authority, reference, and general explanatory records in machine-readable form. These records are created to provide guidance on the use in a catalogue of names (personal, family, corporate, meeting, geographic, trademark and printer/publisher device), titles for works not entered under specific authors, titles for works by individual authors, and topical subjects. These names, titles and topical subjects are used on bibliographic records as primary, secondary and alternative responsibility access points, as series access points, and as subject access points.

The record format takes into account the requirements specified in Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records (GARR) for records involving names and titles for anonymous classics, and in Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries (GSARE) for subjects.

UNIMARC is currently in the process of gradual alignment to the *IFLA Library Reference Model* (IFLA LRM) (formerly Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records (FRBR)) based cataloguing principles and rules (such as Resource Description and Access - RDA). The fields/subfields that are implemented or modified accordingly to IFLA LRM (or formerly FRBR) based practice have a special note and/or other tags (such as in label, description of data elements, examples etc.)

This process also brings the new terminology, which is accommodated in the manual in the extent of the data elements usability and the context of implementing the new cataloguing practices.

Authority records for series entries are limited to access point information in this format. Series treatment data that is included in authority records by some agencies is not accommodated.

1.2 Use

Each national bibliographic agency is responsible for the conversion of authority records into UNIMARC/Authorities format for transmission to other national agencies and can receive machine-readable records in the UNIMARC/Authorities format from other national agencies. The UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual is intended to provide the information required for a range of bibliographic activities. It therefore includes content designation which may be essential to one or another of these activities, but not to all.

1.3 Format Maintenance

UNIMARC is maintained by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee (PUC), a review group under IFLA. All changes are made exclusively by the PUC, based on the development of other IFLA standards and the needs of the institutions that create or use UNIMARC records.

Proposals for changes and additions to the UNIMARC formats are discussed annually at meetings of the PUC. Proposals should be submitted to the national UNIMARC committee or a library institution working with the PUC. For UNIMARC users from countries without professional institutions affiliated with the PUC, it is possible to submit proposals directly to the PUC after prior consultation. Instructions are available at the PUC webpage.

1.4 Standards

UNIMARC/Authorities format assumes the use of the following standards:

ISO 962 - 1974: Information processing – Implementation of the 7-bit coded character set and its 7-bit and 8-bit extensions on 9-track 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) magnetic tape

ISO 1001 - 1986: Information processing – File structure and labelling of magnetic tapes for information interchange

ISO/IEC 2022 - 1994: Information technology – Character code structure and extension techniques and ISO/IEC 2022/Cor.1 1999

ISO 2375 - 1985: Data processing – Procedure for registration of escape sequences

ISO 2709 - 1996: Information and documentation – Format for information exchange

ISO 3166-1 1997: Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions -- Part 1: Country codes. Amendments issued occasionally; the list published in UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format, 3rd ed. is reproduced as at 1 February 2008.

ISO 3166-2 - 1998: Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions -- Part 2: Country subdivision codes

ISO 3166-3 - 1999: Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions -- Part 3: Code for formerly used names of countries

ISO 3901 - 2001: Information and documentation -- International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)

ISO 6630 - 1986: Documentation -- Bibliographic control characters

ISO 8601 - 2004: Data elements and interchange formats -- Information interchange -- Representation of dates and times

ISO 15511 - 2005: International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL)

ISO 15706-1 - 2002: Information and documentation -- International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN) - Part 1: Audiovisual work identifier

ISO 15707 - 2001: Information and documentation -- International Standard Musical Work Code (ISWC)

ISO 21047 - 2009: Information and documentation -- International Standard Text Code (ISTC)

Other Related Documents

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. Functional Requirements for Authority Data : A Conceptual Model. – München : K. G. Saur, 2009.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records : Final Report. – München : K. G. Saur, 1998.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. Guidelines for Authority Records and References. – 2nd ed. – München : K. G. Saur, 2001.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries. – München : K. G. Saur, 1993.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. Statement of International Cataloguing Principles. 2016. Available at: https://www.ifla.org/files/assets/cataloguing/icp/icp_2016-en.pdf.

Riva, P., Le Bœuf, P. & Žumer, M. IFLA Library Reference Model. 2017. Available at: https://www.ifla.org/files/assets/cataloguing/frbr-lrm/ifla-lrm-august-2017_rev201712.pdf.

UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format. – 3rd ed. – München : K. G. Saur, 2008.

1.5 History and Superseded Documentation

1991 - *UNIMARC/Authorities: Universal Format for Authorities* (1st edition)

2001 - *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* (2nd edition)

2009 - *UNIMARC Manual – Authorities Format* (3rd edition)

2023 - *UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual* (online edition, version 1.0.0)

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Updated paragraphs: Purpose and Scope.
2009	Updated paragraphs: Standards.
2009	Updated paragraphs: Other Related Documents.
2012	Updated paragraphs: standards (ISO 15706-2:2007: Information and documentation -- International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN) -- Part 2: Version identifier).
2012	Text errata.
2021	Added section 1.5. Update of section 1.1.
2024	Update section 1.3. Text edit.

2 DEFINITIONS

The terms defined below are those used in special sense in UNIMARC/Authorities format; terms used in their normal bibliographic sense are not defined. A more complete listing of definitions relating to parts of an authority record are contained in Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records (GARR), Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries (GSARE), Functional Requirements for Authority Data (FRAD), IFLA Library Reference Model (IFLA LRM) and Statement of International Cataloguing Principles (ICP).

2.1 Record Types

Authority record: A machine-readable record for which the initial element is the authorized access point for a person, corporate body, work, trademark, printer/publisher device, topical subject, place access or form genre or physical characteristics, as established by the cataloguing agency responsible. In addition to the authorized access point, the record contains, as applicable: information notes; a record of all variant and related access points from which references have been made; authorized access points in other language and/or script; classification and entity history information; notes recording sources consulted, etc.; an identification of the cataloguing agency responsible for the entry; persistent record identifier and international standard identifiers for entities described in the record.

General explanatory record: A machine-readable record for which the initial element normally consists of a truncated or otherwise stylized or exemplary form, from which the user is directed to a general class or defined category of access points. It serves to inform the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography, etc., of a convention that applies either generally or to a defined category of access points, and to provide guidance in locating such access points.

Reference record: A machine-readable record for which the initial element is either a variant access point or an authorized access point, and which is designed to direct the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography, etc., either from the variant access point to the appropriate authorized access point (i.e., a “see” reference), or from the authorized access point to related access points (i.e., a “see also” reference). Reference records are defined only for variant access points.

2.2 Access Point Types

Access point:

The initial element of an entry used as the principal filing element when the entry is arranged in an alphabetical listing. See also authorized access point, reference access point, and general explanatory access point.

The word access point may also be used in terms such as “authorized access point”, “variant access point”, etc., to refer to the status of an element as it relates to other similar elements, and in those cases is used independently of its function within the authority or reference record. See also authorized access point, authorized access point in other language and/or script, related access point, variant access point, and alternative script access point.

Terms such as “corporate name access point” and “personal name access point” and “title access point” may be used to designate the type of access point by reference to the type of name or title on which the access point is based, without regard to its function or relationship to other access points.

Base access point: The base access point is that part of the access point that identifies the name of the entity, excluding any qualifying data. For example, in the access point 200#1\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15-- to 160-?\$cimprimeur-libraire, the base access point is “\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico”, and the language of this base access point is Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i.e., “\$cimprimeur-libraire”.

Controlled access point: An access point recorded in an authority record. Controlled access points include authorized forms of names as well as those designated as variant forms.

2.3 Access Points Categorized by Function Within a Record

Authorized access point: The access point for an authority record.

Reference access point: The access point for a reference record.

General explanatory access point: The access point for a general explanatory record.

2.4 Access Points Categorized by Relationship to Other Access Points

Authorized access point: An access point constructed using the preferred name as the basis of the form to be followed without variation.

Authorized access point in other language and/or script: An alternative form of the authorized access point based on another language and/or script form of the name, title or subject.

Related access point: One of two or more authorized access points for the name of the same or related entities, each of which is bibliographically related to the other(s).

Variant access point: An access point in a form other than that established as the authorized access point for the name of the same entity. Generally, such an access point is either based on a variant name sometimes used by the person, corporate body or family itself, or sometimes used by others to identify the person, corporate body, trademark, family, printer/publisher device or work; or constructed on a pattern different from that used to establish the authorized access point. It may be an authorized subject access point that is not the entry element part.

Alternative script access point: An authorized access point represented in another script.

2.5 Record Components

Tracing: The identification within an authority record of all access points other than authorized access point from which a reference is to be made directing the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography, etc., to and from the authorized access point which serves as the access point for the authority record. The tracing is designed to provide for the generation of references and assist the cataloguer in readily determining what references have been made.

Information note: A note of the type that is generally given in catalogues, bibliographies, etc., under a authorized access point, a reference access point, or a general explanatory access point for the purpose of explaining the relationship between that access point and other access points that are referenced from it.

Primary entity: The entity, named in the 2-- block of the record, for which the record was created. Data in the 1-- block generally pertain to characteristics of the primary entity.

2.6 Technical Elements of Records

Content designator: Codes identifying data elements and/or providing additional information about a data element. Content designators consist of tags, indicators and subfield identifiers.

Control subfield: A subfield, defined similarly in many fields throughout the format, used to provide specific identifiers, relationships, and sources of terms and codes. Among its uses are also to provide links to both authority and bibliographic records, to specific institutions, and to other fields within a single record.

Data element: The smallest unit of information that is explicitly identified. Within a variable field, a data element is identified by a subfield identifier and it forms a subfield. Within the record label, directory, and fixed length subfields, the data elements are identified by their character positions.

Data element identifier: *See* Subfield identifier.

End of record mark: A control character used at the end of each record to separate it from the next. Also known as the Record terminator.

Field: A defined character string, identified by a tag, which contains data.

Field separator: A control character used at the end of each variable field to separate it from the next field (control function 1/14 of ISO 646).

Fill character: A character used in specified character positions to indicate that no data is available to supply the appropriate value in that position, although that character position is applicable.

Fixed length subfield: A subfield whose length is invariant, being determined for all occurrences by provision of this format. A fixed-length subfield may be defined to contain one or more data elements identified by relative character position. Fixed-length subfields may occur in both Variable data field with fixed-length.

Indicator: A character (numeric or alphabetic) associated with a field which supplies additional information about the contents of the field, about the relationship between the field and other fields in the record, or about the action required in certain data manipulation processes.

IFLA LRM Data elements: Data elements that should be formulated to the provisions of IFLA LRM (formerly FRBR) based cataloguing practices and rules.

Record terminator: The final character in each record (control function 1/13 from ISO 646).

Source format: The data format in which a machine-readable record already existed before being converted into UNIMARC.

Subfield: A defined unit of information within a field (*see also* Data element).

Subfield identifier: A code consisting of two characters to identify individual subfields within a field. The first character is always control function 1/15 from ISO 646 and the second character is either numeric or alphabetic. Subfield identifiers are synonymous with data element identifiers.

Tag: A series of three characters used to specify the name or label of an associated field.

Variable control field: A field that is identified by a field tag (00x tags) but that do not contain either indicator position or subfield codes.

Variable data field: A field in which the length may vary from one occurrence to the next. A variable data field may contain one or more data elements or subfields. The length of the fields in characters includes the number of characters required for the textual data, indicators, subfield identifiers and the field separator.

Variable fields: Fields identified by a three character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. There are two types of variable fields, Variable Control field and Variable data field.

2.7 Status of Content Designators and Data Elements

Deleted: Designator or element determined with near certainty to have never been used and therefore available for redefinition in a format.

Obsolete: Designator or element may have been used in records and may continue to appear in records created prior to the date the content designator or data element was made obsolete. Obsolete elements are not to be used in new records.

Provisional: Designator or element established for the time being but subject to further refinement.

Reserved: Designator or element defined for future or local use.

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in terminology: Record Types.
2009	Changes in terminology: Access Point Types: change for Heading throughout the Manual.
2009	Updated paragraphs: introductory paragraph.
2018	Added paragraphs: Status of Content Designators and Data Elements.
2019	Added new definition: Control Subfield.

DEFINITIONS

2024	Alignment of definitions in 2.6. with UNIMARC/Bibliographic format.

3 GUIDELINES FOR FORMAT DESIGN

UNIMARC is designed according to an agreed set of principles. These have been adopted for UNIMARC/Authorities format.

- 1) Tags should identify a field in two respects: i) the type of character string (e.g., a personal name) and ii) the function the character string performs in the record (e.g., tracing). These aspects will be shown by assigning specific values to the character positions of the tags. Tags may be both numeric and alphabetic. First assignment will be numeric values, expanded to alphabetic values (lower case preferred) when required.
- 2) Indicators should be tag dependent but used as consistently as possible across all fields. Indicators may be both numeric and alphabetic. First assignment will be numeric values, expanded to alphabetic values (lower case preferred) when required.
- 3) Subfield identifiers will be tag dependent, but, as far as possible, common data elements will be identified by the same subfield identifiers across fields. Subfield identifiers may be both numeric and alphabetic. First assignment will be alphabetic values (lower case preferred), expanded to numeric values when required. Subfield identifiers will be given values for identification rather than for file arrangement. There will be no specified order for subfield identifiers, as order is determined by the data. (see section 5.4)
- 4) The fields on an authority record have been regarded as relating primarily to broad categories of information such as “Authorized Access Point”, “Related Access Point” etc. In a machine-readable record the primary grouping of fields will be according to these fundamental categories.
- 5) Descriptive information carried in notes is not intended for use as access points.

History

2021	Errata/text edit.
2024	Errata/text edit.

4 FUNCTIONAL BLOCKS

The fields of the authority or reference record are divided into functional blocks; the first (left most) digit of the tag indicates the block of the field.

0-- Identification Block: contains numbers that identify the record or the entity for which the record has been created.

1--Coded Information Block: contains fixed length data elements (frequently coded) describing various aspects of the record or data.

2--Authorized Access Point Block: contains the authorized, reference, or general explanatory access point for which the record has been created.

3--Notes Block: contains notes, intended for public display, that: 1) explain the relationship between the record access point (2--) and other access points; 2) contribute to the identification of the entity described in the authority record.

4--Variant Access Point Block: contains variant access points from which a reference is to be made to see the access point of the record.

5--Related Access Point Block: contains related authorized access points from which a reference is to be made to see also the access point of the record.

6--Classification and Entity History Block: contains classification numbers and information, as well as specific entity history information that are related to the access point of the record.

7--Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block: contains a form of the record access point (2--) in another language and/or script and links to another record in which that form is the 2-- authorized access point.

8--Source Information Block: contains the source of the record, and cataloguer's notes about the data not intended for public display.

9--National Use Block: contains data local to the originator of the record. Field tags will not be defined in UNIMARC Authorities Format Manual for intersystem exchange.

5 GUIDELINES FOR MANUAL USE

5.1 Levels of Required Data Elements

If the field is present at least one of the subfields is required.

Mandatory field/subfield (M) is a data element that is required in every authority record. The fill character (|) is not permitted in mandatory data elements, if there is no other instruction of data input requirement given.

Mandatory field/subfield if applicable/available (MA) is a data element that must be present in a bibliographic record if it is appropriate for the resource being described and if the bibliographic information is available. The fill character (|) is not permitted in data elements that are mandatory if applicable. If the field is present it must include MA subfield(s) if there are any and if there is no other instruction of data input requirement given.

Optional field/subfield (O) is an optional data element that is not required in a bibliographic record, but may be present if desired.

5.1.1 Mandatory Fields

In addition to the Record Label and Directory, the following fields must be present in the machine-readable records:

001 Record Identifier

100 General Processing Data (certain data elements only)

152 Rules

2-- Authorized Access Point

801 Originating Source

The presence of other fields depends upon the particular record being converted into machine-readable form. The data content of a record is controlled by the cataloguing code and practice of the bibliographic agency responsible for the creation of the record, i.e., the presence or absence of a data element is determined, not only by format specifications, but by the national cataloguing code or practice. However, if a data element is present, it must be fully content designated according to the prescriptions defined in this document. Elements of information that are represented in coded form are generally not specified by cataloguing codes. Certain of these coded data elements are mandatory and are so identified in the format.

5.2 Control Functions

Control functions permitted in UNIMARC/Authorities format are confined to those used for subfield codes, field separators, and record terminator, as specified in ISO 2709; character set escape sequences as specified in ISO 2022; and those for indicating filing information, superscripts, and subscripts as specified in ISO 6630. No control functions are allowed to specify typographical functions such as italics. The use of control functions in UNIMARC/Authorities format records is fully described in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix C.

5.3 Field and Subfield Repetition

If the word “repeatable” is associated with a field, then that field may occur more than once in a record. If R (= repeatable) is associated with a subfield identifier, then that subfield may occur more than one time in an occurrence of the field.

5.4 Subfield Order

There is no specified order implied in the values of the subfield identifiers. Subfield identifiers are assigned values for identification purposes, not for file arrangement. However, when control subfields are used in the field, they precede all other subfields in that field, except subfields \$2, \$4 and \$R. Subfield \$2 follows

directly the subfields with the name access point, controlled vocabulary terms, class number, format, etc and subfield \$4 follows the subfields that contain the name access point.

5.5 Fill Character

A complete record, fully content designated, is naturally the preferred record for international exchange purposes. In some cases, however, it may not be possible to convert a national record into the UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format and provide the full content designation and coded information as prescribed. To minimize the ambiguities that could result if the indication of this lack of information were left to the discretion of each national agency faced with the circumstances described above, a character, hereafter referred to where this occurs as a “fill character”, is used in place of the required information. This character will be the “|” (vertical line, code table position 7/12 in ISO 646).

The fill character can be used whenever a content designator or coded information cannot be determined by the encoding agency. It thus occurs in the following situations: i) encoding agency does not use this content designator or code this information, or ii) encoding agency uses this content designator or codes this information but in this particular record does not know the correct value, or iii) encoding agency uses similar values for this content designator or coded information but they cannot be translated to the exact UNIMARC/Authorities format equivalents.

The following rules apply to the use of the fill character: fill characters may only be used for indicators and coded data values that are not mandatory, thus fill characters may not be used in the Record Label or Directory, as subfield identifiers or to replace punctuation or other special characters in the data portion of fields.

5.6 Coded Data Values

The following conventions are used in the assignment of coded values in the Record Label and coded data subfields:

u	unknown	Used when codes are being assigned, but the appropriate specific value cannot be determined.
v	combination	Used when a combination of the individual coded characteristics occurs in the entity.
x	not applicable	Used when a characteristic is not appropriate for the type of entity being described.
y	not present	Used when the characteristic being coded is not present for the entity being described.
z	other	Used when codes are being assigned and the characteristics of the entity are known, but none of the defined codes is appropriate.
	fill character	Used when no attempt is being made to assign the codes.

5.7 Punctuation

GARR prescribed punctuation is not carried at the subfield boundaries. GARR prescribed punctuation consists of = (used with parallel access points), <, >, <<, and >> symbols (used with tracings), ; and , (used in the source area).

All other punctuation in access points, notes, etc., is carried in the record according to the practice of the bibliographic agency issuing the record. Examples in this manual reflect different kinds of practices in introducing punctuation at the subfield borders.

5.8 General Organization

The format is presented in RECORD LABEL and DATA FIELDS – FIELD DESCRIPTIONS. Before block 2--, a special section is given to CONTROL SUBFIELDS.

The DATA FIELD DESCRIPTIONS are presented according to the following outline:

Field Definition and Scope: The content and scope of each field is briefly defined. It also includes a statement explaining or qualifying the occurrence of the field.

Subfields & Occurrence: The table summarizes the information on the field/subfield repeatability options and level of data element input requirement (M - Mandatory, MA – Mandatory if applicable, O - Optional).

Indicators: The table summarizes the indicator values.

Indicators Description: The explanation of indicator values.

Subfields Description: The subfields are listed in order, each being followed by a definition and, where applicable, a note as to its repeatability and whether it is mandatory.

Notes on Field Contents: This part discusses the data content of the fields and explains the interrelation between the subfields within the field. It includes notes about ISBD, FRBR/IFLA-LRM equivalents, where applicable, and about punctuation, as well as making recommendations about the form of the contents of the field.

Related Fields: This part lists fields or data elements that contain data related to the contents of the field.

Examples: This part consists of examples, many of which are referred to in the text in the other parts. They illustrate the conditions that are described in the preceding text.

History: This part gives details of major changes to the field.

If there is no relevant information for a section of the field description, that part of the outline is omitted.

5.9 Updates Notation

Updates accepted by PUC are indicated with **grey highlighted colour**. The colour is cleared when new updates/manual version are published. All changes and updates are recorded in section History and in the separated documentation maintained by PUC.

History

2021	Errata/text edit. Added sections 5.1, 5.8 and 5.9.
2024	Errata/text edit. Update section. 5.4.

6 FORMAT USE

6.1 Types of Records

6.2 Authority Records

This format is designed to support primarily the communication of authority records for authorized access points. These records may also carry tracings of variant or related authorized access points (as outlined in GARR, 0.3.1) from which reference records are generated for display. A 4-- field is used for a “see from” reference tracing containing a variant form of the authorized access point. A 5-- field is used for a “see also from” reference tracing containing a related authorized access point. The reference record can be generated from a tracing as desired for display.

Example:

210 02\$aPittsburgh Research Center [authorized access point]
410 01\$aUnited States.\$bBureau of Mines.\$bPittsburgh Research Center [variant access point as see reference tracing]
510 02\$5a\$aPittsburgh Mining and Safety Research Center [related access point as see also reference tracing]

In exceptional cases, references are carried in authority records in note form: field 305, Textual See Also Reference Note. Reference notes are used when a reference is too complex to be adequately constructed from one or more tracings. The 2-- authorized access point is also generally traced as see also reference tracing in a 5-- field of each of the records for access points mentioned in the 305 note. Such tracings would usually have the Reference Suppression Code in the \$5 subfield set to suppress automatic generation of a simple reference, since the 305 reference note provides the reference.

Example:

Record 1 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aJapp,\$bAlexander H.
305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, see also\$bGray, E. Condor\$aand\$bPage, H.A. [related access points in textual see also reference note]
Record 2 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aGray,\$bE. Condor
500 #1\$5z0\$aJapp,\$bAlexander H. [related access point as see also reference tracing with display suppressed]
Record 3 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aPage,\$bH.A.
500 #1\$5z0\$aJapp,\$bAlexander H. [related access point as see also reference tracing with display suppressed]

6.3 Reference Records

Reference records for variant access points are only made when see references are too complex to be adequately generated from see reference tracings in authority records. The reference record contains the variant access point in the 2-- field and a 310 Textual See Reference Note. The 2-- access point is also generally traced as a see reference tracing in a 4-- field of the authority record for each of the authorized access points referred to in the 310 note. These tracings would generally have the Reference Suppression Code in the \$5 subfield set to suppress automatic generation of a simple reference, since the reference record provides the reference.

Example:

Record 1 (Reference record)
200 #1\$aKacew\$bRomain [variant access point as reference access point]
310 0#\$aÉcrit sous deux pseudonymes\$bAjar, Émile\$bGary, Romain [textual see reference note]
Record 2 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aAjar\$bÉmile
400 #1\$5z0\$aKacew\$bRomain [variant access point as see reference tracing with display suppressed]
Record 3 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aGary\$bRomain
400 #1\$5z0\$aKacew\$bRomain [variant access point as see reference tracing with display suppressed]

6.4 General Explanatory Records

General explanatory records are made when see references from explanatory access points are required. The general explanatory record contains an explanatory access point in the 2-- field and a 320 General Explanatory Reference Note. The 2-- explanatory access point is not traced on any authority records.

Example:

210 12\$aConference... [general explanatory access point]
320 ##\$aConference proceedings are entered under the name of the conference, etc., or the title of the publication if the conference, etc., lacks a name. Thus, see also: Symposium..., Workshop..., etc., [general explanatory reference note]

6.5 Relationships Between Access Points

6.6 Parallel Data

Option 1

A general principle for the construction of a record using this format is that one form of one access point is being described and that access point is appropriate for a catalogue in the language designated by the 100 field. The reference tracings constitute the reference structure for that access point in that catalogue.

If a cataloguing agency needs to construct a parallel catalogue based on another language, the agency may want to transmit equivalent or parallel language forms of the 2-- access point and the notes and tracings appropriate to the parallel access points. It is not recommended that the notes and tracings for the parallel access points based on language differences be co-resident in a single authority record. In using this format, these parallel access points should have separate authority records in which they are the authorized access point and where their reference structure will be recorded in the 4-- and 5-- reference tracing and 3-- note fields.

Note that when these parallel access points are in a different script, in addition to being in a different language, they are still encoded following the rules for parallel data. If the access points are in a different script but the same language as their corresponding fields then the rules for alternative scripts should be followed.

The records for the different formulations of the access point designed for different language catalogues may be linked through the 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields. In each authority record, each parallel access point and its associated authority record identifier (subfield \$3) may be recorded in 7-- fields.

Example:

Record 1
001 12345
210 02\$aNational Library of Canada
<Notes and tracings for an English language catalogue>

710 02\$367890\$8frefre\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada
Record 2
001 67890
210 02\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada
<Notes and tracings for a French language catalogue>
710 02\$312345\$8engeng\$aNational Library of Canada

Option 2

Alternatively, an agency may treat parallel forms of the 2-- authorized access point as simple variants or references: 4-- or 5-- reference tracings with or without specifying language. The reference structures of the parallel forms are not needed and are not included in the record. The choice of technique depends on the practices of the establishing agency.

Example:

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaswey0103####ba0
215 ##\$8sweswe\$aSverige
415 ##\$8sweeng\$aSweden
415 ##\$8swerus\$aŠveciâ
415 ##\$8swefre\$aSuède

It should be noted that a distinction is made for a given record between:

- 1) the language of cataloguing, used for the qualifiers in the access points (2--), variant access points (4--), related access points (5--), authorized access points in other language and/or script (7--), and for notes (3--) and information phrases (\$0);
- 2) the language of the base access point, that is to say the part of the access point that identifies the entity excluding any qualifying data. For example: in the access point 200#1\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15-- to 160-?\$cimprimeur-libraire, the base access point is “\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico”, and the language of this base access point is Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i.e., “\$cimprimeur-libraire”.

6.7 Alternative Script Data

The script of cataloguing (access point, notes, tracings, etc.) is identified in the 100 field of the record. Some agencies need to record access points, notes, and tracings in more than one script form because of transliteration and alternative script orthographies used for a language (e.g., kana and kanji scripts for Japanese; devanagari, khmer, and lao scripts for Pali). Alternative script representations of the access points, notes, and the tracings may be co-resident in an authority record or may reside in separate linked records. Note, however, that if the alternative script representations differ in language from their corresponding access points, then the rules for parallel data apply.

When the alternative script representations are co-resident, then the alternative script forms of the 2-- record access point are recorded in repeatable 2-- access point fields, with a \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point subfield that indicates the difference from the script defined in the 100 field. The alternative script forms of notes or tracings are carried as repeated tags in their respective blocks. The various script forms of the same note or tracing are linked through a \$6 linking subfield and the scripts are identified by a \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point subfield.

Example:

001 82-6290
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
200 #1\$7ba0yba0a\$8engrus\$aGlinka,\$bMihail Ivanovič
200 #1\$7ba0yca0y\$8engrus\$aГлинка,\$bМихаил Иванович

If the alternative script representations reside in separate records, then the records are linked through 7-- authorized access point fields which contain the alternative script form of the 2-- field. The 7-- contains a \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point subfield. The record control number of the authority record for the alternative script form of the access point may be recorded in the 7-- field.

Examples:

EX 1
Record 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0102####ba0
215 ##\$aUnited States
415 ##\$aUSA
715 ##\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$aСоединенные штаты
Record 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
215 ##\$aСоединенные штаты
415 ##\$aСША
715 ##\$7ba0yba0y\$8engeng\$aUnited States
EX 2
Record 1
001 82-6290
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy010302####ba0
200 #1\$7ba0yba0a\$8engrus\$aGlinka,\$bMihail Ivanovič
<Notes and tracings for a Latin script catalogue>
700 #1\$382-3498\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$aГ линка,\$bМихаил Иванович
Record 2
001 82-3498
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy010203####ca0
200 #1\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$a Г линка,\$bМихаил Иванович
<Notes and tracings for a Cyrillic script catalogue>
700 #1\$382-6290\$7ba0yba0a\$8engrus\$aGlinka,\$bMihail Ivanovič

6.8 Different Rule Data

A general principle for the establishment of access points in an authority record is that their form is controlled by one set of cataloguing rules, whether descriptive or subject, identified in 152 Rule field. However, a catalogue can contain, for various reasons, access points or authority records as such that are established according to different set of rules. In the case when these access points or the authority record refer to the same entity, a relationship should be established.

Some agencies may need to record different rule data as access points co-resident in an authority record, or may need to record them in separate linked record supported by the full authority record structure (e.g., preferred, variant etc. access points, notes, source information). When the different rule data are co-resident in an authority record, then the different rule form(s) of the 2-- access point are recorded in repeatable 4-- variant access point field(s), with the code “n” in the \$5 Relationship control subfield indicating the specific type of relationship. When the different rule data are recorded in a separate authority record, then the different rule forms of the 2-- access points are recorded in 5-- related access point fields, with the \$5 Relationship control subfield indicating the specific type of relationship.

Examples:

EX 1
152 ##\$aPPIAK

200 #1\$aMirković\$bMijo
400 #1\$5e\$aBalota\$bMate
500 #1\$2uni-PPIAK\$5n\$5f\$aMirković\$bMijo
500 #1\$2uni-PPIAK\$5n\$5e\$aBalota\$bMate

The real name Mijo Mirković and the pseudonym Mate Balota are treated as related access points according to the use of PPIAK (Croatian) cataloguing rules in the online catalogue with UNIMARC format for authority records implementation. The pseudonym Mate Balota is treated as a variant access point according to PPIAK.

EX 2
152 ##\$apsbo
210 01\$aГермания\$bВерховное главнокомандование вооруженными силами\$bУправление разведки и контрразведки
510 02\$2nlr_sh\$5\$aАбвер

Descriptive cataloguing and subject system use different forms of corporate name. 5-- block is used to establish relationship between these forms.

6.9 Composite Access Points

In UNIMARC/Authorities, access points or *parts* of access points are designated by field tag as one of several types: personal name, corporate or meeting name, territorial or geographic name, trademark, printer/publisher device, family name, title for the work, name/title, collective title, name/collective title, topical subject, place access, form, genre or physical characteristics.

If the access point is composed of a name *and* title, a special name/title field is defined. Two techniques may be used: the embedded field technique and standard subfields technique. These techniques are described under the filed 240 description. For a fuller description of these techniques see the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, as the basic techniques are the same as those used in the UNIMARC 4-- block.

If the access point is composed of a territorial name followed by a corporate or meeting name, the access point is considered a corporate or meeting name.

If the access point is composed of a name, title, trademark, etc., or topical followed by subject subdivisions, the subject subdivisions are carried in \$j, \$x, \$y, and \$z subfields of the name, title, or topical subject that they follow. In name/title entries, the subject subdivisions reside in the embedded title field.

6.10 Outline of Content of Records

Content Record	Areas as specified in GARR
Present in all types of records	
0-- Identification Block	ISADN area (where applicable)
1-- Coded Information Block	
8-- Source Information Block	Cataloguer's note area, Source area
Authority record (Type of record = x)	
2-- Authorized Access Point Block (authorized access point)	Authority heading area
300 Information Note	Information note area
305 Textual see also Reference Note	
4-- Variant Access Point Block	See reference tracing area
5-- Related Access Point Block	See also reference tracing area
7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	Authority heading area

Reference record (Type of record = y)	
2-- Authorized Access Point Block (variant access point)	Reference heading area
300 Information Note	Information note area
310 Textual See Reference Note	Uniform heading area
7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	Reference heading area
General explanatory record (Type of record = z)	
2-- Authorized Access Point Block (explanatory access point)	Explanatory heading area
320 General Explanatory Reference Note	Information note area
7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	Explanatory heading area

6.11 Correspondence Between UNIMARC/Authorities format and UNIMARC/Bibliographic format

UNIMARC/Authorities access point fields	Access point usage in UNIMARC/Bibliographic
200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	4-- with embedded 700, 701, 702, 703 600 604 with embedded 700, 701, 702, 703 700, 701, 702, 703
210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	4-- with embedded 710, 711, 712, 713 601 604 with embedded 710, 711, 712, 713 710, 711, 712, 713
215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	4-- with embedded 710, 711, 712, 713 601, 607 604 with embedded 710, 711, 712, 713 710, 711, 712, 713
216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK	716
217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE	717
220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	4-- with embedded 720, 721, 722, 723 602 604 with embedded 720, 721, 722, 723 720, 721, 722, 723
230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	4-- with embedded 500 500 605
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)	506
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	507
240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EMBEDDED 200, 210, 215, OR 220 AND 230)	4-- with embedded 7-- and 500

	604 with embedded 7-- and 500 7--
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)	576
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)	577
243 CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	4-- with embedded 740 740, 741, 742
245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE (EMBEDDED 200, 210, 215, OR 220 AND 235)	4-- with embedded 7-- and 501 501 604 with embedded 7-- and 501 7--
250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	606, 615, 631, 632
60 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.	617, 620, 621
280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	606, 608

6.12 Display of Reference and Authority Records

The following methods may be used in coding data to allow flexibility in displaying reference and authority records in order to accommodate the variations in display allowed in the GARR.

Tracings are divided into 4-- fields for variant access points and 5-- fields for related access points. The first character of these tags thus signals the need for the > and >> symbols, respectively, for use in displays of reference records. For authority records, the 4-- and 5-- signal that the symbols < and << should be displayed or see and see also as appropriate.

The relationship code in the relationship control subfield \$5 may be used in a field to indicate in coded form one of several standard relationships the tracing may have with the 2-- record access point. These codes allow systems to display specific relationship information in reference and authority records. Since the textual reference information generated as a result of the code is system dependent, the specific relationship or instruction may be in the language choice of the recipient. This relationship or instruction information is displayed in addition to, not in lieu of, the symbols >, >>, <, and <<.

If the particular relationship between the 2-- record access point and a tracing is not one of those for which a code value is defined in the relationship code of the \$5 subfield, but is still a one-to-one relationship, subfield \$0, instruction phrase, is provided to supply the instruction in textual form. Since this instruction phrase is in textual form, agencies that cannot use the information in the language given can omit it in displaying authority and reference records since the less precise >, >>, <, and << symbols will also be generated from the field tag. If the \$0 subfield occurs in addition to the relationship code in the \$5 subfield, the instruction in the \$0 should be preferred for display unless it is undesirable for language or other reasons.

If a relationship between the reference and the referred to access point is several-to-one or has other complexities that make it desirable to transmit the reference as an information note (in addition to tracings), then the 3-- information notes may be used. Variant access points referred from and preferred access points referred to in information notes should also appear as tracings in appropriate authority records. This will allow an agency that cannot use the information note to still display (less precise) reference information from the tracings based on the 4-- and 5-- fields.

History

1994	Text errata.
2001	Alternative Script data: USA example replaced by new example.

2001	Explanatory notes: Note (5) was deleted and subsequent notes were renumbered.
2009	Deleted paragraphs: Explanatory Notes, (5).
2009	New paragraphs: Different Rule Data.
2012	Errata in paragraph 6.8, 6.9, 6.10.
2016	Updates in paragraph 6.10.
2017	Text errata: Examples misprints: Different Rule Data.
2019	Update 6.4 and 6.10.

7 EXPLANATORY NOTES

Throughout the text of this manual, the following conventions have been used.

- 1) The dollar sign (\$) has been used in place of the ISO character IS2 (of ISO 646) as the first character of a subfield identifier.
- 2) The character # has been used in the examples to indicate a blank.
- 3) In the examples the field separator character is assumed and is not shown explicitly.
- 4) The phrase “not defined” associated with an indicator position means that no values have been given to that indicator position.
- 5) Externally maintained code lists are needed in some subfields. These code lists are in the appendixes of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format.
- 6) The character <AR_ID> in \$3 has been used in the examples to indicate non-existent authority record identifier.

History

2021	Errata/text edit, added 6.

RECORD LABEL

Field Definition and Scope

The Record Label is constructed according to the provisions of ISO-2709.

Occurrence

The record label occurs at the beginning of every record. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Tags, Indicators and Subfields

The record label has no tags, indicators or subfield identifiers.

Fixed-Length Data Elements

These data elements are identified by character position within the label. The label as a whole is always 24 characters in length. Conventionally the character positions are numbered 0-23.

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Record Length	5	0-4
Record Status	1	5
Implementation Codes	4	6-9
Indicator Length	1	10
Subfield Identifier Length	1	11
Base Address of Data	5	12-16
Additional Record Definition	3	17-19
Directory Map	4	20-23

Notes on Field Contents

The Record Label (also known as leader) is found at the beginning of each UNIMARC record and contains data for processing the record. Character positions 10, 11, 20-23 contain specific fixed values at this time and may be generated programmatically by the computer. Character positions 0-4 and 12-16 contain numerical data indicating the number of characters in certain areas of the record; these can be calculated by the computer when the record is formatted. Values for the character positions 5, 6-9, 17-19 may be translated from data in the source record by conversion program or, where UNIMARC is being used as the source format, assigned manually.

0-4 Record Length

Five decimal digits, right justified, with zero fill where necessary, representing the number of characters in the entire record, including the label itself, the directory, and the variable fields. This data element is normally calculated automatically when the total record is assembled for exchange.

5 Record Status

A single digit denoting the processing status of the record.

c	corrected or revised record	A record to which changes have been made to correct errors, one which has been amended to bring it up to date, or one where fields have been deleted.
d	deleted record	A record which is exchanged in order to indicate that a record bearing this record identifier is no longer valid. The record may contain only the label, directory, and 001 (record identifier) field, or it may contain all the fields in the record as issued; in either case 835 field may be used to explain why the record is deleted.

n	new record	A new record.

6-9 Implementation Codes

6 Type of Record

x	authority record	Code x indicates that the content of the record constitutes an authority record in which the 2-- access point is established and is authorized for use as the lead element in constructing certain access points of a bibliographic record.
y	reference authorized record	Code y indicates that the content of the record constitutes a reference record in which the 2-- authorized access point is unestablished and is not authorized for use as the lead element in an access point in a bibliographic record. The 2-- is traced in the 4-- in an authority record.
z	general explanatory record	Code z indicates that the content of the record constitutes a general explanatory entry record in which the 2-- authorized access point is unestablished and is not traced in the 4-- in any authority record.

7-8 Undefined

Contains two blanks.

9 Type of Entity

The code indicates the type of entity identified in the 2--.

a	personal name
b	corporate name
c	territorial or geographical name
d	trademark
e	family name
f	title
g	collective title
h	name/title
i	name/collective title
j	topical subject
k	place access
l	form, genre or physical characteristics
m	fictitious character

10 Indicator Length

One numeric digit giving the length of the indicators. This is invariably 2 in UNIMARC.

11 Subfield Identifier Length

One numeric digit giving the length of the subfield identifier; e.g., \$a. This is invariably 2 in UNIMARC.

12-16 Base Address of Data

Five numeric digits, right justified with leading zeros, indicating the starting character position of the first data field relative to the beginning of the record. Since the first character of the record is numbered 0 (zero), the number entered as the base address of data will be equal to the total number of characters in the label and directory including the field separator that terminates the directory. In the directory, the starting character position for each field is given relative to the first character of the first data field which will be field 001, rather than the beginning of the record. The base address thus gives the base from which

the position of each field is calculated. This number will generally be supplied automatically by the computer when the UNIMARC record is finally assembled.

17-19 Additional Record Definition

17 Encoding Level

A one-character code indicates the degree of completeness of the machine record. The following codes have been defined, and others may be added at a later date.

#	full	
3	partial	The record does not contain complete data because appropriate reference work had not yet been carried out.

18-19 Undefined

Two blanks.

20-23 Directory Map

This provides details of the length and structure of the directory entry for each of the UNIMARC fields. The four positions are as follows:

20 Length of “Length of Field”

One decimal digit giving the number of characters in the “length of field” part of each directory entry. The value in UNIMARC is 4. This allows a maximum field length of 9,999 characters.

21 Length of “Starting Character Position”

One decimal digit giving the number of characters in the “starting character position” part of each directory entry. The value in UNIMARC is 5. This allows a maximum record length of approximately 100,000 characters.

22-23 Undefined

Two blanks.

Related Fields

The data elements found in the record label are not found elsewhere in UNIMARC. Although some of the values of the implementation codes “type of record” and “type of entity” appear to overlap with other coded data, in fact the codes in the record label refer to attributes of the record and not directly to attributes of the entity itself.

History

1994	Text errata.
2001	New subfields/values: Character position 9 defined: type of entity.
2009	Changes in terminology: 9/Type of entity, f = title, g = collective title, h = name/title, i = name/collective title.
2012	Text errata: 6 Type of record, 9 Type of entity, 20 Length of “length of field”, 21 Length of “starting character position”.
2017	Update – new code in position 9.

DIRECTORY

Following the Record Label is the Directory. Each entry in the Directory consists of three parts: a 3-digit numeric tag, a 4-digit number indicating the length of the data field and a 5-digit number indicating the starting character position. No further characters are permitted in a Directory entry. The Directory layout is as follows:

Directory entry 1			Directory entry 2	Other directory entries	
Tag	Length of Field	Starting Position			F/T

F/T = Field Terminator

The second segment of the Directory entry gives the number of characters in that field. This includes all characters: indicators, subfield identifiers, textual or coded data and the end of field marker. The length of field is followed by the starting character position of the field relative to the first character position of the variable field portion of the record. The first character of the first variable field is character position 0. The position of character position 0 within the whole record is given in character positions 12-16 of the Record Label.

The tag is 3 characters long, the “length of the data” fills 4 characters and the “starting character position” fills 5 characters. After all of the 12-character directory entries corresponding to each data field in the record, the directory is terminated by the end of field marker IS2 of ISO 646 (1/14 on the 7-bit code table). The directory entries should be ordered by the first digit of the tag, and it is recommended that order by complete tag be used where possible. The data fields themselves do not have a required order as their positions are completely specified through the directory.

History

2024	Errata.

0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains numbers that identify the record and the record version, as well as entities for which the record has been created.

The following fields are defined:

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER
003 PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER
005 VERSION IDENTIFIER
010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NAME IDENTIFIER (ISNI)
015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUTHORITY DATA NUMBER [OBSOLETE]
017 OTHER IDENTIFIER
033 OTHER SYSTEM PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER
035 OTHER SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBERS
036 MUSIC INCIPIT
050 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TEXT CODE (ISTC)
051 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSICAL WORK CODE (ISWC)
052 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUDIOVISUAL NUMBER (ISAN)
061 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Occurrence

Field 001 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered when data is available.

History

2016	Update.

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

Control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
001	RECORD IDENTIFIER	NR	M

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Notes on Field Contents

There are no restrictions on the form of the record identifier.

When the record identifier consists of or incorporates any form of an International Standard Number, other identifiable number such a national number, or other data such as country of publication, this information is nevertheless to be entered in the field specified for that data in addition to recording it as the record identifier in this field.

Related Fields

An agency may be using other separately identified numbers such as ISBN or National Bibliography Number as a Record Identifier. See Notes on Field Contents above for treatment in these cases.

Examples

EX 1
001 78-34279
EX 2
001 n##82-003762#

History

1994	Text errata.

003 PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

Persistent identifier of the record assigned by the agency which creates, uses or issues the record.

The persistent identifier is for the authority record, not for the described entity itself.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
003	PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER	NR	O

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Notes on Field Contents

Persistent identifiers are specific internet addresses which allow one to reference an electronic resource with the aid of a hypertext link, while making sure that this link will not change. There are several systems which allow the creation of persistent identifiers.

An authority record can also be referenced through a persistent identifier. With the help of this tool, it is possible to add this authority record to one's own bookmarks or to quote it on a Web site, in an e-mail, on a blog or in a forum, simply by using the address which is displayed in the browser during an online session.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER	The control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record; it can form part of the persistent identifier, but not necessarily. The persistent identifier has the same function on the web as the system control number (record identifier) for the record in the database.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	Location and access of an electronic resource which provides supplementary information about the entity for which the authority record was created.

Examples

EX 1
001 FRBNF11911553
003 http://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb119115538/
The persistent identifier of the authority record for Jean-Marie Gustave Le Clézio in the BnF catalogue.
EX 2
001 oca05594636
003 http://errol.oclc.org/laf/nb2001-72552.html
The persistent identifier of the authority record for Gordon Dunsire available from the OCLC LAF: Linked Authority File.

History

2009	New field.

005 VERSION IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

The date and time of the latest record transaction.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
005	VERSION IDENTIFIER	NR	O

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Notes on Field Contents

This field consists of 16 characters.

The date and time are recorded according to ISO 8601. The date is entered in the form YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month and DD the day of the month. The time is entered in the form HHMMSS.T where HH represents the hour using the twenty four hour clock, MM the minutes, SS the seconds and .T tenths of a second. In all cases a leading 0 is added if necessary.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA (character positions 0-7)	This is the date of original creation of the record and will not change even if the record is corrected or exchanged.
801 ORIGINATING SOURCE (subfield \$c)	This is the date of original creation of the record and will not change even if the record is corrected or exchanged.

Examples

EX 1
005 19850901141236.0
The date of last transaction was 1st September 1985 at 14:12:36 hours (i.e., 2:12:36 p.m.). “1 st ” is entered as “01” not “1”, “September” as “09” not “9”, to preserve the format.

History

2009	Deleted paragraphs: sentences after the first one.
2012	Text errata.

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NAME IDENTIFIER (ISNI)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI).

This International Standard identifies public identities of parties, i.e. the identities used publicly by parties involved throughout the media content industries in the creation, production, management and content distribution chains.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
010	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NAME IDENTIFIER (ISNI)	R	O
a	Number (ISNI)	NR	MA
y	Cancelled ISNI	R	O
z	Erroneous ISNI	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Number (ISNI)

A correctly applied ISNI as a compact 16 digits number (without blank spaces). Mandatory unless \$z is present. Not repeatable.

\$y Cancelled ISNI

This includes any ISNI that was formerly valid but which has been cancelled by the ISNI Assignment Agency. Optional. Repeatable.

\$z Erroneous ISNI

An erroneous ISNI that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an identity or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different identities and in this instance cancelled. Optional. Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

Use in cases of multiple identities occurring in the same record, i.e. when the 010 field is repeated. Used to link the 010 field containing an ISNI with the 200, 210 and 220 or 400, 410 and 420 fields for the name to be associated with that ISNI. Optional. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The ISNI is assigned, in accordance with ISO 27729, by the ISNI Assignment Agency, in a centralized way. An ISNI is a “dumb” number. No meaning is embedded in, conveyed by, or imputed to any part or subset of the number.

According to the provisions of ISO 27729:

- a party may have more than one public identity, each identified by a separate ISNI;
- the same ISNI shall be allocated to one and only one public identity of a party;
- alternative spellings, alternative presentations, character set variances, script variances and linguistic variances do not by themselves justify the allocation of different ISNIs.

Data Format

ISNI consists of 15 digits followed by a check character. The check character may be either a decimal digit or the character “X” and shall be calculated using the preceding 15 decimal digits in accordance with the ISO/IEC 7064, MOD11-2 algorithm.

The 16 digits of the number are entered in a compact form, without blank spaces or punctuation, and not preceded by the letters ISNI.

When an ISNI is displayed in a human-readable format it shall be preceded by the letters ISNI, separated from the identifier by a space, and the 16 digits shall be displayed as four blocks of four digits, with each block separated from the next by a space.

The number is actionable, resolvable as follows: <http://www.isni.org/XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX>

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - PERSONAL NAME
210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
420 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1
010 ##\$a0000000121035067
200 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aLévi-Strauss\$bClaude\$f1908-2009
300 0#\$aPhilosophe et anthropologue
300 0#\$aMembre de l'Académie française (élu en 1974)
400 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aStrauss\$bClaude Lévi-\$f1908-2009
400 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aLévy-Strauss\$bClaude\$f1908-2009
400 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aStrauss\$bClaude Lévy-\$f1908-2009
The record contains only one identity. The forms of the name contained in the 400 fields represent alternative spellings and presentations of the name, which do not by themselves justify the allocation of different ISNIs.
EX 2
010 ##\$6z01200\$a0000000121434842
010 ##\$6z02400\$a0000000368645393
200 #1\$6z01010\$7ba0yba0y\$8fre\$aGracq\$bJulien\$f1910-2007
400 #1\$6z02010\$5f\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aPoirier\$bLouis\$f1910-2007
The record contains two different identities of the same person: one represented by the real name of the person entered in this case in the 400 field, the other by a pseudonym entered in the 200 field. Each of these identities has its own ISNI in a dedicated 010 field. The link between each of the ISNIs and its associated identity, is made by means of the \$6 subfield.
EX 3
001FRBNF120583593

010 ##\$a0000000120300340
200 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aVargas\$bFred\$f1957-....
300 0#\$aArchéologue
300 0#\$aAuteur de romans policiers
500 #1\$3120572294\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aAudoin-Rouzeau\$bFrédérique\$f1957-....\$o000000036862981X
001FRBNF120572294
010 ##\$a000000036862981X
200 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aAudoin-Rouzeau\$bFrédérique\$f1957-....
300 0#\$aArchéozoologue
300 0#\$aMembre de l'ERA 38 du Centre de recherches archéologiques du CNRS de Sophia-Antipolis, Alpes de Haute-Provence et de l'URA 1415 (en 1991)
300 0#\$aConnue également comme auteur de romans policiers sous le pseudonyme "Vargas, Fred (1957-....)"
400 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aRouzeau\$bFrédérique Audoin-\$f1957-....
400 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aAudouin-Rouzeau\$bFrédérique\$f1957-....
400 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aRouzeau\$bFrédérique Audouin-\$f1957-....
500 #1\$3120583593\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aVargas\$bFred\$f1957-....\$o0000000120300340
Each of the two records above contains a separate identity for the same person. Each record contains one 010 field for the ISNI associated with the identity represented in the record. Both records are linked by 500 fields each containing in subfield \$o the ISNI for the related identity.
EX 4
010 ##\$a0000000121068125
210 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8freeng\$aLondon school of economics and political science
410 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8freeng\$aLSE
410 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8freeng\$aLondon school of economics
410 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8freeng\$aUniversity of London\$bLondon school of economics and political science
Field 010 contains the ISNI assigned to the organization.

History

2016	New field.

015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUTHORITY DATA NUMBER [OBSOLETE]

History

2009	Obsolete field: UNIMARC Authorities field 015, which had been reserved for the International Standard Authority Data Number, was made obsolete in accordance with IFLA's decision not to pursue the idea of an ISADN as it had been defined. Institutions that have used field 015 for locally assigned ISADNs can convert this field into an appropriate 05 or 061 field.

017 OTHER IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

An identifier associated with the entity named in the 2-- field that cannot be accommodated in another field.

A qualification is added to distinguishes between identifiers when more than one identifier of the same type is contained in a record. The field also contains the source of the identifier.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
017	OTHER IDENTIFIER	R	O
a	Identifier	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
z	Erroneous Identifier	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Identifier
	7	System specified in subfield \$2
	8	Unspecified type of identifier
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Identifier

A correctly formatted identifier. Numbers or codes are formulated according to type. Not repeatable.

\$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the identifier in subfields \$a or \$z. Not repeatable.

\$z Erroneous Identifier

An identifier that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an entity or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different entities and in this instance cancelled. If a valid identifier of the same type is not known, subfield \$z may appear alone in field 017. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the system from which the identified is derived. Use only when the first indicator contains the value 7 (System specified in subfield \$2).

See specification also of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Other Identifiers are unique, permanent, and internationally recognized alphanumeric codes used to identify entities. The structure of these identifiers is determined by the agencies formulating them.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NAME IDENTIFIER (ISNI)

036 MUSIC INCIPIT
050 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TEXT CODE (ISTC)
051 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSICAL WORK CODE (ISWC)
052 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUDIOVISUAL NUMBER (ISAN)
061 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Examples

EX 1
017 7#\$a0000-0002-8038-722X\$2ocrid
Open Researcher and Contributor ID for Leon Cizelj.

History

2017	New field.

033 OTHER SYSTEM PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

Persistent identifier of records obtained from other sources.

The persistent identifier is assigned by the agency which creates, uses, or issues the record. This is the persistent identifier for the authority record, not for the entity itself.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
033	OTHER SYSTEM PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER	R	O
a	Persistent Record Identifier		O
z	Cancelled or Invalid Persistent Record Identifier	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Persistent Record Identifier

A persistent record identifier.

\$z Cancelled or Invalid Persistent Record Identifier

A cancelled or invalid persistent record identifier.

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Content

Persistent identifiers are specific Internet addresses which allow one to reference an electronic resource with the aid of a hypertext link, while making sure that this link will not change. There are several systems which allow the creation of persistent identifiers.

An authority record appearing in an OAI repository can also be referenced through a persistent identifier. Thanks to this tool, it is possible to add this authority record to one's own bookmarks or to quote it on a web site, in an e-mail, on a blog or in a forum, simply by using the address which is displayed in the browser during an online session.

Related Fields

035 OTHER SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBERS	The persistent identifier carried in a 033 field is the equivalent on the web of the system control number for the record in another database carried in a 035 field.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	The persistent identifier for the entity described by the record is entered in field 856.

Examples

EX 1
001 099573598
033 ##\$ahttp://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb40133622z/PUBLIC

035 ##\$a(FrPBN)FRBNF401336220000001

A record originally created in the catalogue of the Bibliothèque nationale de France after its import into the Sudoc (the French national academic union catalogue). The original record identifier is carried in a 035 field, while the original persistent record identifier is stored in a 033 field.

History

2012	New field.

035 OTHER SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBERS

Field Definition and Scope

Control number of records obtained from other sources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
035	OTHER SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBERS	R	O
a	System Control Number	NR	O
z	Cancelled or Invalid Control Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a System Control Number

A code for the organisation in parentheses followed by the system control number for the record in that organisation's database.

Codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of ISO 15511 – 2009. (Existing records may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, the full name of the agency or a national code). Not repeatable.

\$z Cancelled or Invalid Control Number

A cancelled or invalid control number.

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The control number is stored in the form contributed.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER	The control number used as the unique identifier of the record by the agency preparing it.

Examples

EX 1
035 ##\$a(CaBVaU)2835210335
The control number was assigned by the University of British Columbia.
EX 2
035 ##\$a(OCOLC)1553114\$z(OCOLC)153114
The control number was assigned by OCLC. The original number assigned was invalid and has been superseded.
EX 3

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\8810088678
035 ##\$a(Владимирская ОУНБ)NILC/AF/0000000197
The control number of the record in Russian national authority file derived from the record created by Vladimir Universal Research Library.

History

2001	New field.
2012	Text errata.

036 MUSIC INCIPIT

Field Definition and Scope

Data describing the musical incipit for music in partially coded form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
036	MUSIC INCIPIT	NR	O
a	Number of Work	NR	MA
b	Number of Movement	NR	MA
c	Number of Incipit	NR	MA
d	Voice/Instrument	NR	MA
e	Role	NR	O
f	Movement Caption/Heading	NR	O
g	Key or Mode	NR	O
m	Clef	NR	MA
n	Key Signature	NR	O
o	Time Signature	NR	O
p	Musical Notation	NR	O
q	Comments	NR	O
r	Codified Note	NR	O
t	Text Incipit	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
z	Language of Text	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Number of Work

Two-digit code indicates the work to which the incipit refers, if a set of compositions (e.g., six sonatas) is entirely described in a single record.

If the record describes only one work use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable. E.g., an incipit describing the second sonata of a set of six: 036 \$a = 02.

\$b Number of Movement

Two-digit code indicates the movement within a work to which the incipit refers.

If the work has only one movement use "01". E.g., an incipit describing the third movement of a symphony: 036 \$b = 03. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$c Number of Incipit

Two-digit code distinguishes different incipits referring to the same movement.

If there is only one incipit for a movement use "01". E.g., in an aria needing an incipit for the instrumental introduction and one for the vocal part the two incipits will have respectively 036 \$c = 01 and 036 \$c = 02. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$d Voice/Instrument

The voice or instrument coded in 036 \$p. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present. Not repeatable.

\$e Role

The name of the character singing the incipit coded in 036 \$p. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$f Movement Caption/Heading

Caption or heading of the movement, as it appears on the source. Optional. Repeatable.

\$g Key or Mode

The key or mode of the movement, if applicable.

Use capital letters A-G to indicate major keys, lowercase a-g to indicate minor keys, “x” for sharps and “b” for flats, numbers 1-12 for gregorian modes. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$m Clef

3-character code. Use capital “F” or “C” or “G” to indicate the clef shape, then “-” as separator, then number 1-5 to indicate the clef position on the staff, starting from the bottom line. Use “+” as separator to indicate mensural notation. E.g., to indicate the bass clef 036 \$m = F-4. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present, otherwise void. Not repeatable.

\$n Key Signature

Use “x” to indicate sharps and “b” to indicate flats, followed by capitals F,C,G,D,A,E,B or B,E,A,D,G,C,F respectively to indicate sharpened or flattened notes. E.g., an incipit in A major with three sharps: 036 \$n = xFCG. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$o Time Signature

The time value or mensuration sign reported on the staff is transcribed with a symbol (c, c/, c., o, etc.) and/or a number (3, 2, c3, etc.) or a fraction (4/4, 12/8, etc.). Optional. Not repeatable.

\$p Musical Notation

Use the notation symbols of Plaine & Easie Code or DARMS code to transcribe the first notes of the selected staff. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$q Comments

Free-text note. Optional. Repeatable.

\$r Codified Note

1-character code indicates a comment note.

Use “?” to indicate a mistake in the incipit, not corrected, “+” to indicate a mistake in the incipit, corrected, “t” to indicate that the incipit has been transcribed (e.g., from mensural notation). Optional. Not repeatable.

\$t Text Incipit

The literary text (if present) as it appears on the source.

If the source has multiple texts each one is transcribed in a separate occurrence of 036 \$t. Optional. Repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Optional. Repeatable.

\$z Language of Text

Coded identification of the language of the incipit. Use if text is different or may be misinterpreted from the field 101. When the subfield is repeated, the order of language codes should reflect the extent and significance of the languages within the work. If this is not possible, enter the language codes in alphabetical order. Code “mul” may be entered when a large number of languages applies in the subfield. For language codes use ISO 639-2 Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>). Optional. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

A code that specifies the system used to code the musical notation.

2-character code indicates the code used to transcribe in 036 \$p. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present. Not repeatable.

Codes:

pe	plaine & easie code	Available online at http://www.iaml.info/en/cataloguing/plain_and_easy_code
da	DARMS code	Beyond MIDI : The Handbook of Musical Codes/edited by Eleanor Selfridge-Field. – Cambridge, Mass. [etc.], MIT Press, 1997. –xviii, 630 p. : mus. ; 24 cm. ISBN 0-262-19394-9. Also available online at http://www.ccarh.org/publications/books/beyondmidi/online/darms/ Note: graphic images are not available.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dS\$fAria\$ge\$mC-1\$oc\$p'2B4B8BB/4G8GxF4FF/4xA8AA4.A 8B/4B\$tRei d'impuniti eccessi
The system code for musical notation in 036 subfield \$p is plaine & easie. Coding of the following incipit:

1.1: Aria,S. Rei d'impuniti eccessi
EX 2
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dv11\$fScena. Largo\$mG- 2\$nbBEA\$oc\$p8{'C+8(3{CDEFG};5)}8{GC}{nB'G}4(-)"/2G+6{GnB"C"E}6{DCAG}
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c02\$dS\$eSara\$fScena. Largo\$mC-1\$nbBEA\$oc\$p=5/4-"6C3CC6DEgF6CC8- 6ED/q8D4C8C'nB"4D-/2-/tChi per pietà mi dice il figlio mio che fa
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b02\$c01\$dv11\$fAria. Allegro\$mG- 2\$nbBEA\$oc\$p6{'EDEF}{GABG}{EDEF}{GABG}/{'C'BAG}{FEDC},4B-/

036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b02\$c02\$dS\$eSara\$fAria. Allegro\$mC-1\$nbBEA\$oc\$p2-/2-"4.F8D/gC'8BB4-2(-)/=2/"2E'G/"4.C'8A4F-/-Fq8B4A8GF/\$tDeh parlate che forse tacendo
Coding of the scena, and aria of Deh parlate che forse tacendo by D. Cimarosa.
EX 3
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c01\$d1st violin\$fAndante\$mG-2\$nxFC\$o4/4\$p4-8'A/{6"DA}gG{6F3ED}{6EB}gA{6G3FE}8F4D8C/{6DA}
036 ##\$a01\$b02\$c01\$fAllegro\$gD\$o4/4
036 ##\$a01\$b03\$c01\$fAllegretto\$gD\$o3/4
Coding of C. A. Campion's trio for 2 violins and bass in D major in three movements.
EX 4
036 ##\$2da\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dOb. 1\$mG-2\$nbB\$oc\$p RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) /4S((3 2 3)) /\$uhttp://www.classicalarchives.com/cgi-bin/n.cgi/prep/6/jsbbrc11.mid
DARMS coding and URL of MIDI source of J.S.Bach's Brandenburg Concerto nr.1 BWV 1046, 1st oboe part:

K Oboe 1 \$
!I1 !G !K1- !MC,12@Ob. 1\$ RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) /4S((3 2 3)) /

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit.

050 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TEXT CODE (ISTC)

Field Definition and Scope

An International Standard Text Code (ISTC) that identifies textual works and not physical products.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
050	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TEXT CODE (ISTC)	NR	O
a	Number ISTC	NR	MA
z	Erroneous ISTC	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Number ISTC

A correctly applied ISTC including hyphens. The ISTCs are assigned by registration agencies appointed by the ISTC registration authority. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISTC

An ISTC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a textual work or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different textual works and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISTC Structure

The ISTC is used to identify a textual work or any derivation of a textual work, according to the provisions of ISO 21047. An ISTC consists of sixteen digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISTC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISTC.

The ISTC is divided into four elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen or a space:

Registration agency: Three hexadecimal digits that designate the registration agency which has given the ISTC. The registration agency element is assigned by the ISTC registration authority.

Year: The four digits of the year in which the ISTC was allocated to the textual work.

(Textual) work: This consists of eight hexadecimal digits, assigned by the registration agency.

Check digit: The fourth element of the ISTC is the check digit. This is calculated using a MOD 16-3 algorithm, according to the standard ISO 7064.

Data Format

The letters ISTC, which are mandatory when the ISTC is written or printed, should not be entered in field 050. Any ISTC which is found to appear printed on an item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z,

Erroneous ISTC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens or blanks are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens or blanks in the ISTC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISTC is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens or blanks is mandatory.

Examples

EX 1
050 ##\$a0A9-2002-12B4A105-7

History

2009	New field.

051 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSICAL WORK CODE (ISWC)

Field Definition and Scope

An International Standard Musical Work Code (ISWC) that identifies musical works and not physical products.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
051	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSICAL WORK CODE (ISWC)	NR	O
a	Number ISWC	NR	MA
z	Erroneous ISWC	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Number ISWC

A correctly applied ISWC including hyphens. The ISWCs are assigned by the ISWC international agency. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISWC

An ISWC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a musical work or is otherwise invalid.

It may have been allocated to two different musical works and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISWC Structure

The ISWC is used to identify a musical work or any derivation of a musical work, according to the provisions of ISO 15707. An ISWC consists of eleven digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISWC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISWC.

The ISWC is divided into three elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen:

Prefix: The letter “T”.

(Musical) work identifier: This consists of nine numerical digits.

Check digit: The third element of the ISWC is the check digit. This is calculated using a MOD 10 algorithm.

Data Format

The letters ISWC, which are usually found printed with the ISWC on items, should not be entered in field 051. They are mandatory when the ISWC is written or printed, including when the ISWC is displayed in an authority record. Any ISWC which is found to appear wrongly on an item or elsewhere can be entered

in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISWC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens are inserted to separate the three parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISWC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISTC is displayed in an authority record the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Dots can be used in the identifier in order to facilitate the reading. No other punctuation is permitted.

Related Fields

061 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Examples

EX 1

051 ##\$aT-345346800-1

The code ISWC T-345346800-1.

History

2009	New field.

052 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUDIOVISUAL NUMBER (ISAN)

Field Definition and Scope

An International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN) that identifies audiovisual works and not physical products.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
052	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUDIOVISUAL NUMBER (ISAN)	NR	O
a	Number ISAN	NR	MA
z	Erroneous ISAN	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Number ISAN

A correctly applied ISAN including hyphens or blanks. The ISANs are assigned by the ISAN international agency. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISAN

An ISAN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an audiovisual work or is otherwise invalid.

It may have been allocated to two different audiovisual works (or parts of an audiovisual work) and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISAN Structure

The ISAN is used to identify an audiovisual work, according to the provisions of ISO 15706. An ISAN consists of sixteen hexadecimal digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISAN and followed by a check digit. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISAN.

The ISAN is divided into three elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen or a blank:

Core element: This consists of twelve hexadecimal digits.

Part identifier: This consists of four hexadecimal digits.

Check digit: The third element of the ISAN is the check digit. It is mandatory when the ISAN is written or printed. This is calculated using the MOD 37, 39 algorithm defined in the standard ISO 7064.

Data Format

The letters ISAN, which are usually found printed with the ISAN on items, should not be entered in field 052. They are mandatory when the ISAN is written or printed, including when the ISAN is displayed in an

authority record. Any ISAN which is found to appear wrongly on an item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISAN, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens or blank are inserted in the \$a or \$z subfield to transcribe the ISAN as four groups of four hexadecimal digits. An hyphen or a blank is also used to separate the check digit from the two preceding elements. The purpose of the hyphens or blanks in the ISAN is to facilitate the reading of the number. When an ISAN is displayed in an authority record the inclusion of the hyphens or blanks is mandatory. No other punctuation is permitted.

Examples

EX 1
052 ##\$a0000-3BAB-9352-0000-G-0000-0000-Q
An imaginary ISAN.

History

2009	New field.

061 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Field Definition and Scope

An International Standard Recording Code (ISRC) that identifies sound recordings and music video recordings and not physical products.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
061	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)	NR	O
a	Number ISRC	NR	MA
z	Erroneous ISRC	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Number ISRC

A correctly applied ISRC including hyphens. The ISRCs are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISRC

An ISRC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a recording or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different recordings and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISRC Structure

The ISRC is used to identify an audio, video or audio-visual recording, according to the provisions of ISO 3901.

An ISRC consists of twelve digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISRC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISRC.

The ISRC is now divided into four elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen. The former fourth and fifth elements are now one element without hyphen:

Country code: A two-letter country code assigned from ISO 3166-1.

Registrant code: An alphanumeric 3-character code assigned by nominated agencies.

Year of reference: The last two digits of the year in which the ISRC was allocated to the recording.

Designation code: This consists of five digits, assigned by the registrant.

Data Format

The letters ISRC, which are usually found printed with the ISRC on items, should not be entered in field 061. They are mandatory when the ISRC is written or printed, including when the ISRC is displayed in an authority record. Any ISRC which is found to appear wrongly on an item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISRC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISRC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISRC is displayed in an authority record the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm.

Examples

EX 1
061 ##\$aFR-Z03-98-00212
Mercury France registered a recording made in 1998, ISRC FR-Z03-98-00212.

History

2009	New field.
2012	Text errata.

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains coded fixed length data fields.

The following fields are defined:

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA
101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY
102 NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY
104 CODED DATA FIELD: MAIN DATES OF ENTITY
105 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF NOTATION OF EXPRESSION
106 CODED DATA FIELD: ENTITY NAME AS SUBJECT ACCESS POINT
120 CODED DATA FIELD: PERSONAL NAME
122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF WORK CONTENT
123 CODED DATA FIELD: TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
125 CODED DATA FIELD: INTENDED AUDIENCE
127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION AND CAPTURE INFORMATION
128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE
140 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT AND FORM OF WORK
145 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT TYPE OF EXPRESSION
146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT
150 CODED DATA FIELD: CORPORATE NAME
152 RULES
154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
160 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE
180 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Occurrence

Field 100 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered as required by the type of access point in the 2-- block.

Notes on Field Contents

Data in these fields is generally defined in terms of the position of a character in a subfield, counting the first character following the subfield identifier as 0. If a bibliographic agency does not supply any coded information in a given field, the field will be omitted unless mandatory. If some data in a field is supplied but not all, the omitted data element positions will contain fill characters.

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2016	Update.
2019	Table update. Changed paragraph in Notes on the Field Contents.
2021	Update.

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA

Field Definition and Scope

Basic coded data applicable to all types of authority records.

Certain data elements, marked “(mandatory)”, are not permitted to be occupied by the fill character.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
100	GENERAL PROCESSING DATA	NR	M
a	General Processing Data	NR	M

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a General Processing Data

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Date Entered on File (Mandatory)	8	0-7
Status of Authorized Access Point Code	1	8
Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory)	3	9-11
Transliteration Code	1	12
Character Set (Mandatory)	4	13-16
Additional Character Set	4	17-20
Script of Cataloguing	2	21-22
Direction of Script of Cataloguing	1	23

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0-7 Date Entered on File (Mandatory)

Eight numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

The date will usually be the date when the machine-readable record was created, to give some idea of the age of the record. A record corrected because of errors in keying or editing will not have a change of date. On exchange, the record should also retain its original date.

Example:

5 October 1967:19671005

\$a/8 Status of Authorized Access Point Code

1-character alphabetic code is used to indicate the level of establishment of an access point in an authority record.

Note: This data element should not be confused with record label byte 17 (encoding level) which relates to the fullness of the entire record.

a	established	The access point is established.
c	provisional	The access point cannot be established definitively due to inadequate information; when the access point is next used, it should be reconsidered in the light of any additional information.
x	not applicable	The record is a reference record or a general explanatory record and, therefore, the 2-- record access point field contains a variant access point.

\$a/9-11 Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory)

1-character code indicates the language used in cataloguing. The 2-- authorized access point appears as it would in a catalogue based on the language specified here. Also any qualifiers, notes or other instructional information will be in the language of cataloguing. For codes use ISO 639-2 *Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages* (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>).

The access point itself may be in a language different from the language of cataloguing. For example, under some cataloguing rules a preferred title for a French anonymous work would be established in its French form no matter what the language of cataloguing is.

\$a/12 Transliteration Code

1-character code indicates the transliteration system used for the first 2-- base access point in the record.

a	ISO transliteration scheme	
b	other	Use for identified transliteration schemes for which no specific code has been defined.
c	multiple transliterations	ISO or other schemes. In an authority record, the code "c" is usually used when multiple scripts are recorded in \$7 access point fields.
d	transliteration table established by the national bibliographic agency	
e	transliteration without any identified transliteration scheme	
f	other identified transliteration scheme	
g	ALA-LC romanization table	
h	DIN transliteration scheme	
y	not applicable	No transliteration scheme used.

\$a/13-16 Character Set (Mandatory)

4-character positions indicate the principal graphic character sets used in the record. Positions 13-14 designate the G0 set and positions 15-16 designate the G1 set. If a G1 set is not needed, positions 15-16 contain blanks.

01	ISO 646, IRV version (basic Latin set)	
02	ISO Registration #37 (basic Cyrillic set) [Obsolete]	
03	ISO 5426 (extended Latin set)	
04	ISO 5427 (extended Cyrillic set)	
05	ISO 5428 (Greek set)	
06	ISO 6438 (African coded character set)	
07	ISO 10586 (Georgian character set)	
08	ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 1	
09	ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 2	
10	[Reserved]	

11	ISO 5426-2 (Latin characters used in minor European languages and obsolete typography)	
50	ISO 10646 Level 3	Note that ISO 10646, being a 16-bit character set, contains all necessary characters. When positions 13-14 contain "50" this will be used for the C0, C1 and G0 sets. Positions 15-20 will contain blanks.

Examples:

Transmission in an 8-bit code with G0 set of ISO 646 and G1 set of ISO extended Latin: 0103

Transmission in an 8-bit code made up of basic Cyrillic: 0102

Transmission in a 7-bit code using ISO 646 only: 01###

\$a/17-20 Additional Character Set

Two 2-character codes indicate up to two additional graphic character sets used in communication of the record. The codes are the same as those used in character positions 13-16. Positions 17-18 designate the G2 set and positions 19-20 designate the G3 set. If no additional character sets are needed, the bytes contain blanks. The UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix C, describes the action required when more than four sets must be accessed. If no additional sets are involved, the four positions contain blanks.

Example:

Transmission in an 8-bit code made up of basic Cyrillic and extended Cyrillic: 010204##

\$a/21-22 Script of Cataloguing

2-character code indicates the script used in cataloguing. In authority records, the 2-- qualifiers, notes and other instructional information appear in this script.

ba	Latin
ca	Cyrillic
da	Japanese -- script unspecified (mixed scripts)
db	Japanese – kanji
dc	Japanese – kana
ea	Chinese
eb	Chinese – simplified variant
ec	Chinese – traditional variant
ed	Mongolian
ee	Manchu
ef	Yi
eg	Naxi Dongba (Nakhi Tomba)
eh	Naxi Geba
fa	Arabic
ga	Greek
ha	Hebrew
ia	Thai
ib	Burmese
ic	Khmer (Cambodian)
id	Lao
ie	Cham
ja	Devanagari
jb	Bengalese

jc	Gujarati
jd	Gurmukhi
je	Odia (Oriya)
jf	Tibetan
kg	Newa (Newar)
ka	Korean
la	Tamil
lb	Kannada
lc	Malayalam
ld	Sinhala (Singhalese)
le	Telugu
lf	Grantha
ma	Georgian
mb	Armenian
na	Ethiopic (Ge'ez)
nb	Tifinagh (Berber)
nc	N'ko
oa	Syriac
pa	Egyptian hieroglyphs
zz	Other

\$a/23 Direction of Script of Cataloguing

1-character code indicates the direction of the script used in cataloguing, as coded in character positions 100/21-22:

0	left to right
1	right to left

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
The language is French. No transliteration has been used. The character sets are ISO 646, basic Latin set (pos. 13-14) and ISO 5426, extended Latin set (pos. 15-16). The script is Latin, the direction of the script is from left to right.
EX 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDapery50#####fa1
The language is Persian (Farsi). No transliteration has been used. The character set is ISO 10646 Level 3. The script is Arabic, the direction of the script is from right to left.

History

1994	Text errata.
2001	New subfields/values: 100 \$a Character position 12 transliteration table additional codes defined: d,e,f.
2001	New subfields/values: Character position 13-16 character set: additional codes defined, 08-10.
2001	New subfields/values: Character position 13-16 character set: additional code reserved, 11.
2001	New subfields/values: 100 \$a Character position 21-22 language of cataloguing: additional codes defined, ma, mb.
2001	New subfields/values: Character position 23 defined: direction of script of cataloguing.
2012	Text errata.
2018	Changed text: \$a/9-11 Language of Cataloguing.

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA

2020	New values: \$a/9-11 Language of Cataloguing.
2022	New values: \$a/21-22 Script of Cataloguing.
2023	New values: \$a/12 Transliteration Code.

101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY

Field Definition and Scope

Coded information indicated the language or languages used by the entity identified in block 2-- (agents, works, expressions).

It may be a language or languages written or spoken by an agent; a language or languages used in an expression of a work; a language or languages used as original/representative attribute(s) of a work.

According to IFLA LRM the language of the entity can be considered a representative expression attribute. Therefore, it can be used at the work level, even though the language is usually used at the expression level. This field can be used also in pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM title records.

Repeatable if more than one code schema is used to describe the language of the entity.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
101	LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY	R	O
a	Language of or Language Used by the Entity	R	MA
b	Language of an Intermediate Expression	R	O
c	Language of the Original/Representative Expression	R	O
d	Language of Summary	R	O
j	Language of Subtitles	R	O
1	Language from which the Agent Translates	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Translation Indicator
	#	Not applicable
	0	Work or expression in the language of the original/representative expression of the work
	1	Expression is a translation
	2	Expression contains translations
2		Source of Code
	#	ISO 639-2 language code
	7	Source specified in subfield \$2

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Translation Indicator

Value #: Not applicable

The entity is not an expression or work.

Value 0: Work or expression in the language of the original/representative expression of the work

Use for data recording at the work level.

Use also in expression records, when the information given corresponds to the representative expression.

Indicator 2: Source of Code

This indicator specifies source of the language code(s) used in the field.

Subfields Description

\$a Language of or Language Used by the Entity

The language in which person, family or corporate body expresses him/her/itself or the language of an expression or the language of the original/representative expression of a work.

This subfield may be used relating to the work when the value of indicator 1 is “0” (EX [6B](#), [10](#), [11](#), [14](#)). Mandatory. Repeatable.

\$b Language of an Intermediate Expression

The language of an intermediate expression of a work when the expression is not translated from the original expression. (EX [15](#)). Optional. Repeatable.

\$c Language of the Original/Representative Expression

The language of the original/representative expression of work when the expression is a translation or contains translations. Value of indicator 1 differs from “0”. Optional. Repeatable (EX [7](#), [15](#)).

\$d Language of Summary

The language of any summary or abstracts of an expression of a work. Optional. Repeatable.

\$j Language of Subtitles

The language of subtitles in moving pictures. Optional. Repeatable (EX [11](#)).

\$l Language from which the Agent Translates

The language from which the agent translates, if a person or a corporate body is known to have or to have had activity as a translator. Repeatable (EX [2](#)).

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code is derived. Use only when the second indicator contains the value 7 (Source specified in subfield \$2). Not repeatable (EX [12](#), [13](#)).

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each data subfield contains a language code. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield \$2 that are listed in Appendix A of UNIMARC/Bibliographic format. If codes from more than one source vocabularies are used the field is repeated.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format
340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE
371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format
101 LANGUAGE OF THE RESOURCE

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aeng
152 ##\$aAFNOR

200 #1\$8freeng\$aMaclean\$bIan\$f19.-....\$cexpert auprès de l'UNESCO
EX 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre\$leng\$lger
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$aMasson\$bAndré\$f1930-....
André Masson translates works from English or from German into French.
EX 3
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$amul
152 ##\$aAFNOR
210 12\$aCongrès européen de systématique\$d1\$f1989\$eLausanne, Suisse
EX 4
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aund
152 ##\$aAFNOR
210 02\$aStamperia Camerale\$cRome, Italie
Stamperia Camerale is a printer established in 1589.
EX 5
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
152 ##\$aAFNOR
220 ##\$aHugo (famille)
EX 6A
Work described as a Title authority record
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$amyn
152 ##\$aAFNOR
230 ##\$8fremyn\$aChilam Balam
Chilam Balam is a generic term to name a group of 14 Maya texts written in Latin script. This example does not conform with FRBR/IFLA LRM, where languages are attributes of expressions (not of works). The authorized access point is still carried in a 230 field (instead of 231, cf. 6B). Indicator 1 is set to # (blank).
EX 6B
Work described as a work entity record (IFLA LRM cataloguing)
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 0#\$amyn
152 ##\$aAFNOR
231 ##\$8fremyn\$aChilam Balam
Work entity record for the work Chilam Balam which is a generic term to name a group of 14 Maya texts written in Latin script. The language of the representative expression of the work is coded in subfield \$a; indicator 1 is set to 0.
EX 7A

Embedded fields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDahrvy0103####ba0
101 1#\$ahrv\$sceng
152 ##\$aPPIAK
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aJoyce,\$bJames \$1232##\$aUlysses\$mhrv. prijevod
EX 7B
Standard subfields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDahrvy0103####ba0
101 1#\$ahrv\$sceng
152 ##\$aPPIAK
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aJoyce, James\$tUlysses\$mhrv. prijevod
A Croatian expression of James Joyce's Ulysses.
EX 8A
Embedded fields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey01#####ba0
101 2#\$afre\$aeng\$cfre
152 ##\$aAFNOR
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aMolière\$f1622-1673\$1232##\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠malade imaginaire\$mfrançais-anglais
EX 8B
Standard subfields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey01#####ba0
101 2#\$afre\$aeng\$cfre
152 ##\$aAFNOR
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aMolière (1622-1673)\$t≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠malade imaginaire\$mfrançais-anglais
French is coded both as the language of the entity (\$a) and language of the original expression of the work (\$c). English is coded as the language of the entity (\$a).
EX 9
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
101 ##\$arus\$salez
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #0\$aЕтим Эмин\$f1838-1884
Etim Emin is a Lezghin poet, wrote both in Russian and his native language.
EX 10A
Embedded fields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
101 0#\$arus
152 ##\$aRCR
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aПушкин\$bАлександр Сергеевич\$f1799-1837\$1231##\$aБорис Годунов
EX 10B
Standard subfields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

101 0#\$arus
152 ##\$aRCR
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aПушкин, Александр Сергеевич (1799-1837)\$tБорис Годунов “Boris Godunov” – tragedy by Alexander Pushkin. An expression in the original language (Russian).
EX 11A
Embedded fields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
101 0#\$aeng\$jfre\$jdan
152 ##\$aRCR
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aGreenaway\$gPeter\$4300\$1231##\$aA zed and two noughts
EX 11B
Standard subfields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
101 0#\$aeng\$jfre\$jdan
152 ##\$aRCR
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aGreenaway, Peter\$tA zed and two noughts “A Zed & Two Noughts” is a film directed by Peter Greenaway. The expression in the original language (English), with subtitles in French and Danish.
EX 12
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy50#####ca0
101 #7\$aizh\$arus\$2iso639-3
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aЮнус\$bb.\$f1905-1937\$gВейно Väinö Junus – writer, linguist, author of the Ingrian grammar for teachers “Ižoran keelen grammatikka”, wrote in Ingrian and Russian languages. Code for the Ingrian language is derived from ISO 639-3.
EX 13A
Embedded fields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0102####ba0
101 07\$aeng\$aktz\$aifr\$2iso639-3
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aUys\$gJamie\$f1921- 1996\$4300\$4690\$4630\$1232##\$aThe Gods Must Be Crazy
EX 13B
Standard subfields technique
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0102####ba0
101 07\$aeng\$aktz\$aifr\$2iso639-3
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aUys, Jamie\$tThe Gods Must Be Crazy The original expression of “The Gods Must Be Crazy” by Jamie Uys. Languages used in the expression are English, Jul’hoan dialect, Afrikaans. There is no specific code for Jul’hoan dialect in ISO 639-2, codes from ISO 639-3 are used.
EX 14
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey01#####ba0
101 0#\$aeng

152 ##\$aAFNOR
241 #1\$3FRBNF119048387\$aĞubrān, Ğubrān Halīl\$4070\$tThe Prophet
Field 101 is used in an IFLA LRM-compliant work entity record. Subfield \$a is used to indicate the language of the representative expression of this work (English). Indicator 1 is set to 0 to allow the use of this field in a work entity record.
EX 15
101 1#\$afre\$beng\$cjpn
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aMunenori, Yagyū (1571-1646)\$tHeihō kadensho\$mfrançais
An expression of work “Heihō kadensho” (“A Hereditary Book on the Art of War”) is a translation from Japanese to French, through English.

History

2001	New field.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$a.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$c Language of the expression.
2012	Updates.
2018	New indicators and subfields/values: indicator 2 and \$2 and examples.
2020	Editorial changes, new label for \$c, new examples 6B, 14-15.
2024	Text edit.

102 NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY

Field Definition and Scope

Coded information relating to the nationality of a person, corporate body, family, trademark, printer/publisher device, or a work.

Mandatory when applicable.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
102	NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY	NR	MA
a	Country of Nationality	R	MA
b	Locality	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Country of Nationality

A code representing the country of which the person or a family is a national or citizen, where the corporate body or the trademark is headquartered, the country with which the printer/publisher device is identified or where the work is composed.

The codes are to be taken from the 2-character codes of ISO 3166-1 (see Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format). Where an agency does not assign specific codes to this field “XX” (unknown) should be used. Mandatory. Repeatable.

\$b Locality

A code representing the locality, where a more specific code is required. The codes are to be taken from ISO 3166-2. Optional. Repeatable if there is more than one country code.

Notes on Field Contents

Any locality code should follow immediately after the country code to which it refers. When it is necessary to record more than one locality within the same country, it is recommended for ease of processing that the country code be repeated in each case, i.e., that each subfield \$b be preceded by a subfield \$a.

Additional codes:

XX nationality unknown (UNIMARC user-assigned code element)

ZZ international or multiple nationalities (i.e., more than 3)

The code XX may be used when the nationality is unknown or non applicable (e.g., a work of art or an ancient country).

Related Fields

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aeng
102 ##\$aXX
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$8freeng\$aMaclean\$bIan\$f19...-....\$cexpert auprès de l'UNESCO
The authority record writer cannot determine the nationality of the expert.
EX 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
102 ##\$aFR\$aCH
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$aScheider\$bEdgar\$f1929-1996
The person has a double nationality: French and Swiss.
EX 3
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$ager\$aeng
102 ##\$aUS\$aDE
152 ##\$aAACR2
200 #1\$aArendt\$bHannah\$f1906-1975
340 ##\$aGerman by birth. Naturalized American in 1951
EX 4
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aund
102 ##\$aXX
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$aFoppens\$bFrançois\$f16...-17..\$cimprimeur libraire prétendu
It is not possible to determine the nationality of this bogus printer-publisher.
EX 5
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$ager
102 ##\$aDE
152 ##\$aAFNOR
210 02\$8freger\$aGoethe Institut\$cBarcelone, Espagne
EX 6
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$amul
102 ##\$aZZ
152 ##\$aAFNOR
210 12\$8frefre\$aCongrès européen de systémique\$d01\$f1989\$eLausanne, Suisse
EX 7
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
102 ##\$aFR
152 ##\$aAFNOR

220 ##\$aHugo (famille)
EX 8
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$ahun
102 ##\$aHU
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$8frehun\$aKodály,\$bZoltán,\$f1882-1967
The author is Hungarian.
EX 9
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy01#####ba0
101 ##\$aeng
102 ##\$aGB\$bSCT
200 #1\$aMcGonagall,\$bWilliam,\$f1825-1902
The author is Scottish.
EX 10
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy01#####ba0
101 ##\$arus\$aeng
102 ##\$aRU\$aUS
200 #1\$8engrus\$aNabokov,\$bVladimir,\$f1899-1977
The author is regarded as being both American and Russian.
EX 11
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
102 ##\$aRU\$bCU
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aКибѣч,\$bА. И.,\$f1937-\$gАнатолий Ильич
Professor of Chuvash State Pedagogical University (Cheboksary, Russia).
EX 12
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
102 ##\$aGB
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Фонд вольной русской прессы≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, издательство\$cЛондон
EX 13
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
102 ##\$aRU\$bALT
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aАлтайская краевая универсальная научная библиотека им. В. Я. Шишкова\$cБарнаул

History

2001	New field.
2009	Updated definition/scope: field.
2009	Updated definition/scope: \$a Country of nationality.
2009	Change to status: \$a Country of nationality, code “XX” (unknown).

104 CODED DATA FIELD: MAIN DATES OF ENTITY

Field Definition and Scope

The main date or time period serves to characterize the authorized access point in 2XX fields.

This field can be used for any entity compliant with IFLA LRM.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
104	MAIN DATES OF ENTITY	NR	O
a	Date of Beginning or Unique Date	NR	MA
b	Final Date	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Date of Beginning or Unique Date

The first or unique date that is associated with the entity described in the 2XX field.

This date includes:

- a person's date of birth or the earliest date in a period of activity;
- the year a corporate body was established, a date on which a conference was held, or the earliest date in a period of activity of a corporate body;
- the earliest date associated with a work or expression (e.g. the date the work was created or first published or released or the date of the earliest known manifestation of the expression).

The type of date and level of detail chosen in this subfield depend on the type of entity and the practices of individual cataloguing rules. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Era Identifier (Mandatory)	1	0
Date	8	1-8
Date Reliability	1	9

\$b Final Date

The latest date in the period that is associated with the entity described in the 2XX field.

This date includes:

- a person's date of death or the latest date in a period of activity;
- the year a corporate body was terminated or the latest date in a period of activity of a corporate body;
- the ending date of the date range associated with a work or expression.

The type of date and level of detail chosen in this subfield depend on the type of entity and the practices of individual cataloguing rules. Not repeatable.

For the table of subfield \$b fixed-length data elements, see Table of subfield \$a fixed-length data elements.

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Era Identifier

1-character code indicates the era associated with the entity described.

c	date falls before the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. B.C.
d	date falls after the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. A.D.

\$a/1-8 Date

8-numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary, and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

Where day or month and day are unknown or not needed according to the cataloguing code, those positions contain blanks. Not repeatable.

\$a/9 Date Reliability

1-character code indicates the reliability of the date.

#	certain date
?	uncertain date

\$b/0 Era Identifier

1-character code indicates the era associated with the entity described.

c	date falls before the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. B.C.
d	date falls after the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. A.D.

\$b/1-8 Date

8-numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary, and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

Where day or month and day are unknown or not needed according to the cataloguing code, those positions contain blanks. Not repeatable.

\$b/9 Date Reliability

1-character code indicates the reliability of the date.

#	certain date
?	uncertain date

Related Fields

122 CODED DATA FIELD - TIME PERIOD OF WORK CONTENT	Used for information on the date or time period covered by the content of a work.
340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE	Use for additional information regarding the dates contained in field 104.
341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER	Use for additional information regarding the dates contained in field 104.
640 PLACES AND DATES ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY	Field 104 contains the dates chosen by the cataloguer as the dates to be used in the authorized access point. For recording other dates or periods, use field 640.

Examples

EX 1

104 ##\$a#1803#####b#1869#####
200 #1\$aBerlioz\$bHector\$f1803-1869
340 ##\$cCompositeur\$cChef d'orchestre
640 1#\$aFR\$cIsère\$dLa Côte-Saint-André\$f#18031211#
640 2#\$aFR\$dParis\$f#18690308#
According to the cataloguing rules, the year of birth and death is needed to distinguish between authorized access points. Dates of birth and death that include the month and day associated with the places are entered in field 640.
EX 2
104 ##\$a#1637#####b#1714#####
200 #1\$aLeclerc\$bSébastien\$f1637-1714
340 ##\$aMembre de l'Académie royale de peinture et de sculpture (à partir du 16 août 1672)\$aGraveur du roi (à partir de 1688 ?)\$cDessinateur\$cGraveur
640 1#\$aFR\$dMetz\$f#16370926#
640 2#\$aFR\$dParis\$f#17141025#
640 4#\$aFR\$dParis\$f#1665#####i#17141025#
The dates of birth and death, following the cataloguing rules, are entered in field 104 while the precise dates of birth and death associated with the places and the residence period in Paris are entered in repeated fields 640. The date of birth may also include the month and day of the person's birth.
EX 3
104 ##\$a#1946#####b#1958#####
210 01\$aFrance\$bAssemblée nationale\$f1946-1958
340 ##\$aUne des deux chambres parlementaires sous la Quatrième République en France instituée par la Constitution française du 27 octobre 1946
640 1#\$aFR\$f#19461128#
640 2#\$aFR\$f#19581208#
EX 4
104 ##\$a#19911107#
231 ##\$8frefre\$aConvention sur la protection des Alpes\$d1991-11-07
370 ##\$aTraité multilatéral qui a pour objectif à long terme la sauvegarde de l'écosystème naturel des Alpes et leur développement durable.\$cAdoptée le 7 novembre 1991 à Salzbourg, la Convention sur la protection des Alpes (ou Convention alpine) a été signée par les huit pays alpins : l'Autriche, la France, l'Allemagne, l'Italie, la Suisse, le Liechtenstein, la Slovénie et Monaco ainsi que l'Union européenne, et est entrée en vigueur le 6 mars 1995\$cRatifiée par la France (loi n° 95-1270 du 06-12-1995) et publiée par le décret n° 96-437 du 20 mai 1996
640 0#\$0Adoption\$aAT\$dSalzbourg\$f19911107
640 0#\$0Entrée en vigueur\$f19950306
640 0#\$0Signature par la France\$f19911107
640 0#\$0Ratification par la France\$f199400610
731 ##\$8freger\$aÜbereinkommen zum Schutz der Alpen\$d1991-11-07
731 ##\$8freita\$aConvenzione per la protezione delle Alpi\$d1991-11-07
731 ##\$8freslv\$aKonvencija o varstvu Alp\$d1991-11-07
According to the cataloguing rules, the adoption date of the treaty is chosen as the main date for the entity. Other dates (e.g., the ratification date, date of signature, etc.), are entered in fields 640.
EX 5
104 ##\$a#1862#####

241 ###\$1001\$1FRBNF13891412\$1200#1\$aBerlioz\$bHector\$f1803-1869\$1231##\$aLes Troyens\$sH133A
370 ##\$aOpéra en 5 actes et 9 tableaux, en deux parties : “La Prise de Troie” (actes I et II), “Les Troyens à Carthage” (actes III, IV et V)\$cDates de composition : avril 1856-1858\$cDates de révision : nos 33 et 40 (1859), no 44 (1859 ou 1860), no 52 (janvier 1860)\$c1re éd. privée (chant et piano) : Paris : imprimé par Thierry frères, [1862]\$a1re représentation (“La Prise de Troie”) : Karlsruhe, Hoftheater, 6 décembre 1890. 1re représentation (“Les Troyens à Carthage”) : Paris, Théâtre-Lyrique, 4 novembre 1863
640 5#\$f#185604####\$i#1858#####
640 0#\$0Révision\$f#1859#####\$i#1860#####
640 0#\$0Première édition\$f#1862#####
640 6#\$dKarlsruhe\$eHoftheater\$f#18901206#
640 6#\$dParis\$eThéâtre Lyrique\$f#18631104#
Depending on the cataloguing rules, the main date of work can either be the date of the earliest public presentation, the publication date (as is the case in this example), or the date of the earliest execution or representation. In this case, the main date of the entity (field 104) is not used in the access points because the title, author, and reference number of the work in a thematic catalogue (241 \$s) are more relevant for the identification of the work.
EX 6
104 ##\$a#1929#####
242 ##\$3FRBNF13917708\$aRavel, Maurice (1875-1937)\$tBoléro\$sO 81\$lArrangement\$vPiano (4 mains)
300 ##\$aArrangement pour piano à 4 mains par Maurice Ravel de sa musique de ballet, “Boléro”
640 5#\$0Arrangement\$f#1929###
640 0#\$0Première édition\$f#1929#####
The main date of the entity (field 104) is not needed in the access points for this expression of a musical work.
EX 7
104 ## \$a#1990#####
242 ##\$3FRBNF13917708\$aRavel, Maurice (1875-1937)\$tBoléro\$sO 81\$lArrangement \$vPiano (4 mains)\$nMusique exécutée\$wAchatz ; Nagai
300 ##\$aInterprétation de l'arrangement pour piano à 4 mains de Maurice Ravel par les pianistes Dag Achatz et Yukie Nagai, enregistrée le 29 juillet 1990 à Danderyd (Suède), Grammar school
640 5#\$0Interprétation/exécution\$aSE\$dDanderyd\$eGrammar school\$f#19900729#
640 7#\$aSE\$dDanderyd\$eGrammar school\$f#19900729#
The main date of the entity (field 104) is not used in the access points, since this interpretation of the arrangement for piano in four hands by pianists Dag Achatz and Yukie Nagai was recorded only on July 29, 1990, in Danderyd (Sweden). According to cataloguing rules, the main date of the entity (field 104) is used in the access points for an expression of a musical work when the same work (or arrangement of work) is performed by the same performers on different dates.

History

2021	New field.
2022	Text errata.

105 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF NOTATION OF EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

Information indicating the set of characters and/or symbols used to express the content of an expression of a work.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Codes and terms from different identification systems or vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
105	CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF NOTATION OF EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Script	R	MA
b	Form of Tactile Notation	R	O
c	Form of Musical Notation	R	O
d	Form of Notated Movement	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Script

A code indicating the script that is used to express the content of an expression.

Mandatory if the expression has textual content.

Multiple scripts from the same code list may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield \$a (EX [1A](#)).

When more than one script identification system is used (e. i. UNIMARC recommended codes and ISO 15924), UNIMARC recommended script code(s) must be recorded in the first field 105 (EX [1B](#), [5](#)).

Repeatable.

The following codes are recommended for use in UNIMARC.

ba	Latin
ca	Cyrillic
da	Japanese -- script unspecified (mixed scripts)
db	Japanese – kanji
dc	Japanese – kana
ea	Chinese
eb	Chinese – simplified variant
ec	Chinese – traditional variant
ed	Mongolian
ee	Manchu

ef	Yi
eg	Naxi Dongba (Nakhi Tomba)
eh	Naxi Geba
fa	Arabic
ga	Greek
ha	Hebrew
ia	Thai
ib	Burmese
ic	Khmer (Cambodian)
id	Lao
ie	Cham
ja	Devanagari
jb	Bengalese
jc	Gujarati
jd	Gurmukhi
je	Odia (Oriya)
jf	Tibetan
kg	Newa (Newar)
ka	Korean
la	Tamil
lb	Kannada
lc	Malayalam
ld	Sinhala (Singhalese)
le	Telugu
lf	Grantha
ma	Georgian
mb	Armenian
na	Ethiopic (Ge'ez)
nb	Tifinagh (Berber)
nc	N'ko
oa	Syriac
pa	Egyptian hieroglyphs
zz	Other

\$b Form of Tactile Notation

A code that is used to express the content of an expression in a form that can be perceived through touch.

Multiple characteristics from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield \$b. Repeatable. ([EX 4](#))

\$c Form of Musical Notation

A code that is used to express the musical content of an expression.

Multiple characteristics from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield \$c. Repeatable. ([EX 3](#))

\$d Form of Notated Movement

A code that is used to express the movement content of an expression.

Multiple characteristics from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfield \$d. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification for the system from which the code is derived in coded form.

Mandatory if subfields \$b, \$c, \$d are present, or when field 105 is repeated to accommodate script identification codes taken from ISO 15924 or another external script identification system. Not repeatable.

Subfield should immediately follow the element to which it refers.

For values, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format Manual, Appendix A.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If more specific textual information is desired, use field 371.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
145 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT TYPE OF EXPRESSION	This field contains a categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived. Field 105 may be used only when 145 \$b pos. 0 has value “a”-notated or when \$c in field 145 is used.
371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION	This field contains details on the form of notation of an expression (in subfield \$c).
UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
036 MUSIC INCIPIT	This field contains a description of the music incipit of a musical work. A subfield is dedicated to the musical notation and is not to be confused with field 105 in UNIMARC/A, dedicated to a structured description of the musical notation of the content of an expression in IFLA LRM cataloguing.
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, \$a pos. 34-35	This field contains general data applicable to records of materials in any media. In the case of a textual resource, the script of title is specified in subfield \$a pos. 34-35. In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level for transcription purposes.

Examples

EX 1A
105 ##\$aba\$aga
The content of this expression of the cartographic work Ενδεικτικός χάρτης γεωλογικών χαρτογραφήσεων Ελλάδας (Geological mapping progress in the hellenic territory) uses both the latin and greek alphabets. Subfield \$a is repeated to record UNIMARC codes for both scripts.
EX 1B
105 ##\$aba\$aga
105 ##\$aLatn\$aGrek\$2ISO15924
When the library system wants to express the scripts also with ISO 15924, 4-letter script code from ISO 15924 is accommodated in the repeated field 105. Names of scripts are followed by the code representing ISO Codes for the representation of names of scripts. First field 105 with UNIMARC script codes is in that case mandatory.
EX 2
105 ##\$afa

The content of the original expression of poetic work <i>Dîwân</i> by the Ottoman 15th century poet Cemâlî uses the arabic alphabet. UNIMARC codes (subfield \$a) are used.	
EX 3	
105 ##\$c1001\$2RDAMusNotation	
The content of the notated music expression of work <i>Squares</i> by Udo Kasemets uses a graphic notation (code 1001 in the RDA Form of Musical Notation Vocabulary Encoding Scheme).	
EX 4	
105 ##\$b1001\$2RDATacNotation	
145 ##\$crt\$2RDAcontent	
The content of this tactile expression of cartographic work <i>Atlas visuo-tactile: Région Midi-Pyrénées</i> , made by Delphine Picard and Pierre Baradat, is expressed in Braille (code 1001). The source system code is RDA Tactile Notation. RDA content types list is used in field 145 to record the general form of the expression (cartographic tactile image). The indication in field 105 (Braille) gives a precision on the form of tactile notation used.	
EX 5	
105 ##\$azz	
105 ##\$aEgyp\$2ISO15924	
The content of this textual expression is in Egyptian hieroglyphs. As this script does not have a code in the UNIMARC code list, the cataloguer used the value “zz – other”. The precise information about the script of expression is recorded in the repeated field 105 in which the ISO 15924 code for Egyptian hieroglyphs is entered.	

History

2020	New field.
2021	Field reissued, subfield updates and corrections.
2022	New codes: \$a Script.

106 CODED DATA FIELD: ENTITY NAME AS SUBJECT ACCESS POINT

Field Definition and Scope

Coded data relating to the use of the access point as subject access point.

The field is applicable to any type of access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
106	CODED DATA FIELD: ENTITY NAME AS SUBJECT ACCESS POINT	NR	O
a	Coded Data – Use in Subject Access Point	NR	MA
b	Coded Data – Use in Subject Access Point as Base Access Point or as Subdivision	NR	O
c	Coded Data – Use in Topical Subject Access Point with a Geographical Subdivision	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Coded Data – Use in Subject Access Point

1-character code. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

0	may be used as subject access point
1	cannot be used as subject access point
2	may be used only as subject access point

\$b Coded Data – Use in Subject Access Point as Base Access Point or as Subdivision

1-character code. Optional. Not repeatable.

#	not applicable (e.g., if \$a contains value 1)
0	can be used either as base access point or as subdivision
1	can be used only as base access point
2	can be used only as subdivision

\$c Coded Data – Use in Topical Subject Access Point with a Geographical Subdivision

1-character code. Optional. Not repeatable

#	not applicable
0	cannot be used with a geographical subdivision
1	the access point allows a geographical subdivision, whether it is used as base access point or as subdivision
2	the access point can be used with a geographical subdivision only if used as base access point
3	the access point can be used with a geographical subdivision only if used as subdivision

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE
220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0
120 ##\$aba
200 #1\$aHugo\$bVictor\$f1802-1885
The name of person is both author and subject access point.
EX 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0
150 ##\$ay
210 02\$aCentre national d'art et de culture Georges Pompidou\$cParis
The name of corporate body is both author and subject access point.
EX 3
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0
220 ##\$aGaillard\$cfamille
The name of family is both author and subject access point.
EX 4
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre
106 ##\$a1\$b#\$c#
120 ##\$aba
200 #0\$8frefre\$aSan Antonio
The name of person cannot be used as subject access point; for subject usage, use the access point: Dard, Frédéric (1921-2000).
EX 5
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
106 ##\$a2\$b1\$c0
120 ##\$axa
200 #0\$8freita\$aPinocchio\$cpersonnage fictif
The name of person may be used only as subject access point.
EX 6
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0

216 ##\$aLa voix de son maître
EX 7
106 ##\$a0\$b0\$c2
210 02\$aChurch of England
330 0#\$aS'emploie également en subdivision aux sujets religieux et aux guerres
The name of corporate body is both author and subject access point. As subject access point, it can be used both as base access point or as subdivision (for a base access point dealing with religious matters or with wars), but it admits a geographical subdivision only when used as base access point.
EX 8
106 ##\$a2\$b2\$c0
250 ##\$aCongrès
The topical subject, which is a form subdivision, can be used only as a subdivision in a subject access point and admits no geographical subdivision.
EX 9
106 ##\$a2\$b1\$c1
250 ##\$aOiseaux
The topical subject can be used only as subject base access point. It admits a geographical subdivision.
EX 10
106 ##\$a2\$b0\$c3
106 ##\$a2\$b0\$c3
215 ##\$aFrance
The geographic name can be used only as a subject access point either as base access point or as subdivision. It can be used with a geographical subdivision, but only if used as a subdivision.
EX 11
106 ##\$a2\$b0\$c0
215 ##\$aNew York (N.Y.)
The geographic name can be used only as a subject access point, either as base access point or as subdivision. It does not admit a geographical subdivision.
EX 12
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
106 ##\$a1
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aГосударственный Эрмитаж\$cСанкт-Петербург
The name of corporate body cannot be used as subject access point.
EX 13
Record 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
106 ##\$a1
152 ##\$apsbo
210 01\$aГермания\$bВерховное главнокомандование вооруженными силами\$bУправление разведки и контрразведки
Record 2

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
106 ##\$a2\$b1
152 ##\$anlr_sh
210 02\$aAбвep
Different forms of a corporate body name used in accordance with descriptive cataloguing rules and subject system. As a subject access point, it can be used only as a base access point.

History

2001	New field.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	Changes in name and function.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$b Coded data – use in subject heading as base access point or as subdivision.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$c Coded data – use in topical subject access point with a geographical subdivision.
2019	Renamed field and redefinition.

120 CODED DATA FIELD: PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Coded data applicable to the entity described in field 200.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
120	CODED DATA FIELD: PERSONAL NAME	NR	O
a	Coded Data: Personal Name	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Coded Data: Personal Name

2-character code. Optional. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Gender of Entity	1	0
Differentiated or Undifferentiated Personal Name	1	1

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Gender of Entity

1-character alphabetic code is used to describe the gender of the entity identified in the 200 authorized access point.

a	female	The entity in field 200 is female.
b	male	The entity in field 200 is male.
c	transgender	The entity in field 200 has changed gender.
u	unknown	The gender of the entity in field 200 cannot be determined.
x	not applicable	The entity in field 200 does not have a gender.

\$a/1 Differentiated or Undifferentiated Personal Name

1-character alphabetic code is used to distinguish differentiated or undifferentiated personal names.

a	differentiated personal name	The authority record identifies a single identity, because the entity in field 200 is distinguished from all other entities of the same name by the addition of qualifying data, e.g.: dates of birth or death; title of nobility; honorifics and terms of address; descriptive epithets and other additions defined by the cataloguing rules used by the agency.
b	undifferentiated personal name	The authority record may identify several identities because the entity in field 200 cannot be distinguished from other entities of the same name.

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$aeng
120 ##\$aaa
200 #1\$aChristie,\$bAgatha,\$f1890-1976
Note: the entity is female and the name is differentiated by the addition of dates of birth and death.
EX 2
Record 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$aeng
120 ##\$aba
200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJames,\$f1926-
500 #1\$aMorris,\$bJan,\$f1926-
810 ##\$aHis Coast to coast, 1956.
Record 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$aeng
120 ##\$aca
200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJan,\$f1926-
340 ##\$aJames Humphry Morris, 10-2-26; had a sex change operation, took new name "Jan Morris"; intends to complete a trilogy using James Morris, will publish other future books as Jan Morris
500 #1\$aMorris,\$bJames,\$f1926-
810 ##\$aA Machynlleth triad, 1995\$bt.p. (Jan Morris)
EX 3
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
120 ##\$aub
200 #1\$aSmith,\$bJ.
340 ##\$aAuthor of The art of poster making
810 ##\$aThe art of poster making, 1989:\$bt.p. (J. Smith)
340 ##\$aAuthor of Peter's pip
810 ##\$aPeter's pip, 1986:\$bt.p. (J. Smith) [Another author?]
Note: The gender is unknown because it cannot be determined from the name in 200; the access point in 200 is undifferentiated because no distinguishing data is available.
EX 4
Record 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$alat
102 ##\$aXX
120 ##\$aba
200 #1\$8englat\$aAntonius,\$bMarcus,\$cOrator,\$f143-87 b.C.
Record 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$alat
102 ##\$aXX
120 ##\$aba
200 #1\$8englat\$aAntonius,\$bMarcus,\$cTriumvir,\$f82-30 b.C.

In example 4, two authors of the same name have been differentiated by the addition of descriptive epithets and dates of birth and death.

EX 5

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

120 ##\$aub

152 ##\$aRCR

200 #1\$aВыдpевич\$bГ. С.

The gender cannot be determined from the name in 200. The name is unqualified because no additional information is available.

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

120 ##\$aba

152 ##\$aRCR

200 #1\$aКары-Ниязов\$bТ. Н.\$f1897-1970\$gТашмухамед Ниязович

History

2001	New field.

122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF WORK CONTENT

Field Definition and Scope

A formatted indication of the period covered by work content.

Repeatable only to distinguish between multiple single dates and a range of dates.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
122	CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF WORK CONTENT	R	O
a	Time period, 9999 B.C. to present	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Number of Dates Indicator
	0	Single dated item
	1	Multiple single dates
	2	Range of dates
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Time Period, 9999 B.C. to Present

Repeatable. (EX [1](#)). See also EX [2](#), [3](#), [4](#).

Subfield \$a consists of a minimum of 5-characters and a maximum of 11. The components are:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Era Identifier	1	0
Year	4	1-4
Month	2	5-6
Day	2	7-8
Time	2	9-10

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Era Identifier

Codes indicate an era of the period.

The subfield is 1-character in length. Mandatory.

Codes:

c	date falls before the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. B.C.
d	date falls after the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. A.D.

\$a/1-4 Year

4-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Mandatory.

\$a/5-6 Month

2-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Optional.

\$a/7-8 Day

2-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Optional.

\$a/9-10 Time

2-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Based on a 24-hour clock, local time, rounded to the nearest whole hour. Optional.

If one optional code is used, all the earlier optional codes must be used.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
Fields 6-- block	
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF RESOURCE CONTENT	This field contains a formatted indication of the period covered by the resource.
661 TIME PERIOD CODE	This field contains the time period code, indicating only the decades covered by the resource.

Examples

EX 1
122 2#\$ad1971\$ad1979
122 0#\$ad1986
Codes for a map surveyed between 1971 and 1979 and then revised to add 1986 information.
EX 2
122 0#\$ad16051105
The code for Guy Fawkes' Gunpowder Plot, 5 November 1605.
EX 3
122 0#\$ad1976080214
The situation date (2 August 1976, 14:08 hours) of a remote sensing image.
EX 4
122 2#\$ad1992\$ad1997
The <i>Godišnje izvješće</i> (Annual Report) of the State Intellectual Property Office of the Republic of Croatia published in 1998 for the years 1992 to 1997. The coverage dates are recorded in a 122 field.

History

2012	New field.
2023	Text edit.

123 CODED DATA FIELD: TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

The co-ordinate data of the entity described in block 2--.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
123	CODED DATA FIELD: TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
d	Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Westernmost Longitude	NR	O
e	Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Easternmost Longitude	NR	O
f	Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Northernmost Latitude	NR	O
g	Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Southernmost Latitude	NR	O
q	Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Westernmost Longitude	NR	O
r	Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Easternmost Longitude	NR	O
s	Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Northernmost Latitude	NR	O
t	Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Southernmost Latitude	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$d Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Westernmost Longitude

\$e Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Easternmost Longitude

\$f Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Northernmost Latitude

\$g Co-ordinates in Sexagesimal Form (Degrees, Minutes, Seconds) - Southernmost Latitude

Co-ordinates for planetary or terrestrial items. For co-ordinates that are recorded in sexagesimal form (degrees, minutes, seconds), use subfields \$d to \$g (e. g. World Geodetic System -WGS, recording in sexagesimal form, EX [4](#)).

Each subfield is fixed at 8 characters and is optional and not repeatable. Each contains the following data:

Character position 0

Hemisphere: 1-character code:

w	west
e	east
n	north
s	south

Character positions 1 to 3

Degree: 3-numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros.

Character positions 4 to 5

Minute: 2-numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros.

Character positions 6 to 7

Second: 2-numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros.

\$q Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Westernmost Longitude

\$r Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Easternmost Longitude

\$s Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Northernmost Latitude

\$t Co-ordinates in Decimal Degrees - Southernmost Latitude

For co-ordinates that are recorded in decimal degrees, use subfields \$q to \$t (e. g. World Geodetic System -WGS, recording in decimal degrees, EX 4). Each subfield is optional and not repeatable. Any number of decimals can be recorded, depending on the degree of precision.

\$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the system from which the data is derived.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

When the co-ordinates for a place are given in terms of a centre point rather than outside limits, the longitude and latitude that form the central axes are each recorded twice, in subfields \$d and \$e/\$q and \$r (longitude) and subfields \$f and \$g/\$s and \$t (latitude).

For the codes of sources in \$2 see for example MARC21 Cartographic Data Source Codes (<http://www.loc.gov/standards/sourcelist/cartographic-data.html>).

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1
123 ##\$de0790000\$ee0860000\$fn0200000\$gn0120000
India: longitude E 79° to E 86°, latitude N 20° to N 12°. Co-ordinates recorded in sexagesimal form.

EX 2
123 ##\$de0121957\$ee0121957\$fn0452613\$gn0452613\$2geonames
The co-ordinates for the city of Venice, Italy, recorded in sexagesimal form: longitude E 12° 19' 57", latitude N 45° 26' 13" (according to GeoNames).
EX 3
123 ##\$q12.33265\$r12.33265\$s45.43713\$t45.43713\$2geonames
The co-ordinates for the city of Venice, Italy, recorded in decimal degrees: longitude 12.33265, latitude 45.43713 (according to GeoNames).
EX 4
123 ##\$dw0582238\$ew0582238\$fs0343647\$gs0343647\$q-58.37723\$r-58.37723\$s-34.61315\$t-34.61315\$2geonames
The co-ordinates for the city of Buenos Aires, Argentina, recorded both in sexagesimal form (degrees, minutes, seconds): longitude W 58°22'38", latitude S 34°36'47", and in decimal degrees: longitude -- 58.37723, latitude -34.61315 (according to GeoNames, http://www.geonames.org/3435910/buenos-aires.html).
EX 5
123 ##\$de0223005\$ee0223005\$fn0382855\$gn0382855\$q22.50129\$r22.50129\$s38.48182\$t38.48182
The co-ordinates for the Athenian Treasury in Delphi (Greece), recorded both in sexagesimal form (degrees, minutes, seconds): longitude E 22°30'5", latitude N 38°28'55", and in decimal degrees: longitude 22.50129, latitude 38.48182.

History

2001	New field.
2016	Update.
2019	New subfield: \$2. Addition and text restructured and text errata.
2020	Text errata.

125 CODED DATA FIELD: INTENDED AUDIENCE

Field Definition and Scope Note

Coded information indicated the intended audience of a work or an expression of a work.

According to IFLA LRM, the intended audience of the entity can be considered a representative expression attribute. Therefore, it can be used at the work level, even though the intended audience is usually described at the expression level.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
125	CODED DATA FIELD: INTENDED AUDIENCE	R	O
a	UNIMARC Target Audience Code	NR	O
b	Other Coding for Intended Audience (level 1 category)	NR	O
c	Other Coding for Intended Audience (level 2 category)	NR	O
d	Other Coding for Intended Audience (level 3 category)	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Representative Expression Indicator
	#	Not specified
	0	Representative expression of work
2		Type of Category Indicator
	#	Other or unspecified
	0	Categorization as to age group
	1	Categorization as to sensory impairment
	2	Categorization as to educational level
	3	Categorization as to occupational group

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Representative Expression Indicator

Value 0: Representative expression of work

Use for the data recorded at the work level.

Use also in expression records when the information given corresponds to the representative expression.

Subfields Description

\$a UNIMARC Target Audience Code

A one-character alphabetic code representing the intended audience of a work or expression. Not repeatable.

Use the following codes in this subfield.

a	juvenile, general	Use when b, c, d or e have not been used or cannot be used.

b	pre-primary, ages 0-5	
c	primary, ages 5-10	
d	children, ages 9-14	
e	young adult, ages 14-20	
k	adult, serious	
m	adult, general	
u	unknown	

In case another system code is used, use subfields \$b-d to record the intended audience codes and \$2 to specify the name of the system.

\$b Other Coding for Intended Audience (level 1 category)

A code representing a first-level category from the system specified in subfield \$2. Mandatory if second-level category is used. Not repeatable.

\$c Other Coding for Intended Audience (level 2 category)

A code representing a second-level category from the system specified in subfield \$2. Mandatory if third level category is used. Not repeatable.

\$d Other Coding for Intended Audience (level 3 category)

A code representing a third-level category from the system specified in subfield \$2. Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the system from which the code in subfields \$b-\$d is derived. Mandatory if \$b, \$c or \$d are present. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Use one of the codes listed in subfield \$a for the intended audience of a work or expression. If none of the terms is appropriate or sufficiently specific, use subfields \$b-d to record specific data related to the intended audience of a work or expression, and specify the source system code in subfield \$2. A list of source system codes can be found in UNIMARC Bibliographic Format Manual, Appendix A.

For an unstructured description in use field 333.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
333 USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE	This field contains an unstructured note on the intended audience of a work or expression.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA (\$a pos. 17-19)	This field contains general data applicable to records of materials in any media. The target audience is specified in subfield \$a pos. 17-19. In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.

Examples

EX 1
125 00\$ab
333 ##\$aAlbum pour les tout-petits

La nuit, on dort by Jeanne Ashbé is a work dedicated to young children aged under 3 years old. The cataloguer used both a UNIMARC target audience code in subfield 125\$a, and an unstructured note in field 333 to give a more specific target audience. Field 125 is used in a work entity record, with value 0 in indicator 1, as the intended audience refers to the representative expression of the work.

EX 2

125 00\$b

125 00\$bJAg0003\$2CNLJ

This description is more structured than EX 1. Subfield \$b is used as this code list does not have a hierarchical organisation. The same book is described using two 125 fields, one with a UNIMARC standard code for pre-primary children and one with a more specific code JAg0003 - for children under 3 years old derived from the CNLJ (French National Center for Youth Literature) list of codes.

EX 3

125 #0\$bPEGI18\$2PEGI

This expression entity record for *Call of Duty: modern warfare trilogy* video game for Playstation 3 is dedicated to more than 18 years-old persons, according to the PEGI (Pan European Game Information) age labels showed on the cover of the material.

EX 4

125 00\$a

125 02\$benseignement supérieur\$cmaster\$2SCOLOMFR 5.1

ScoLOM-FR registry is a comprehensive semantic web vocabulary for educational resources that includes code lists for groups of target audience, depending on the educational level. This work's representative expression is dedicated to master's degree students.

History

2020	New field.
2024	Text edit.

127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION AND CAPTURE INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

Duration and capture information of a sound recording or of a visual projection, of a portion of a sound recording or of a visual projection, or to the estimated duration of a musical composition, a ballet, etc.

In the IFLA LRM the duration and capture information of the entity can be considered a representative expression attribute. Therefore, it can be used at the work level, even though the duration and capture information is usually described at the expression level.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
127	CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION AND CAPTURE INFORMATION	NR	O
a	Duration	R	O
b	Capture Information	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Representative Expression Indicator
	#	Not specified
	0	Representative expression of work
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Representative Expression Indicator

Value 0: Representative expression of work

Use for the data recording at the work level.

Use also in expression records when the information given corresponds to the representative expression.

Subfields Description

\$a Duration

This subfield contains a six-character numeric string representing the duration of a sound recording or of a visual projection, or of a section of a sound recording or of a visual projection, or to the estimated duration of a musical composition, a ballet, etc. The time is divided into three sub-elements, each two characters long, representing the number of hours, minutes, and seconds. Each sub-element is right justified; unused positions contain blanks or zeros. Repeatable.

\$b Capture Information

This subfield contains a one-character code representing the circumstances of capture of a musical performance, video recording, motion picture, etc. Repeatable if several codes are needed to describe the capture information (EX 3).

Use the following codes:

a	live recording
b	studio recording

c	public performance
d	outdoor performance

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
300 INFORMATION NOTE	This field contains general unstructured information which helps to identify an entity. The duration may be recorded in an eye-readable form in subfield \$a.
371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION	This field contains unstructured information related to several elements of an expression entity. Subfield \$e accommodates details on the circumstances of capture of an expression of a work.
640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY	This field contains other data related to the capture of a sound recording, visual projection, musical composition, or performance.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION OF SOUND RECORDINGS AND NOTATED MUSIC	The field contains data corresponding to the duration of a manifestation consisting in or containing sound recordings or a portion of a sound recording, or to the estimated duration of a composition as stated on the music score that is being described.

Examples

EX 1
127 ##\$a001110
The duration of a sound recording lasting 11 minutes and 10 seconds.
EX 2
127 ##\$a015000
1 hour and 50 minutes, the duration of Pier Paolo Pasolini's film <i>Medea</i> (1969), according to The Internet Movie Database (http://www.imdb.com/title/tt0066065/ , consulted 2012-01-20). The entity described is an expression.
EX 3
127 0#\$a004456\$ba\$bc
The duration (44' 56 minutes) and type (live recording, public performance) of Nina Simone's live album <i>At the Village Gate</i> . The duration recorded in subfield \$a may also be found in the work entity record for this album as this capture is considered to be the representative expression of Nina Simone's work, according to the cataloguing agency's practices.
EX 4
127 ##\$a021500\$ba
The duration (135 minutes) and type (live recording without public) of an expression entity consisting in a filmed capture of Richard Wagner's <i>Der fliegende Holländer</i> , staged by Harry Kupfer at Bayreuth Festival in 1985.

History

2012	New field.
2020	New indicator 1, new subfield \$b, renamed the field title, added examples 3 and 4.
2024	Text edit.

128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE

Field Definition and Scope

Form and the key or mode of a musical work.

This field can be used in work records as well as in pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM title records.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
128	CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE	R	O
a	Form of Musical Work	R	O
d	Key or Mode of Musical Work	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Form of Musical Work

Contains a code indicating the form of a musical work. Optional.

If more than one form is present the subfield is repeated (EX [4](#), [5](#)).

Use the code lists at the end of this field.

\$d Key or Mode of Musical Work

Contains a code indicating the key or church mode of the musical work, if significant. Major keys are indicated with a letter “a”-“g”, minor keys with a letter “a”-“g” followed by “m”; sharps with “x”, flats with “b” following the key code. “Gregorian” church modes are indicated with a number “01”-“13” (EX [4](#)). Use the code lists at the end of this field. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format
140 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT AND FORM OF WORK
230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE [pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM]
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE [pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM]
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format
128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE

Examples

EX 1
128 ##\$aco#\$ddm

140 ##\$amu
241 #1\$3FRBNF139752986\$aBach, Carl Philipp Emanuel (1714-1788)\$4230\$tConcertos\$rFlûte, orchestre à cordes\$sH 484 1\$uRé mineur
EX 2
128 ##\$ams#\$d01
140 ##\$amv
241 #1\$3FRBNF13997568X\$aOckeghem, Johannes (14..-1497)\$tMissa primi toni\$rVoix (3)
EX 3
128 ##\$asnd\$deb
140 ##\$amu
241 #1\$3FRBNF14027233X\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$tSérénades\$rBassons (2), clarinettes (2), cors (2), hautbois (2)\$sKV 375\$uMi bémol majeur
EX 4
128 ##\$amo#\$ahy#\$dc
140 ##\$amv
241 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$aMartini, Giovanni Battista\$tO salutaris hostia\$rsoprano, continuo\$uDo maggiore
EX 5
128 ##\$asn#\$acn#
140 ##\$amu
241 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$aTelemann, Georg Philipp\$tSonate canoniche\$r2 flauti o 2violini o due viole da gamba\$sTVW40: 118-123

Code Lists

Code lists are maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Music Documentation Centres).

1. Codes for Form of Musical Work

The list of codes for form of musical work is available online at the following address:

<http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/forms>.

2. Codes for Key or Mode of Musical Work

Keys

Code	Key
a	A major
am	A minor
ab	A flat major
abm	A flat minor
axm	A sharp minor
b	B major
bm	B minor
bb	B flat major
bbm	B flat minor
c	C major

cm	C minor
cb	C flat major
cx	C sharp major
cxm	C sharp minor
d	D major
dm	D minor
db	D flat major
dxm	D sharp minor
e	E major
em	E minor
eb	E flat major
ebm	E flat minor
f	F major
fm	F minor
fx	F sharp major
fxm	F sharp minor
g	G major
gm	G minor
gb	G flat major
gxm	G sharp minor

Modes

Code	Mode	Mode Name (Greek)	Mode Name (Latin)
01	1.	Protus authentic	Dorian
02	2.	Protus plagal	Hypodorian
03	3.	Deuterus authentic	Phrygian
04	4.	Deuterus Plagal	Hypophrygian
05	5.	Tritus authentic	Lydian
06	6.	Tritus plagal	Hypolydian
07	7.	Tetrardus authentic	Mixolydian
08	8.	Tetrardus plagal	Hypomixolydian
09	9.		Aeolian
10	10.		Hypoeolian
11	11.		Ionian
12	12.		Hypoionian
13	Tonus Peregrinus		
zz	Other		

History

2012	New field.
2020	Change to scope note, related fields and examples.

140 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT AND FORM OF WORK

Field Definition and Scope

Information on the category of content and the form of a work.

Form of work in subfield \$b is used only for non-musical works.

Repeatable if the form of work is indicated in different encoding schemes.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
140	CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT AND FORM OF WORK	R	O
a	Category of Content of Work	NR	MA
b	Form of Work	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description	
1	#	blank (not defined)	
2		Source of Code	
	#	UNIMARC code	Use this value when using a UNIMARC specified code in subfield \$b.
	7	Source specified in subfield \$2	

Subfields Description

\$a Category of Content of Work

2-character code indicates the broad category of content to which the work belongs. Not repeatable. (EX [1-11](#)).

The following codes are used:

br	broadcast work	
ca	cartographic work	
da	choreographic work	
el	computer work	
es	software work	Subgroup of the code el (computer work).
em	multimedia work	Subgroup of code el (computer work).
im	moving image work	
ic	cinematographic work	
mu	musical work	
mv	vocal work	Subgroup of the code mu (musical work).
ob	object work	
so	sounds work	
is	still image work	
ip	photographic work	Subgroup of the code is (still image work).
te	textual work	
tl	legal work	Subgroup of the code te (textual work).
to	official communication	Subgroup of the code te (textual work).
tr	religious work	Subgroup of the code te (textual work).

mi	mixed work	

\$b Form of Work

2-character code specifying the form or genre of non-musical work.

It contains more precise information on the content of the work than the broad category indicated in subfield \$a (EX [1-4](#), [8](#), [11](#), [12](#)).

Do not use this subfield for musical works (value “mu” or “mv” in subfield \$a). Use subfield 128 \$a instead. (EX [5](#))

When using codes other than the UNIMARC, subfield \$2 is mandatory. (EX [1](#), [2](#), [3](#), [4](#), [8](#))

Not repeatable.

The following UNIMARC codes are used for forms:

aa	bibliography
ab	catalogue
ac	index
ad	abstract or summary
ae	dictionary
af	encyclopaedia
ag	directory
ah	project description
ai	statistics
aj	programmed text book
ak	patent
al	standard
an	laws and legislation
ao	numeric table
aq	examination paper
as	treaties
at	cartoons or comic strips
aw	conference publication
ax	festschrift

\$2 Source

Contains a code indicating the vocabulary encoding scheme used in \$b. Not repeatable.

Mandatory if \$b is present. (EX [1](#))

Notes on Field Contents

Field 140 is not to be confused with field 145 that contains a categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived. The content type is an attribute of the expression entity, whether the content and form of work is an attribute of the work entity.

Related Fields

128 FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE	In the case of musical works, field 128 should be used to add precision on the form of a musical work instead of A140 \$b, if the value in 140 \$a is “mu” or “mv” (EX 6 , 7 , 10).
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - TITLE (WORK)	

241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)	
608 FORM OR GENRE OF WORK	Fields 140 and 608 are complementary, they can be used in conjunction, depending on the cataloguing agency's policy. Field 140 is dedicated to machine purposes. Field 608 gives more detail, and it can provide a link to a term in an external system (EX 1 , 2 , 8).

Examples

EX 1
140 ##\$ate\$broman\$2BnF-GenreLitt
241 ##\$3FRBNF11925504\$aStendhal (1783-1842)\$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠chartreuse de Parme
608 ##\$3FRBNF11940505\$aRoman\$2rameau-Genre
The code for the form “novel” used in subfield \$b is chosen from vocabulary defined by the Bibliothèque nationale de France for textual works identified in subfield \$2. Field 140 is used together with field 608, which gives a link to a term in an external system.
EX 2
140 ##\$ate\$bropol\$2BnF-GenreLitt
241 ##\$3FRBNF11896014\$aChandler, Raymond (1888-1959)\$t≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠big sleep
608 ##\$3FRBNF11932793\$aRoman policier\$2rameau-Genre
The code for the form “crime novel” used in subfield \$b is chosen from the vocabulary Bibliothèque nationale de France for textual works identified in subfield \$2. Field 140 is used together with field 608, which gives a link to a term in an external system.
EX 3
140 ##\$ais\$bportr\$2BnF-GenreIcono
241 ##\$3FRBNF 2131103\$aMellan, Claude (1598-1688)\$tPortrait du cardinal de Richelieu, à mi-corps, assis devant une table
The code used in subfield \$b for the form “portrait” is chosen in a vocabulary defined by the Bibliothèque nationale de France for still image works identified in subfield \$2.
EX 4
140 ##\$atl\$btraite\$2BnF-FormeJur
231 ##\$8frefre\$aConvention sur la protection des Alpes\$d1991-11-07
370 ##\$aTraité multilatéral qui a pour objectif à long terme la sauvegarde de l'écosystème naturel des Alpes et leur développement durable
731 ##\$8freger\$aÜbereinkommen zum Schutz der Alpen\$d1991-11-07
731 ##\$8freita\$aConvenzione per la protezione delle Alpi\$d1991-11-07
731 ##\$8freslv\$aKonvencija o varstvu Alp\$d1991-11-07
The code used in subfield \$b for the form “treaty” is chosen in a vocabulary defined by the Bibliothèque nationale de France for legal works identified in subfield \$2.
EX 5
128 ##\$asp#
140 ##\$amu
241 #1\$3FRBNF13898935\$aRespighi, Ottorino (1879-1936)\$tFontane di Roma\$sP 106
370 ##\$aPoème symphonique constituant le premier d'un triptyque illustrant les lieux, les époques et les atmosphères de Rome
This symphonic poem is a musical work (in the 140\$a is code “mu”). Therefore, the form of the work is recorded in subfield 128\$a.

EX 6
128 ##\$aop#
140 ##\$amv
241 #1\$3FRBNF13891412\$1200#1\$aBerlioz\$bHector\$f1803-1869\$1231##\$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠Troyens\$sH 133A
370 ##\$aOpéra en 5 actes et 9 tableaux, en deux parties : “La Prise de Troie” (actes I et II), “Les Troyens à Carthage” (actes III, IV et V)
This opera is a musical work (in the 140\$a is code “mv”). Therefore, the form of the work is recorded in subfield 128\$a.
EX 7
128 ##\$acsn
140 ##\$amv
241 ##\$3FRBNF11893887\$aBrel, Jacques (1929-1978)\$tAmsterdam
608 ##\$3FRBNF13319048\$aChanson\$2rameau-Genre
This song is a musical work (in the 140\$a is code “mv”). Therefore, the form of the work is recorded in subfield 128\$a. Field 140 is used together with field 608, which gives a link to a term in an external system.
EX 8
140 ##\$aic\$b10508\$2frTAV
231 ##\$aPaths of glory\$cfilm
608 ##\$3FRBNF11982506\$aFilm de guerre\$2rameau-Genre
The code used in subfield \$b for the form “war movie” is chosen from the vocabulary defined by the Bibliothèque nationale de France for audiovisual works identified in subfield \$2. Field 140 is used together with field 608, which gives a link to a term in an external system.
EX 9
128 ##\$abt#
140 ##\$amu
241 #1\$3FRBNF12519700\$aDelibes, Léo (1836-1891)\$tCoppélia\$cballet
370 ##\$aBallet en 2 actes\$cIl existe un arrangement pour piano (1870) et une suite d’orchestre par le compositeur
This ballet is a musical work (in 140\$a is code “mu2”). Therefore, the form of the work is recorded in subfield 128\$a. The form of work in the authorized access point distinguishes this work from another work by the same composer with the same title, but in another form (see EX 10).
EX 10
128 ##\$asu#
140 #1\$amu
241 #1\$3FRBNF12519700\$aDelibes, Léo (1836-1891)\$tCoppélia\$cuite
370 ##\$aSuite d’orchestre tirée du ballet de même titre
This orchestral suite is a musical work (in the 140\$a is code “mu2”). Therefore, the form of the work is recorded in subfield 128\$a. The form of work in the authorized access point distinguishes this work from another work by the same composer with the same title, but in another form (see EX 2).
EX 11
140 ##\$ate\$bdb

241 #1\$aValls de Gomis, Estelle (1973-...)\$tLe vampire au fil des siècles : enquête autour d'un mythe\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre
370 ##\$aTexte remanié de la thèse de doctorat en littérature, soutenue à l'université Toulouse 2 en 2003\$aPrésence d'illustrations peu nombreuses\$aBibliographie (20 pages)
501 #1 \$3FRBNF13577629\$5xxxxa\$aValls de Gomis\$bEstelle\$f1973-...
EX 12
140 ##\$ate\$bbm
241 #1\$tMy family and other animals
501 #1 \$3FRBNF11901409\$5xxxxa\$aDurrell\$bGerald\$f1925-1995

History

2020	New field.
2022	Text errata.
2024	New ind. 2, update of \$a, \$b and examples.

145 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT TYPE OF EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

A categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content of the expression is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

It also reflects the number of spatial dimensions and the presence or absence of movement in which the work expressed in the form of an image or images is intended to be perceived.

According to IFLA LRM the content type of the expression can be considered a representative expression attribute. Therefore, it can be used at the work level even though the content type is usually described at the expression level.

Repeatable for an expression associating several forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
145	CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT TYPE OF EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Content Type Code	NR	O
b	Expression Form Qualification Code	NR	O
c	Other Coding for Content Type	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Representative Expression Indicator
	#	Not specified
	0	Representative expression of work
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Representative Expression Indicator

Value 0: Representative expression of work

Use for the data recording at the work level.

Use also in expression records when the information given corresponds to the representative expression.

Subfields Description

\$a Content Type Code

1-character position specifying the fundamental type of content of the expression, according to the provisions of ISBD “Content form” element.

All data entered in subfield \$a are identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character position is numbered 0. Optional. Not Repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Content Type Code	1	0

\$b Expression Form Qualification Code

6-character positions specifying the qualification applying to the content type of expression. All data entered in \$b are identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally, the character positions are numbered 0-5. Optional. Not Repeatable.

Subfield \$b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Specification of Type	1	0
Specification of Motion	1	1
Specification of Dimensionality	1	2
Sensory Specification	3	3-5

\$c Other Coding for Content Type

A code for a system code other than ISBD. Optional. Not Repeatable.

An example of another system: *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type*, <http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdacontent.html>.

For display purposes, subfield \$c can be recorded in a repeated field.

\$2 Source

Source of the code used in \$c. Mandatory if \$c is used. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Content Type Code

1-character position contains a code indicating the fundamental form of the expression. Use the following codes:

a	dataset
b	image
c	movement
d	music
e	object
f	program
g	sounds
h	spoken word
i	text
z	other content forms

\$b/0 Specification of Type

1-character position contains a code indicating what qualification of type applies to the form of expression. Use the following codes:

a	notated
b	performed
c	cartographic
x	not applicable
#	position not used

\$b/1 Specification of Motion

1-character position contains a code indicating what qualification of motion applies to the image. Use the following codes:

a	moving	
b	still	
x	not applicable	Resource is not an image.
#	position not used	

\$b/2 Specification of Dimensionality

1-character position contains a code indicating what qualification of dimensionality applies to the image. Use the following codes:

2	two-dimensional	
3	three-dimensional	
x	not applicable	Resource is not an image.
#	position not used	

\$b/3-5 Sensory Specification

3-character positions contain codes that indicate what sensory qualification applies to the form of expression. Codes entered from left to right, any unused positions are filled with blanks. Use the following codes:

a	aural
b	gustatory
c	olfactory
d	tactile
e	visual
#	position not used

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
181 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT FORM	Field applies to the manifestation level.

Examples

EX 1A
145 0#\$ai\$baxxe##
145 0#\$ctxt\$2rdacontent
241 ##\$3FRBNF11894146\$aBrontë, Emily (1818-1848)\$tWuthering Heights
Content type of representative expression for the work of Emily Brontë, recorded according to the provisions of ISBD and according to RDA vocabulary encoding scheme for the element Content type. As representative expression attribute (value "0" of indicator 1), this field is present in the record for the work.
EX 1B
145 0#\$ai\$baxxe##
145 0#\$ctxt\$2rdacontent
242 #1\$3FRBNF12034945\$aBrontë, Emily (1818-1848)\$tWuthering Heights\$mFrançais
\$wDelebecque\$nTexte
Content type for the French translation by Frédéric Delebecque of the work of Emily Brontë, published as a book. The content type is recorded twice, according to the provisions of ISBD and according to RDA vocabulary encoding scheme for this element.
EX 1C
145 ##\$ah\$bbxxa##
145 ##\$cspw\$2rdacontent

242 #1\$3FRBNF12034945\$aBrontë, Emily (1818-1848)\$tWuthering Heights\$mFrançais\$wDelebecque\$nParole énoncée\$wRichard
Content type for the French translation by Frédéric Delebecque of the work of Emily Brontë, read by Mélodie Richard and published as an audio book. The content type is recorded twice, according to the provisions of ISBD and according to RDA vocabulary encoding scheme for this element.
EX 2A
145 0#\$ai\$baxxe##
145 0#\$ctxt\$2rdacontent
242 #1\$3FRBNF12209476\$aApollinaire, Guillaume (1880-1918)\$t≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠bestiaire \$mFrançais\$nTexte
Content type for the representative expression of the collection of poems by Guillaume Apollinaire, published as a book in 1911 with illustrations by Raoul Dufy.
EX 2B
145 0#\$ab\$bxb2e##
145 0#\$csti\$2rdacontent
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the Work>\$aDufy, Raoul (1877-1953)\$tIllustrations pour “Le Bestiaire” de Guillaume Apollinaire\$wGravure sur bois
Content type for the representative expression of the collection of woodcuts by Raoul Dufy, published in 1911 together with the poems by Guillaume Apollinaire as illustrations for them.
EX 3A
145 0#\$ad\$baxxe##
145 0#\$cntm\$2rdacontent
241 ##\$3FRBNF13898840\$aRavel, Maurice (1875-1937)\$t Boléro\$sO 81
Content type of representative expression for the work of Maurice Ravel, recorded according to the provisions of ISBD and according to RDA vocabulary encoding scheme for the element Content type. As representative expression attribute (value “0” of indicator 1), this field is present in the record for the work.
EX 3B
145 ##\$ad\$baxxe##
145 ##\$cntm\$2rdacontent
242 ##\$3FRBNF13917708\$aRavel, Maurice (1875-1937)\$t Boléro\$sO 81\$lArrangement\$vPiano (4 mains)\$nMusique notée
Content type for an arrangement by the composer of his work “Boléro”, published as a music score.
EX 3C
145 ##\$ad\$bbxxa##
145 ##\$cprm\$2rdacontent
242 ##\$3FRBNF13917708\$aRavel, Maurice (1875-1937)\$t Boléro\$sO 81\$lArrangement\$vPiano (4 mains)\$nMusique exécutée\$wAchatz ; Nagai
Content type for the recording of a performance of this arrangement.
EX 4A
145 0#\$ab\$bxb2e##
145 0#\$csti\$2rdacontent
145 0#\$ai\$baxxe##
145 0#\$ctxt\$2rdacontent

241 ##\$3FRBNF11920562\$aPratt, Hugo (1927-1995)\$tCorto Sconta dette Arcana
Content types of the representative expression for a comic strip by Hugo Pratt, recorded according to the provisions of ISBD and according to RDA vocabulary encoding scheme for the element Content type. As representative expression attribute (value 21” of indicator 1), this field is present in the record for the work.
EX 4B
145 0#\$ab\$bxb2e##
145 0#\$csti\$2rdacontent
145 0#\$ai\$baxxe##
145 0#\$ctxt\$2rdacontent
242 ##\$3FRBNF14444745\$aPratt, Hugo (1927-1995)\$tCorto Sconta dette Arcana\$mFrançais
Content types of the expression corresponding to the French translation of the comic strip by Hugo Pratt, recorded according to the provisions of ISBD and according to the RDA vocabulary encoding scheme for the element Content type. Although this expression is a translation, its content types (image combined with text) are those of the representative expression. Indicator 1 may therefore be entered with the value “0”.

History

2020	New field.
2024	Text edit.

146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE

Field Definition and Scope

Details of the instruments and/or voices, devices, and other performers which make up a representative expression of a musical work or an expression of a musical work.

According to IFLA LRM, the medium of performance of an expression can be considered a representative expression attribute. Therefore, it can be used at the work level, even though the medium of performance is usually described at the expression level.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
146	CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE	R	O
a	Type of Performance Medium	NR	O
b	Instrument or Voice Soloist	R	O
c	Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, not Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Subfield \$d	R	MA
d	Vocal or Instrumental Ensemble	R	MA
e	Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Preceding Subfield \$d	R	O
f	Specific Instrument Related to the Generic one Recorded in Preceding Subfield \$c or \$e	R	O
h	Number of Parts	R	O
i	Number of Players	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Representative Expression Indicator
	#	Not specified
	0	Representative expression of work
	1	Derived expression
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Representative Expression Indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes the original (i.e. representative expression) or an arranged medium of performance.

Value 0: Representative expression of work

Use for the data recording at the work level.

Use also in expression records when the information given corresponds to the representative expression.

Value 1: Derived expression

Use for the data recording at the expression level when the described expression is an arrangement of another expression.

Subfields Description

\$a Type of Performance Medium

1-character code defines the genre of the work based on the type of performance medium. Not repeatable.

a	vocal a cappella music	
b	instrumental music	EX 1-4 , 6-8
c	vocal and instrumental music	EX 5
d	electroacoustic music	
e	mixed media music (electroacoustic and other media)	
u	undefined, variable	E.g. Renaissance vocal or instrumental music
z	other	E.g. ordinary objects or natural sounds

\$b Instrument or Voice Soloist

9-character code indicating a voice or instrument category, the number of voices or instruments for that category, and other details (EX [2](#), [3](#), [5](#)). Repeatable.

The number of soloists in a voice or instrument category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use “uu”.

For the voice or instrument category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/1-9, A/13.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Subfield \$b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices	2 (with leading 0)	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Other Details	4 (see Code list B-C)	5-8

\$c Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, not Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Subfield \$d

9-character code indicating an instrument or voice, etc. category, the total number of instruments or voices, etc. for that category and other details. Mandatory if no subfield \$d is entered. Repeatable. (EX [1](#), [3](#), [4](#), [6-8](#))

The number of parts in a category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use “uu”.

For the voice or instrument, etc. category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/1-9, A/12-13.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Instruments (e.g. continuo) or families of instruments (e.g. percussions) generically recorded in an occurrence of subfield \$c may be further specified in one or more immediately following occurrences of subfield \$f.

Subfield \$c fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices, etc.	2 (with leading 0)	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice, etc.	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Other Details	4 (see Code list B-C)	5-8

\$d Vocal or Instrumental Ensemble

9-character code indicating one category of vocal or instrumental ensemble, the total number of ensembles for that category, the number of real parts of that ensemble and other details (EX [2](#), [5](#)). Mandatory if no subfield \$c is entered. Repeatable.

The number of ensembles is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use “uu”.

For the category of ensemble (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/10-11.

The number of real parts (e.g. the number of voices for a choir) is recorded with a two-character code (character positions 5-6), with leading 0 if necessary. If the number is not determined, use “uu”.

For other details (character positions 7-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Instruments or voices, etc. included in ensembles recorded in subfield \$d may be specified in one or more immediately following occurrences of subfield \$e.

Subfield \$d fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Ensembles	2 (with leading 0)	0-1
Category of Ensemble	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Number of Real Parts	2 (with leading 0)	5-6
Other Details	2 (see Code list B-C)	7-8

\$e Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Preceding Subfield \$d

9-character code indicating a voice or instrument, etc. category included in an ensemble recorded in an immediately preceding occurrence of subfield \$d, the total number of instruments or voices, etc. for that category and other details. Repeatable. (EX [2](#), [5](#))

The number of parts in a category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use “uu”.

For the voice or instrument, etc. category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/1-9, A/12-13.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Instruments (e.g. continuo) or families of instruments (e.g. percussions) generically recorded in an occurrence of subfield \$e may be further specified in one or more immediately following occurrences of subfield \$f.

Subfield \$e fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices	2 (with leading 0)	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Other Details	4 (see Code list B-C)	5-8

\$f Specific Instrument Related to the Generic one Recorded in Preceding Subfield \$c or \$e

9-character code indicating a specific instrument recorded generically (e.g. electronic keyboards) or collectively as a family (e.g. percussions) in an immediately preceding occurrence of subfield \$c or \$e, the total number of instruments for that category and other details (EX [6](#)). Repeatable.

The number of parts in an instrument category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use “uu”.

For the instrument category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/2-9.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Subfield \$f fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments	2 (with leading 0)	0-1
Category of Instrument	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Other Details	4 (see Code list B-C)	5-8

\$h Number of Parts

4-character code indicating the total number of real parts related to the category entered in position 3 (EX [2](#)). Repeatable.

The number of parts is recorded with a three-digit code (character positions 0-2), with leading 0 if necessary. Use \$h only if this number is determined.

For categories (character position 3), use the codes listed in Code list D.

Subfield \$h fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Parts	3 (with leading 0)	0-2
Category	1 (see Code list D)	3

\$i Number of Players

4-character code indicating the total number of players related to the category entered in position 3 (EX [1](#), [3-5](#), [8](#)). Repeatable.

The number of players is recorded with a three-digit code (character positions 0-2), with leading 0 if necessary. Use \$i only if this number is determined.

For categories (character position 3), use the codes listed in Code list D.

Subfield \$i fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Players	3 (with leading 0)	0-2
Category	1 (see Code list D)	3

Notes on Field Contents

Field Repeatability

Repeatable in the case of alternate media of performance. In this case, position 8 of subfields \$b to \$f should be used to indicate which instruments or voices are alternates.

Subfield Contents

The order and occurrence of subfields is to some extent mandatory:

- at least one subfield \$c or \$d is mandatory if field is present;
- a subfield \$b may occur only if at least one subfield \$c or \$d is entered;
- a subfield \$e may occur only if at least one subfield \$d is entered;
- a subfield \$e may immediately follow only a subfield \$d, \$e or \$f;
- a subfield \$f may occur only if at least one subfield \$c or \$e is entered;
- a subfield \$f may immediately follow only a subfield \$c, \$e or \$f.

The degree of detail of the field may vary according to the local practice, e.g. all instruments employed in an orchestra may or may not be specified (EX [1-3](#), [5](#), [6](#)). The most common example of non-detailed indication are percussion instruments in ensemble: sometimes only a close analysis of the score makes it

possible to specify all instruments; in such cases the indication will more likely be limited to the number of percussion players.

Subfield \$b should be used in place of subfield \$c to differentiate soloist(s) in opposition with accompanying voice(s)/instrument(s), etc. (entered in \$c) or ensemble(s) (entered in \$d) or their arranged version (EX [2](#), [3](#), [5](#)).

If there is no distinction, enter all in \$c.

If detailed, instruments/voices, etc. being part of ensembles entered in \$d are always coded in \$e (EX [2](#), [5](#)).

In subfield \$d, character positions 5-6 may be used to indicate the number of real parts of the ensemble (EX [5](#)). If used to code more than one ensemble, positions 5-6 may be used only if all the ensembles have the same parts (e.g. for two choirs for four mixed voices code 02cmi04##); if parts vary, code ## (EX [2](#)).

As an alternative, field \$d may be repeated for each ensemble.

In case of repeated subfield \$d, subfields \$e must be entered after each related subfield \$d (EX [5](#)).

Subfield \$f may be used to specify individual instruments from a generic code used in \$c or \$e, e.g. the specific instruments coded as percussion in \$c (EX [6](#)). Each series of \$f must immediately follow the related subfield \$c or \$e.

It is recommended to use subfield \$h to specify the number of real parts only when it differs from that of players entered in \$i, or when the number of players cannot be determined (EX [2](#)).

In subfields \$h and \$i, the code “a” in position 3 must be used by default to indicate the total number of parts and players when the musical work is vocal a cappella music or when it is instrumental music (EX [1](#), [3](#), [4](#), [8](#)).

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION	This note may contain details in subfield \$f, such as the use of different instruments by one performer or pertinence of single instruments to different groups within larger ensembles, etc.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE	This field gives details of the instruments and/or voices, devices and other performers which make up a musical work. In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.

Examples

EX 1A
146 0# \$ab\$ c01svl####\$ c01svc####\$ c01kpf####\$ i003a
241 #1\$3FRBNF165917898\$aStrauss, Richard (1864-1949)\$4230\$tTrios\$rViolon, violoncelle, piano\$sNo 2\$sTrV 71\$uRé majeur
This musical work is an instrumental trio with no soloist.
EX 1B
146 0# \$ab\$ c01svl####\$ c01svc####\$ c01kpf####\$ i002s\$ i001k\$ i003a
241 #1\$3FRBNF165917898\$aStrauss, Richard (1864-1949)\$4230\$tTrios\$rViolon, violoncelle, piano\$sNo 2\$sTrV 71\$uRé majeur
This musical work is an instrumental trio with no soloist. The field 146 has more detailed data structure.
EX 2A

146 0# \$ab\$b01kpf##### \$d01ofu##### \$e01qco##### \$h001j\$h001o\$h001q
241 #1\$3FRBNF139150022\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$4230\$tConcertos\$rPiano, orchestre\$sKV 238\$uSi bémol majeur
Mozart's concerto for piano KV 238 is an instrumental work for soloist and orchestra (with a conductor).
EX 2B
146 0# \$b01kpf##### \$d01ofu#####
241 #1\$3FRBNF139150022\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$4230\$tConcertos\$rPiano, orchestre\$sKV 238\$uSi bémol majeur
Mozart's concerto for piano KV 238 is an instrumental work for soloist and orchestra (with a conductor). The field 146 has less detailed data structure.
EX 3A
146 1# \$ab\$b01kpf##### \$c02svl##### \$c01sva##### \$c01svc##### \$i001j\$i004s\$i005a
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$tConcertos\$rPiano, orchestre\$sKV 238\$uSi bémol majeur\$lArrangement\$vPiano, violons (2), alto, violoncelle
Mozart's concerto for piano KV 238, arranged for piano and string quartet.
EX 3B
146 1# \$b01kpf##### \$c02svl##### \$c01sva##### \$c01svc##### \$i005a
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$tConcertos\$rPiano, orchestre\$sKV 238\$uSi bémol majeur\$lArrangement\$vPiano, violons (2), alto, violoncelle
Mozart's concerto for piano KV 238, arranged for piano and string quartet. The field 146 has less detailed data structure.
EX 4
146 0# \$ab\$c01wfl##### \$c01wob#### \$c01svl#### \$c01mco##### \$i002a
241 #1\$3FRBNF14805457\$aPhilidor, Pierre Danican (1681-1731)\$4230\$tSuites\$rFlûte ou hautbois ou violon, basse continue\$sOp. 1, no 6
This is a piece for flute or oboe or violin and continuo. Code "c" in position 8 indicates the optional use of oboe or violin as alternative instruments.
EX 5A
146 0# \$ac\$b01vms##### \$b01vbs##### \$d01cmi04#### \$e01vso##### \$e01val##### \$e01vte##### \$e01vbs##### \$d01ofu##### \$e01qco##### \$i002l\$i001c\$i001o\$i001q
241 #1\$3FRBNF13911794\$aDurufié, Maurice (1902-1986)\$4230\$tRequiem\$sOp. 9
Maurice Durufié's Requiem op. 9 is a vocal and instrumental work for mezzo-soprano, bass, 4-voice choir (soprano, alto, tenor, bass) and orchestra (with conductor).
EX 5B
146 0# \$ac\$b01vms##### \$b01vbs##### \$d01cmi04#### \$d01ofu##### \$e01qco#####
241 #1\$3FRBNF13911794\$aDurufié, Maurice (1902-1986)\$4230\$tRequiem\$sOp. 9
Maurice Durufié's Requiem op. 9 is a vocal and instrumental work for mezzo-soprano, bass, 4-voice choir (soprano, alto, tenor, bass) and orchestra (with conductor). The field 146 has less detailed data structure.
EX 6
146 0# \$ab\$c01pun##### \$f01pti##### \$f01kgf##### \$f01pvi##### \$f01pds#####
241 #1\$3FRBNF14788420\$aTelman, André (1967-....)\$4230\$tVoyage sans retour

This instrumental musical work is a piece for a percussion quartet. The catalogue has detailed the instruments.
EX 7
146 0# \$ab\$ c01kpf#4##
241 #1\$3FRBNF17783838\$aHahn, Reynaldo (1874-1947)\$4230\$tVariations sur un thème de Charles Levadé
A piece for piano, four hands.
EX 8
146 0# \$ab\$ c01wcl#a##\$ c01wcl#b##\$i002a
241 #1\$3FRBNF13956989\$aPoulenc, Francis (1899-1963)\$4230\$tSonates\$rClarinettes (2)\$sFP 7
A piece for two clarinets (one in A, the other in B flat).

CODE LISTS

Code lists are maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Music Documentation Centres).

The lists show a definition term and several other terms using the same code, without distinction between:

- similar instruments, voices or devices having the same code;
- definition in other language(s);
- orthographic variants.

Chronological, organological or language specifications are added in brackets if strictly necessary. The pitch of the instruments is specified when necessary (e.g.: A, Bb, F).

A: codes for subfields \$b-\$f, positions 2-4

Pertinence of instruments to “families” in code lists is specified by the first character of the 3-letter code.

Instruments needing a code in pos. 5-8 are shown only when they have a specific name in any language.

1. Voices
2. Woodwinds
3. Brass instruments
4. Strings, bowed
5. Strings, plucked
6. Keyboard
7. Percussion
8. Electric/electronic instruments and devices
9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments
10. Choruses
11. Orchestras, ensembles
12. Conductors
13. Other performers

(Code lists updated by IAML are available on IAML website [<http://www.iaml.info/>] (2009-11-10))

B: codes for subfields \$b to \$f, positions 5-7

Note: positions 5-6 for \$d indicate number of parts in ensemble, with leading zero (## if not spec.).

1- Codes for position 5: tessitura, prepared (not applied to subfield \$d)

Code	Definition	Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants
#	not specified - position not required	
a	sopranino	
b	soprano	dessus pardessus sopran treble
c	alto	alt contralto haute-contre quinte
d	tenor	taille ténor tenore
e	baritone	baritone baryton
f	bass	bajo bas basse basso
g	contrabass	contrebasse contrabbasso contrabass
h	sub-contrabass	basse grave basso grave octobasse sub-contrabbasso
i	sopracute	garklein sopracuto suraigu
j	high	acuto aigu hoch klein petit piccolo small
k	medium	medio mittel moyen
l	low	big grand grande grave gross large tief
m	prepared	prepare preparato

2- Codes for position 6: number of hands/players; keys of pitched instruments (not applied to subfield \$d)

Code	Definition	Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants
#	not specified - position not required	
1	one hand	eine Hand une main una mano
2	two players on one instrument	deux exécutants sur un instrument due esecutori su uno strumento
3	three hands	drei Hände trois mains tre mani
4	four hands	vier Hände quatre mains quattro mani
6	six hands	sechs Hände six mains sei mani
8	eight hands	acht Hände huit mains otto mani
a	A	la
b	B flat	B si bémol si bemolle
c	C	ut do
d	D	ré
e	E	mi
f	F	fa
g	G	sol
h	B	H si
i	E flat	Es mi bémol mi bemolle
j	A flat	As la bémol la bemolle
k	D flat	Des ré bémol re bemolle
l	F sharp	Fis fa diesis fa dièse
n	Instrument played in non standard way	instrument joué de manière non standard strumenti suonati in modo non standard
s	non standard string number	nombre de cordes non standard numero di corde non standard

3- Codes for position 7: other

Code	Definition	Notes Other definitions, language terms, variants
#	not specified - position not required	
r	electric	électrique elettrico
s	electronic	électronique elettronico
t	midi	
v	amplified	amplifié amplificato
w	recorded	enregistré registrato
q	antiquity	antiquité antichità
y	ethnic, traditional	ethnique, traditionnel etnico, tradizionale

C: codes for subfields \$b to \$f, position 8

Code	Definition
#	not specified – position not required
b	ad libitum
c	may take place of the preceding code/alternative
d	used by the same player as the preceding code

D: codes for subfields \$h-\$i, position 3

Code	Definition
a	performers total
b	brass instruments
c	choirs
d	wind instruments
e	electro-acoustic instruments
i	instruments total
j	solo instruments
k	keyboard instruments
l	solo voices
m	miscellaneous, other instruments
o	orchestras
p	percussion instruments
q	conductors
s	bowed string instruments
t	plucked string instruments
v	voices total
w	woodwind instruments
x	choral voices
y	ensemble instruments
z	devices, other performers

History

2020	New field.

2022	Text errata.
2024	Text edit.

147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT

Field Definition and Scope

Coded information indicated the colour and/or sound content of a work or an expression of a work.

According to IFLA LRM, the colour and sound content of an expression can be considered a representative expression attribute. Therefore, it can be used at the work level, even though the colour and sound content are usually described at the expression level.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
147	CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	R	O
a	Colour Characteristics Code	NR	O
b	Other Coding for Colour Characteristics	NR	O
c	Precision on Colour Content	R	O
e	Sound Characteristics Code	NR	O
f	Other Coding for Sound Characteristics	NR	O
g	Recording Technique	NR	O
h	Spatialization of Sound	NR	O
2	Source	R	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Representative Expression Indicator
	#	Not specified
	0	Representative expression of work
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Representative Expression Indicator

Value 0: Representative expression of work

Use for the data recording at the work level.

Use also in expression records when the information given corresponds to the representative expression.

Subfields Description

\$a Colour Characteristics Code

1-character code indicates the general colour characteristics of a work or an expression of a work. Not repeatable. See EX [1-5](#).

Subfield \$a of fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position(s)
Colour Content Code	1	0

\$b Other Coding for Colour Characteristics

A code for a colour characteristic from the system other than UNIMARC used in subfield \$a. Not repeatable.

\$c Precision on Colour Content

1-character code precisely indicates the colour. Repeatable if more than one colour is displayed. (EX [4B](#))

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position(s)
Precision on Colour Content Code	1	0

\$e Sound Characteristics Code

1-character code indicates sound characteristics of a work or an expression of a work. Not repeatable. (EX [2](#), [3](#))

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position(s)
Sound Content Code	1	0

\$f Other Coding for Sound Characteristics

A code for a sound characteristic from the system other than UNIMARC used in subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$g Recording Technique

1-character code indicates the recording technique of the recording. Not repeatable. (EX [6](#), [7](#))

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position(s)
Recording Technique Code	1	0

\$h Spatialization of Sound

1-character code indicates the recording mode of the recording. Not repeatable. (EX [6](#), [7](#)).

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position(s)
Recording Mode Code	1	0

\$2 Source

Identification in the coded form for the system from which the code used in \$b and/or \$f is derived.

Repeatable if more than one vocabulary is used. This subfield should directly follow the subfield contains the controlled vocabulary term. Mandatory if subfield \$b or \$f is present.

Notes on Field Contents

For display purposes, colour or sound content can be recorded in a repeated field. (EX [2](#), [3](#))

\$a/0 Colour Content Code

1-character code is used to specify a colour content characteristic.

Use the following codes:

a	black and white	
b	one colour (white background)	
c	one colour (transparent background)	
d	two colours	
e	sepia	
f	greyscale	

g	multicoloured	
h	mixed	Combination of black-and-white, one colour, and/or colours.
u	unknown	
z	other	
x	not applicable	

\$c/0 Precision on Colour Content Code

1-character code indicates the colour represented in the expression.

Use the following codes:

a	red
b	orange
c	yellow
d	green
e	blue
f	purple
g	pink
h	brown
i	black
j	white

\$e/0 Sound Content Code

1-character code specifies a sound content characteristic. Use the following codes:

a	silent	
b	presence of sound	Use for speech or other sounds. This value is also used if the sound is present, and the cataloguer is not able to specify if the sound includes speech.
c	talking/presence of speech	
d	absence of speech	Use for sounds other than speech.
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	

\$g/0 Recording Technique Code

1-character code indicates the recording technique of the recording. Use the following codes:

a	acoustic
b	electrical
c	digital
d	analog
u	unknown
z	other
v	multiple techniques

\$h/0 Recording Mode Code

1-character code indicates the recording mode of the recording.

Use the following codes:

a	monoaural
b	stereophonic
c	multichannel, surround or quadraphonic

u	unknown
v	mixed
x	not applicable
z	other

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION	This field is used to record general unstructured information on an expression, such as precisions on the sound content (subfield \$a) or colour content (subfield \$b).
UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
115 CODED DATA FIELD: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES	Subfield \$a positions 4 (Colour indicator) and 5 (Sound indicator), and subfield b position 5 (Kind of Sound for Moving Images). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.
116 CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS	Subfield \$a position 3 (Colour). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.
117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA	Subfield \$a position 8 (Colour). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.
120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL	Subfield \$a position 0 (Colour indicator). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.
126 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	Subfield \$a position 2 (Kind of Sound) and subfield \$b (Sound Recording Coded Data). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.
130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	Subfield \$a position 7 (Colour). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.
135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES	Subfield \$a positions 2 (Colour) and 4 (Sound). In IFLA LRM cataloguing, this data is applicable at the manifestation level only.

Examples

EX 1
147 0#\$aa
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the Work>\$aDufy, Raoul (1877-1953)\$tIllustrations pour “Le Bestiaire” de Guillaume Apollinaire\$wGravure sur bois
The woodcuts illustrating the poems of Guillaume Apollinaires are in black and white.
EX 2A
147 0#\$aa
147 0#\$ed
231 ##\$aMetropolis\$cfilm\$d1927
Colour and sound contents of the representative expression for the film by Fritz Lang (black and white, absence of speech) recorded as representative expression attributes in the work record.

EX 2B
147 ##\$ag
147 0#\$ed
232 ##\$3FRBNF12207489\$aMetropolis\$cfilm\$d1927\$wVersion colorisée\$o1984
Colour and sound contents of the expression corresponding to the new coloured version of Fritz Lang's film by Giorgio Moroder.
EX 3
147 0#\$ag
147 0#\$ec\$ha
231 ##\$aBarry Lyndon\$cfilm
Colour and sound contents of the representative expression for the film by Stanley Kubrick (multicoloured, presence of speech, monoaural sound) recorded as representative expression attributes in the work record.
EX 4A
147 ##\$ab\$cc
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aToulouse-Lautrec, Henri de (1864-1901)\$tAmbassadeurs. Aristide Bruant dans son cabaret\$IÉpreuve d'essai\$w pierre de jaune
Colour content for a preparatory state of a lithography by Toulouse-Lautrec using only the colour yellow.
EX 4B
147 ##\$ag\$cc\$cd\$ca
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aToulouse-Lautrec, Henri de (1864-1901)\$tAmbassadeurs. Aristide Bruant dans son cabaret\$IÉpreuve d'essai\$wpierres de jaune, rouge et vert olive
Colour content for another preparatory state of a lithography by Toulouse-Lautrec, with two more colours (red and green).
EX 4C
147 0#\$ag
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aToulouse-Lautrec, Henri de (1864-1901)\$tAmbassadeurs. Aristide Bruant dans son cabaret\$IÉpreuve de tirage
Colour content for the final state of a lithography by Toulouse-Lautrec, which corresponds to the published poster and is considered as the representative expression of the work. The poster is multicoloured; the details of the colours are not recorded.
EX 5
147 0#\$ag
241 #1\$3FRBNF12246267\$aParr, Martin (1952-....)\$t≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠last resort : photographs of New Brighton
Colour content of the representative expression of the work of the photographer Martin Parr, consisting of a collection of colour photographs published as a book.
EX 6
147 ##\$gd\$hb
242#1\$3FRBNF13915149\$aBach, Johann Sebastian (1685-1750)\$t≠NSB≠Das ≠NSE≠wohltemperierte Klavier\$sBWV 846-893\$nMusique exécutée\$wGould
Information on the sound content of a sound recording: subfield \$a is unnecessary, but subfield \$g indicates that it is an analog recording and subfield \$h that it is a stereophonic recording.

EX 7
127 ##\$a001550
147 ##\$gc\$hb
242 ##\$3FRBNF13917708\$aRavel, Maurice (1875-1937)\$t Boléro\$sO 81\$lArrangement\$vPiano (4 mains)\$nMusique exécutée\$wAchatz ; Nagai
Information on the sound content of a sound recording: subfield \$a is unnecessary, however subfield \$g is used to indicate that it is a digital recording and subfield \$h that it is a stereophonic recording.

History

2020	New field.
2024	Text edit.

150 CODED DATA FIELD: CORPORATE NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Coded data field used to convey additional information about the name when the access point in the 2--authorized access point field is a name (corporate, meeting, or geographic name).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
150	CODED DATA FIELD: CORPORATE NAME	NR	O
a	Type of Government Agency	NR	MA
b	Conference or Meeting Code	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Type of Government Agency

1-character code indicates whether the access point is for a government organization. (Academic institutions are not considered government agencies.) Mandatory. Not repeatable.

a	federal/national
b	state/province
c	county/departement
d	local (municipal, etc.)
e	multi-local (interstate compacts, etc., below the national level)
f	intergovernmental
g	government in exile or clandestine
h	level not determined
u	unknown
y	not a government organization
z	other government level

\$b Conference or Meeting Code

1-character code indicating whether the corporate body is a meeting. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc., as defined in the cataloguing codes; they may be entered directly under their own name or not (see field 210, indicator 1). Optional. Not repeatable.

0	the corporate body is not a conference/meeting
1	the corporate body is conference/meeting

Examples

EX 1
150 ##\$ay\$b0
210 02\$aBrunel University.\$bEducation Liaison Centre
EX 2
150 ##\$ab\$b0
210 01\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration

EX 3
150 ##\$aa\$b0
210 01\$aUnited States.\$bDepartment of Defense
EX 4
150 ##\$ay\$b1
210 02\$a\$aLabour Party\$c(Great Britain).\$bConference\$d(72nd ;\$f1972 ;\$eBlackpool, Lancashire)
EX 5
150 ##\$ay\$b1
210 12\$aColloque André Chammson\$f2000\$eNîmes
EX 6
150 ##\$ay\$b1
210 12\$aUniversité d'été du tourisme rural\$d10\$f2000\$eManosque, Alpes-de-Haute-Provence
EX 7
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$ay\$b1
152 ##\$aRCR
210 12\$aПроблемы развития минерально-сырьевой базы платиновых металлов России, научно-практическая конференция\$f1995\$eПетрозаводск
EX 8
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$ay\$b0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aРоссийская академия адвокатуры\$bНовосибирский институт\$bЦентр сравнительного трудового права
EX 9
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$aa\$b0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 01\$aРоссийская Федерация\$bГосударственная Дума
EX 10
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$ag\$b0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 01\$aФинляндия\$bТерийокское правительство\$c1939-1940

History

2001	Changes in name and function of field.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$b Conference or meeting code.

152 RULES

Field Definition and Scope

The rule system under which the 2-- authorized access point and its accompanying reference structure were formulated.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
152	RULES	NR	M
a	Cataloguing Rules	NR	O
b	Subject System	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Cataloguing Rules

This subfield identifies the cataloguing rules used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be applicable for most names, titles, and name/titles. The cataloguing rules should be specified using the codes from Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format or the full name of the rules. For display, codes can be used to generate the abbreviations specified in *Guidelines for Authorities and Reference Records*, Appendix C. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$b Subject System

This subfield identifies the subject or subject category system used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be especially applicable to topical subjects, but is applicable to names and titles, as well as subject categories. In some systems, an access point/reference structure may be formulated under cataloguing rules but also be used in a subject system. Thus the name would be coded for both the descriptive rules and the subject system. The codes from Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format or the full name of the thesaurus may be used to specify the subject or category system. Optional. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The \$a subfield identifies the cataloguing rules used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be applicable for most names, titles, and name/titles. The cataloguing rules should be specified using the codes from Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format or the full name of the rules. For display, codes can be used to generate the abbreviations specified in Bell, Barbara L. *An Annotated Guide to Current National Bibliographies*. – 2nd completely rev. ed. – München: K. G. Saur, 1998; see *List of abbreviations and acronyms*, pp. vii-ix.

The \$b subfield identifies the subject system used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be especially applicable to topical subjects, but is applicable to names and titles also. In some systems, an access point/reference structure may be formulated under cataloguing rules but also be used in a subject system. Thus the name would be coded for both the descriptive rules and the subject system. The codes from Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format or the full name of the thesaurus may be used to specify the subject system.

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$aAACR2\$b lc
200 #1\$aShai,\$bMordekhai
EX 2
152 ##\$b lc
215 ##\$aRed River Valley (Minn. and N.D.-Man.)
EX 3
152 ##\$aAACR2\$b lc
200 #1\$aWagner,\$bRichard,\$f1813-1883\$xPictorial works
EX 4
152 ##\$aAACR2\$bcaf
230 ##\$aSérie d'études de la réglementation gouvernementale
EX 5
152 ##\$aAACR2
215 ##\$aCeylon
EX 6
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aГребенщиков\$bГ. Д.\$f1883-1964\$gГеоргий Дмитриевич
EX 7
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
152 ##\$aRCR
230 ##\$aСказание о призвании варягов

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Notes on Field Contents.
2009	Updated definition/scope: \$a Cataloguing system.
2009	Updated definition/scope.

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Coded data used to convey additional information when the access point carried in the 2-- authorized access point field is a title.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
154	CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE	NR	MA
a	Title Processing Data	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title Processing Data

1-character code. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Subfield \$a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Type of Series Code	1	0
Type of Entity Code	1	1

Notes on Field Contents

\$a/0 Type of Series Code

1-character code indicates the type of series when the access point is a title of a series.

a	monographic series
b	multipart item (e.g., kit, score and parts, multivolume monograph)
c	series-like phrase (not to be considered a series)
x	not applicable
z	other

\$a/1 Type of Entity Code

1-character code indicates the type of entity when the access point is an authorized title access point for a work or an expression.

a	work
b	expression
x	not applicable

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1
154 ##\$aax

230 ##\$aCBMS regional conference series in mathematics
EX 2
154 ##\$abx
230 ##\$aCambridge history of Iran
EX 3
154 ##\$acx
230 ##\$aViking books

History

2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$a/1 Type of Entity Code.

160 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

Field Definition and Scope

Codes for geographic areas associated with the 2-- authorized access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
160	GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE	NR	O
a	Geographic area code	R	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Geographic Area Code

Geographic area code. 7-characters. Mandatory. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The coding scheme contains seven alphabetic characters and hyphens and, so far as possible, provides a hierarchical breakdown of geographic and political entities. For codes use MARC Code List for Geographic Areas (<http://www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/gacshome.html>). See also Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1
160 ##\$an-us-mi
200 #1\$aFord,\$bGerald R.,\$f1913-\$xMuseums\$zMichigan
EX 2
160 ##\$ae-fr---\$ae-pl---
240 ##\$1215##\$aFrance.\$1230##\$aTreaties, etc.\$nPoland,\$k1948 Mar. 2
EX 3
160 ##\$ae-gx---
230 ##\$aBible\$zGermany
EX 4
160 ##\$an-cn---
250 ##\$aCanadian Grand Prix Race
EX 5

160 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

160 ##\$af-ke---
250 ##\$aWater resources development\$zKenya
EX 6
160 ##\$asa-----
215 ##\$aAmazon River

180 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition and Scope

Coded data used to convey additional information when the access point carried in the 2-- authorized access point field is a form, genre, or physical characteristics.

Occurrence & Subfields

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
180	CODED DATA FIELD: FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	NR	O
a	Form or Genre or Physical Characteristics Code	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Form or Genre or Physical Characteristics Code

1-character code is used to indicate whether the entity identified in the field 280 is a form, genre, or describes physical characteristics. Optional. Not repeatable. (EX [1-3](#)).

a	form
b	genre
c	physical characteristics

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1
180 ##\$aa
280 #0\$aDictionaries
The entity Dictionaries is a form entity.
EX 2
180 ##\$ab
280 #0\$aEpistolary novels
The entity Epistolary novel is a genre entity.
EX 3
180 ##\$ac
280 #3\$aBritish marbled papers\$yGermany\$z17th century
The entity British marbled papers describe physical characteristics.

History

2019	New field.

CONTROL SUBFIELDS

Definition and Scope of Subfields

The group of subfields, defined similarly in many fields throughout the format, used to provide specific identifiers, relationships, sources of terms and codes and to qualify the form recorded in the field.

Possible uses include providing links to both authority and bibliographic records, and to other fields within a single record.

The name, description, repeatability and input standard may vary from the field to field.

Notes on Subfield Contents

Control fields are valid only for certain fields listed in the table. Note that when the control field is marked as 'where applicable,' the manual includes it only for fields where this control subfield is typically relevant in practice, not for all applicable fields.

Subfield	Used in Fields
\$0 Instruction Phrase	4-- block (except 431, 432), 5-- block (except 531, 532), 640, 741, 742
\$1 Linking Data	240, 241, 242, 245, 430, 440, 441, 442, 445, 540, 541, 542, 545, 641, 642, 740, 741, 742, 745
\$2 Source*	017, 036, 101, 105, 125, 140, 145, 147, 340, 4-- block (except 431, 432), 5-- block, 6-- block (except 610, 640, 675, 676, 680), 7-- block (except 731, 732), 801, 822, 886
\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	Where applicable
\$4 Relator Code	200, 210, 220, 241, 242, 400, 410, 420, 441, 442, 500, 501, 502, 510, 511, 512, 520, 521, 522, 541, 542, 700, 710, 720, 741, 742
\$5 Relationship Control	4-- block (except 431, 432), 5-- block
\$6 Interfield Linking Data	Where applicable
\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	2-- block, 3-- block, 4-- block, 5-- block, 7-- block
\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	2-- block, 4-- block, 5-- block, 7-- block
\$R Real World Object URI	Where applicable

*Subfields \$2 in the fields not included in the table are not control subfields.

History

2009	Updated.
2019	Editorial changes. Redefinition. Added the fields where the subfields are used. Subfield \$2 - renamed.
2024	Text edit. Update \$3 and new \$R.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

Subfield Definition

A special introductory phrase that can be used when displaying a particular access point as a reference.

The instruction phrase may be carried in lieu of or in addition to the Relationship Code in subfield \$5. See section 6.12, Display of Reference and Authority Records for additional discussion of this and related subfields.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

The subfield contains a text phrase.

For subfields order see section 5.4.

Examples

EX 1
Authority record:
200 #1\$aOrwell,\$bGeorge
400 #1\$0For works of this author see his pseudonym:\$aBlair,\$bEric Arthur
Reference record display:
Blair, Eric Arthur
For works of this author see his pseudonym: > Orwell, George
Note: The instruction phrase serves to introduce the 200 authorized access point in the reference generated from the reference tracing.
EX 2
Record 1 Authority record
210 01\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture et de la communication\$c1997-....
510 01\$0Après le 4 juin 1997, voir\$3frBN011535673\$5a\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture\$c1995-1997
Note: The instruction phrase indicates that before the 4th of June 1997, see \$aFrance\$bMinistère de la Culture\$c1995-1997.
Record 2 Authority record
210 01\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture\$c1995-1997
510 01\$0Avant le 4 juin 1997, voir\$3frBN012345678\$5b\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture et de la communication\$c1997-
EX 3
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aВсероссийское театральное общество
300 1#\$aС октября 1986 г. переименовано в Союз театральных деятелей РСФСР
510 02\$0До 1986 г. см. также под прежним заголовком\$5b\$aСоюз театральных деятелей РСФСР
The corporate body changed its name in 1986. The instruction phrase says: “Before 1986 see also...”.
Reference display:

Союз театральных деятелей РСФСР до 1986 г. см. также под прежним заголовком: Всероссийское театральное о-во
EX 4
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
152 ##\$anlr_sh
250 ##\$aРеволюционный Знак Военного Отличия, орден
450 ##\$0Литературу об этом ордене до 1924 года см. под рубрикой\$5b\$aОрден Красного Знамени
Reference display: Орден Красного Знамени Литературу об этом ордене до 1924 года см. под рубрикой Революционный Знак Военного Отличия

History

1994	Text errata.

\$1 Linking Data

Subfield Definition

This subfield is used in composite access points which are composed of a name and title.

Occurrence

Repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

The subfield contains a data field complete with tag, indicators, and subfield codes for each embedded name/title field. Repeatable for each embedded field. For additional description of the use of this subfield, see section 6.9, Composite Access Points and 240 field for additional description of the use of this subfield. For a fuller description of this technique see the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, 4— linking entry block.

For subfields order see section 5.4.

Examples

EX 1
240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$1230##\$aAll's well that ends well

History

2009	New indicators and subfields/values.
2009	Change to status: permitted for use in 2--, 4--, 5-- and 7-- block fields (235, and -40 and -45 fields).
2012	Text errata.
2021	Editorial changes.

\$2 Source

Subfield Definition

Identification in coded form for the cataloguing rules or subject system in which an access point belongs (1) when it is different from that of the record access point, which is specified in field 152, or (2) when a topical subject access point appears in a name or title authority record for an access point that is not appropriate for use as a subject.

Generally, a name, title, or a subject access point and its variant or related access points are part of the descriptive cataloguing or subject system specified in field 152, but access points as they would appear in another subject system, or in a system with different cataloguing rules may be carried as variant or related access points to provide links between systems.

This subfield is also used for identification of the sources from which the data is derived, such as classification scheme, thesaurus, vocabularies, format used for the machine-readable record, etc.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

This subfield should directly follow the subfield that contains the name access point, controlled vocabulary term, class number, format, etc. For subfields order see section 5.4.

A variable length alphabetic code with maximum length of seven characters is used. The codes that may be used are listed in Appendix A of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format. Instructions for obtaining a code are also given in that publication.

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$blc
250 ##\$aDentures
550 ##\$aDental prosthesis\$2mesh

History

2009	Changes in name and function.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Subfield Definition: This subfield also identifies the system or thesaurus from which the subject access point in fields 60- and 61- is derived, the classification scheme used in field 686, and the format used for the machine-readable record, which is specified in fields 801 and 886. See Appendix H in UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format for codes.
2016	Updated definition/scope and Occurrence.
2020	Editorial changes. Updated name in all \$2 subfields.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

Subfield Definition

Control number identifies a record in which the access point in the field is the 2-- authorized access point. It also contains the number of the related authority or classification record, or a standard identifier.

The identifier may be in the form of text or a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). If the identifier is text, the control number or identifier is preceded by the appropriate organization code from the International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL) or the MARC Code List for Organizations. No preceding parenthetical is used when the identifier is given as Web retrieval protocol, e.g., HTTP URI.

A URI that directly identifies the entity itself is contained in subfield \$R.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record identifier to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinated syntax (see field 608).

Notes on Subfield Contents

In block 4XX, \$3 is intended for external control numbers from other cataloguing or subject systems and schemes. The system should be recorded in \$2. For subfields order see section 5.4.

Examples

EX 1
210 02\$aNational Library of Canada
710 02\$382-539609\$8frefre\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada
EX 2
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aВсероссийский НИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cСанкт-Петербург
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\8817146\$5a\$aВсесоюзный институт прикладной ботаники и новых культур\$cЛенинград
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\8817144\$5a\$aВНИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова \$cЛенинград
EX 3
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
215 ##\$aВеликое княжество Литовское
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661310904\$5z\$aЛитовский статут\$z1529
EX 4
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
200 #0\$aВильгельм\$dI Молчаливый\$cпринц Оранский\$f1533 – 1584
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66254765\$aНидерландская буржуазная революция\$z1566 – 1609
Examples 2 to 4 are records from the Russian national authority file.

History

1994	Text errata.
2001	Change to status: Control subfield \$3 permitted for use in 3-- block.
2009	Changes in name and function.
2012	Updated definition/scope, Notes on Subfield Contents: Subfield \$3 should precede any subfield that represents an entity with an authority record identifier.

2023	Correction of occurrence. Update of section Notes on Subfield Contents.
2024	Update of label and section of Subfield Definition.

\$4 Relator Code

Subfield Definition

3-character code that specifies the relationship between an agent and the entity (specifically a work or an expression) described in the record.

When this subfield is used in 5X0 fields, subfield \$5 should also be present with value “a” in character position 4 (relationship code between agents and a work or an expression).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

For subfields order see section 5.4.

The codes that may be used are listed in Appendix B of the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format.

The alphabetic 3-character codes allowing for a more precise identification of relationships for performers which may be used in addition to the numeric codes 545 and 721 when needed by the cataloguing agency are those used in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, field 146, Appendix A and are found in IAML Medium of Performance Vocabulary, available on the IAML web site <http://www.iaml.info/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium>. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield.

Examples

EX 1
241 #1\$3FRBNF124836229\$aManzoni, Alessandro (1785-1873)\$4070\$t≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠conte di Carmagnola
500 #1\$3FRBNF124836229\$5xxxxa\$aManzoni\$bAlessandro\$f1785-1873\$4070
EX 2
241 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$aDebussy, Claude (1862-1918)\$4230\$tPelléas et Mélisande
501 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$5xxxxa\$aDebussy\$bClaude\$f1862-1918\$4230
501 #1\$3FRBNF119138653\$aMaeterlink\$bMaurice\$f1862-1949\$4480
EX 3
241 #1\$3FRBNF145017279\$aÎle-de-France. Commission du tourisme, des sports et des loisirs\$4070\$t≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠loisirs des jeunes Franciliens de 15 à 25 ans à l'ère numérique
511 01\$3FRBNF145017279\$5xxxxa\$aÎle-de-France\$bCommission du tourisme, des sports et des loisirs\$4070
501#1\$3 FRBNF165006952\$aLefret\$bFrédéric\$4710
EX 4
241 #1\$3FRBNF139104975\$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)\$4230\$tMazurkas\$rPiano\$sCT100\$uSol majeur
501 #1\$3FRBNF139104975\$5xxxxa\$aChopin\$bFrédéric\$f1810-1849\$4230
502 #1\$3FRBNF13894084X\$aFou\$B'Ts'ong\$f1934-....\$4545

History

2012	New control subfield.
2019	Editorial changes.

\$5 Relationship Control

Subfield Definition

Coded data pertinent to the use or display of 4-- and 5-- access point fields.

If special instructions are not needed for a given field, the control subfield need not be used in that field. If it is used, the coding of any position mandates that each prior position be explicitly coded also. The fill character may be used in any position required solely because a subsequent position is needed. Any positions following the last one required for a field are omitted.

Thus if no specific relationship is to be given and no reference suppression information is needed, subfield \$5 does not appear. If only a relationship in character position 0 is needed, then subfield \$5 will contain only one character position with valid code. If only a reference suppression code is needed, then character position 0 will contain one-character code “x” (not applicable) or a fill character. If only a relationship in character position 2, 3, 4 or 5 is needed, character positions preceding the required one will contain one-character codes “x” or fill characters as appropriate. All character positions after the required ones do not appear.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. This subfield may be used in 4-- and 5-- access point fields.

Notes on Subfield Contents

For subfields order see section 5.4.

The following data elements are defined for subfield \$5:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Name Relationship Code	1	0
Reference Suppression Code	1	1
Specific Relationship Code for Works or Expressions	1	2
Specific Relationship Code for Agents	1	3
Relationship Code Between Agents and a Work or an Expression	1	4
Relationship Code for Places	1	5

\$5/0 Name Relationship Code

1-character alphabetic code indicates a specific relationship between forms of names of an entity which are recorded as the relationship between variant and related access points, and the 2-- authorized access point. The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase generated for the reference. The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying an authority record (see example below). The use of a special phrase is optional when displaying a record, however. It is not incorrect to use the > or >> instruction alone.

The relationship code may be used with 4-- and 5-- access point fields. See section 6.12, Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields. The following code values are defined:

a	earlier name	
b	later name	
c	official name	
d	acronym/initial/abbreviation	
e	pseudonym	
f	real name	

g	broader term or name	
h	narrower term or name	
i	name in religion	
j	married name	
k	name before marriage	
l	shared pseudonym	
m	secular name	
n	different rule form of a name	If used, \$2 is mandatory.
o	attributed name/conventional title of a work	
x	not applicable	
z	other	

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes (in English):

Relationship code	Relationship information	Reference display instruction phrase, from 4-- field	Reference display instruction phrase, from 5-- field
a	earlier name	see under later name:	see also under later name:
b	later name	see under earlier name:	see also under earlier name:
c	official name	see under real name:	see also under real name:
d	acronym	see under expanded form:	see also under expanded form:
e	pseudonym	see under the person's real name:	see also under the person's real name:
f	real name	see under the pseudonym:	see also under the pseudonym:
g	broader term	see under narrower term:	see also under narrower term:
h	narrower term	see under broader term:	see also under broader term:
i	name in religion	see under the person's name secular name:	see also under the person's secular name:
j	married name	see under the person's name before marriage:	see also under the person's name before marriage:
k	name before marriage	see under the person's married name:	see also under the person's married name:
l	shared pseudonym	see under the persons' real name:	see also under the persons' real name:
m	secular name	see under the person's name in religion:	see also under the person's name in religion:
n	different rule form of a name	see under valid rule form of the name:	see also under valid rule form of the name:
o	attributed name/conventional title of a work	see under real name/original title of the work:	see also under real name/original title of the work:

Examples of Name Relationship Code

EX 1
Authority record:
210 02\$aDunedin Savings Bank
510 02\$5a\$aOtago Savings Bank

Authority record display:
Dunedin Savings Bank
<< Otago Savings Bank (earlier name)
Note: the value “a” in the \$5 was used to display the relationship information “(earlier name)” in this authority record display, in addition to its intended use to generate the instruction phrase for the reference entry display illustrated below.
Reference display:
Otago Savings Bank
See also under later name: Dunedin Savings Bank
EX 2
200 #1\$aOrwell\$bGeorge
400 #1\$5f\$aBlair\$bEric Arthur
Note: Eric Arthur Blair wrote under the pseudonym George Orwell.
EX 3
210 02\$aCoopération et aménagement\$cFrance
510 02\$5a\$aSecrétariat des missions d’urbanisme et d’habitat\$cFrance
Reference display:
Secrétariat des missions d’urbanisme et d’habitat (France)
See also under later access point: Coopération et aménagement (France)
EX 4
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #0\$aMarie et Joseph
300 0#\$aAuteurs de romans policiers (pour adultes et enfants). – Pseudonyme collectif de Corinne Bouchard (qui écrit aussi sous le nom Corinne Arbore) (pseudonyme Marie), née le 4 novembre 1958 et de Pierre Mezinski (pseudonyme Joseph), né le 1er juillet 1950; commencent à écrire en 1990 séparément sous leurs patronymes, mais n’ont à ce jour jamais écrit séparément sous le prénom choisi par chacun comme pseudonyme.
500 #1\$5f\$aBouchard\$bCorinne\$f1958
500 #1\$5f\$aMezinski\$bPierre\$f1950-
EX 5
230 ##\$aAbschied\$sD597 no7
530 ##\$5h\$aSchwanengesang\$sD957 et 965A
Note: the value “h” in the \$5 is used by the agency which does not use character position 2 to define the specific relationship between works.
EX 6
Record 1: Pseudonym
152 ##\$aRPC
200 #1\$aGedeão,\$bAntónio,\$cpseud.
340 ##\$aPoeta. Romancista
305 0#\$aPara a obra científica, ver também\$bCarvalho, Rómulo de, 1906-1997
400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo Vasco da Gama de
500 #1\$5f0\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de,\$f1906-1997
550 ##\$5g\$aPoetas portuguesas\$zSéc. 20

Record 2: Real name
152 ##\$aRPC
200 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de,\$f1906-1997
305 0#\$aPara a obra literária, ver também\$bGedeão, António, pseud.
340 ##\$aHistoriador. Lic. Ciências Físico-Químicas. Professor
400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de
400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo Vasco da Gama de
500 #1\$5e0\$aGedeão,\$bAntónio,\$cpseud.
EX 7
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aВНИИ ветеринарной энтомологии и арахнологии\$cТюмень
305 0#\$aСоздан в 1973 на базе:\$bВНИИ ветеринарной санитарии и эктопаразитологии. Тюменский филиал
410 02\$5z\$aИнститут ветеринарной энтомологии и арахнологии\$cТюмень
410 02\$5d\$aВНИИВЭА
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\889917912\$5a\$aВНИИ ветеринарной санитарии и эктопаразитологии\$bТюменский филиал
The corporate body in 210 (ВНИИ ветеринарной энтомологии и арахнологии (Тюмень)) was created in 1973 on the basis of ВНИИ ветеринарной санитарии и эктопаразитологии. Тюменский филиал. The record contains corresponding note in 305 and earlier form of corporate name in 510 field with relationship code in \$5/0=a (earlier name). Also the record contains two 410 fields with variant forms of the name: abbreviation (\$5/0=d), and other form of the name (\$5/0=z).
EX 8
152 ##\$abnlr_sh
200 #0\$aЛука\$cВойно-Ясенецкий, Валентин Феликсович\$f1877 - 1961
400 #1\$5m\$aВойно-Ясенецкий\$bВ.И.\$gВалентин Феликсович\$f1877 - 1961
400 #0\$5z\$aЛука Крымский\$f1877 - 1961
510 00\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661237347\$5g\$aПравославная церковь русская\$xИстория\$z20 в.
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661233118\$5g\$aХирургия\$xИстория\$yРоссия
The record contains two variant forms (secular name and other form of name) in 410 fields, and two related subject access points in 510 and 550, where \$5/0=g.
EX 9
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
200 #0\$aВиктория Федоровна\$свеликая княгиня\$f1876 – 1936
400 #0\$5k\$aВиктория Мелита\$f1876 – 1936
500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661269264\$5z\$aКирилл Владимирович\$свеликий князь\$f1876 - 1938
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5g\$aРомановы\$ссемья
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66193735\$5g\$aГанноверская\$сдинастия английских королей\$f1714 - 1901
See this example with more exact codes used for expressing relationship between names in 5-- fields under \$5/3, EX 3.
EX 10
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$a#NSB#’#NSE#Автоагрегат#NSB#’#NSE#, акционерное общество\$cИадринск
305 0#\$aДо 1993 г. см. в каталоге:\$bИадринский автоагрегатный завод

305 0# \$aС 1997 г. см. в каталоге: \$b”Шадринский автоагрегатный завод”, открытое акционерное общество
410 02\$z\$aАО ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Автоагрегат≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\889934338\$5a0\$aШадринский автоагрегатный завод
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\8810066814\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Шадринский автоагрегатный завод≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, открытое акционерное общество
EX 11
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #0\$aКукрыниксы\$схудожники
305 # \$aКоллективный псевдоним художников: Куприянов Михаил Васильевич\$bКрылов Порфирий Никитич\$bСоколов Николай Александрович
400 #1\$5f\$aКуприянов\$bМ. В.\$gМихаил Васильевич\$f1903-
500 #1\$5f0\$aКрылов\$bП. Н.\$gПорфирий Никитич\$f1902-
500 #1\$5f0\$aСоколов\$bН. А.\$gНиколай Александрович\$f1903-
EX 12
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aБоевые машины пехоты
450 ##\$5d\$aБМП

\$5/1 Reference Suppression Code

1-character numeric code indicates that a reference should not be automatically generated from an access point in a 4-- field because a field 305 exists in the authority record for the access point or a separate reference record for the access point exists with a field 310. In both cases it is intended that only the note form of the reference should be used in displays.

0	suppress reference
x	not applicable

Examples of Reference Suppression Code

EX 1
Record 1 (Reference record)
210 02\$aParibas
310 0# \$aVoir au\$bGroupe Paribas\$aet à sa compagnie holding de contrôle la\$bCompagnie financière de Paribas\$aainsi qu’à ses filiales
Record 2 (Authority record)
210 02\$aGroupe Paribas
300 0# \$aGroupe multinational constitué par: la Compagnie financière de Paribas, société holding de contrôle du Groupe; un ensemble de banques; de nombreuses participations, en particulier dans des entreprises industrielles et commerciales, regroupées dans des sociétés holding spécialisées
410 02\$5z0\$aParibas
Record 3 (Authority record)
210 02\$aCompagnie financière de Paribas
300 0# \$a Société holding de contrôle du Groupe Paribas. Nationalisée en 1982
410 02\$5z0\$aParibas
EX 2
Record 1 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aJapp\$bAlexander H.\$gAlexander Hay\$f1839-1905
500 #1\$5z0\$aGray\$bE. Condor\$f1839-1905
500 #1\$5z0\$aPage\$bH. A.\$f1839-1905
305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under\$bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905\$aand\$bPage, H.A., 1839-1905
Record 2 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aGray\$bE. Condor\$f1839-1905
500 #1\$5z0\$aJapp\$bAlexander H.\$gAlexander Hay\$f1839-1905
305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under\$bJapp, Alexander H.(Alexander Hay), 1839-1905
Record 3 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aPage\$bH. A.\$f1839-1905
500 #1\$5z0\$aJapp\$bAlexander H.\$gAlexander Hay\$f1839-1905
305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under\$bJapp, Alexander H.(Alexander Hay), 1839-1905
EX 3
Authority record
200 #0\$aMarie de la Trinité\$cdominicaine\$f1903-1980
300 0#\$aNom en religion de : Rosa Boiral. – Dominicaine au Monastère Sainte-Catherine de Langeac (43300, Haute-Loire)
400 #1\$5m\$aBoiral,\$bRosa
Authority record display:
Marie de la Trinité (dominicaine ; 1903-1980)
< Boiral, Rosa (Nom dans le siècle)
Reference display:
Boiral, Rosa
Voir sous nom en religion > Marie de la Trinité, dominicaine, 1903-1980
Note : Marie de la Trinité is the religious name of Rosa Boiral.
EX 4
Record 1 (Authority record)
210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services
300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services; \$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bSocial Services, Dept. of
510 01\$3<AR_ID>\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources
510 01\$3<AR_ID>\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance
Record 2 (Authority record)

210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance
300 0# \$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0# \$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1# \$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bIncome Maintenance, Dept. of
510 01\$3<AR_ID>\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services
510 01\$3<AR_ID>\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources
Record 3 (Authority record)
210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources
300 0# \$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0# \$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1# \$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bHuman Resources, Dept. of
510 01\$3<AR_ID>\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services
510 01\$3<AR_ID>\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance

\$5/2 Specific Relationship Code for Works or Expressions

1-character alphabetic code indicates a specific work or expression to work or expression relationship which is recorded as the relationship between related access point for the title for work or expression, and the 2-- authorized access point for title for another work or expression. The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase generated for the reference. The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying an authority record (see example below). The use of a special phrase is optional when displaying a record, however. It is not incorrect to use the > or >> instruction alone.

The relationship code may be used only in 5-- access point fields. See section, 6.12, Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields. The following code values are defined:

a	original work	
b	variation or version of a work	Such as editions, revisions, translations, summaries, abstracts, and digests. This value corresponds to IFLA LRM-R2 “work is realized through the expression”, which “links a work with any of the expressions which convey the same intellectual or artistic content”. In the case of IFLA LRM compliant cataloguing, do not use this value: express this fundamental relationship through A232 and A242 subfield \$3 in work records.

c	adaptation or modification of a work	Such as new works based on an earlier work, new works that are changes of genre, new works based on the style or thematic content of other work.
d	whole work	
e	part of the larger work	
f	supplement or complement work	Such as works intended to be used in conjunction with or to augment the related work, or intended to complement or to be a companion to another work.
g	related/accompanied work	
h	successor or sequel/later work	
i	predecessor or earlier work	
k	works with common characteristics	Such as works that have some characteristics in common, apart from the other relationships, e.g., same language.
l	inspiration for a work	
m	inspired by a work	
n	derived expression	
o	source expression	
p	aggregated in an expression	
q	aggregates an expression	
r	other associated work	
x	not applicable	
z	other	Such as orthographic relationships, word order relationships, variant title relationships, etc.

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes (in English):

Relationship code	Relationship information	Reference display instruction phrase, from 5-- field
a	original work	see also under title of the derived work(s):
b	variation or version of a work	see also under title of the original work:
c	adaptation or modification of a work	see also under title of the original work:
d	whole work	see also under title of part of the work:
e	part of the larger work	see also under title of the whole work:
f	supplement or complement work	see also under title of the related/accompanied work:
g	related/accompanied work	see also under title of the supplement or complement work:
h	successor or sequel/later work	see also under title of the earlier work:
i	predecessor or earlier work	see also under title of the later work:
k	works with common characteristics	see also under title of work(s) with shared characteristics:
l	inspiration for a work	see also under title of the work inspired:
m	inspired by a work	see also under title of the inspiration work:
n	derived expression	see also under title of the source expression:
o	source expression	see also under title of the derivative expression:

p	aggregated in an expression	see also under title of the aggregate:
q	aggregates an expression	see also under title of the aggregated expression:
r	other associated work	see also under title of the associated work:

Examples of Specific Relationship Code for Works or Expressions

EX 1
240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$1230##\$aCoriolanus
540 ##\$5xxc\$1200#1\$aBrecht\$bBertolt\$1230##\$aCoriolan von Shakespeare
EX 2
230 ##\$aAnthologie grecque
530 ##\$5xxe\$aAnthologie palatine
530 ##\$5x0e\$aAnthologie Planude
530 ##\$5xxe\$aCouronne
EX 3
230 ##\$aUnited States Catalog
530 ##\$5xxf\$aCumulative Book Index
EX 4
230 ##\$aHistorical dictionaries of Africa
530 ##\$5 h\$aAfrican historical dictionaries
EX 5
241 #1\$3FRBNF13891433\$aBernstein, Leonard (1918-1990)\$tWest Side story
541 #1\$5xxl\$3FRBNF12003684\$aShakespeare, William (1564-1616)\$tRomeo and Juliet
The work West Side Story was inspired by Romeo and Juliet.
EX 6
232 ##\$aRomans de cirque\$kBasch\$mFrançais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxp\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aClaretie, Jules (1840-1913)\$t≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠train 17\$mFrançais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxp\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aClaretie, Jules (1840-1913)\$tBoum-boum\$mFrançais \$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxp\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aGoncourt, Edmond de (1822-1896)\$t≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠frères Zemganno\$mFrançais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxp\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aDarzens, Rodolphe (1865-1938)\$tUkko”Till \$mFrançais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxp\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aKahn, Gustave (1859-1936)\$t≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠cirque solaire\$mFrançais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxp\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aCoquiot, Gustave (1865-1926)\$tHistoire de deux clowns et d’une petite écuyère\$mFrançais\$nTexte
Aggregating expression selecting the specific expressions of six novels about the world of circus, that produced the aggregate manifestation : Romans de cirque / textes présentés et annotés par Sophie Basch,.... – Paris : Robert Laffont, 2002. – 1 volume (LVIII-858 pages); 20 cm. – (Bouquins)
EX 7

242 #1\$3FRBNF15878928\$aArendt, Hannah (1906-1975)\$t#NSB#The #NSE#origins of totalitarianism\$o1958\$mAnglais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxo\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aArendt, Hannah (1906-1975)\$t#NSB#The #NSE#origins of totalitarianism\$o1951\$mAnglais\$nTexte
The expression corresponding to 1958 version of the work “The origins of totalitarianism” by Hannah Arendt is a revision, derived from the original expression, published in 1951.
EX 8
242 #1\$3FRBNF12034945\$aBrontë, Emily (1818-1848)\$tWuthering Heights\$mFrançais\$wDelebecque \$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxo\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aBrontë, Emily (1818-1848)\$tWuthering Heights\$mAnglais\$nTexte
542 #1\$5xxn\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aBrontë, Emily (1818-1848)\$tWuthering Heights\$mFrançais\$wDelebecque\$nParole énoncée\$wRichard
The expression published under the French title “Les Hauts de Hurle-vent” is a French translation by Frédéric Delebecque of Emily Brontë’s novel “Wuthering Heights”. It corresponds to IFLA LRM R-24 “expression is derivation of expression”. This translation has been read by Mélodie Richard, creating a new derivative expression with the form “spoken word”.
EX 9
242 #1\$3FRBNF13911275\$aSchubert, Franz (1797-1828)\$tLiebesbotschaft\$sD 957, no 1\$nMusique notée
542 #1\$5xxn\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aSchubert, Franz (1797-1828)\$tLiebesbotschaft\$sD 957, no 1\$lArrangement\$vPiano\$wLiszt\$nMusique notée
542 #1\$5xxn\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aSchubert, Franz (1797-1828)\$tLiebesbotschaft\$sD 957, no 1\$lArrangement\$vGuitare\$wMertz\$nMusique notée
542 #1\$5xxn\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aSchubert, Franz (1797-1828)\$tLiebesbotschaft\$sD 957, no 1\$nMusique exécutée\$wHendricks
Franz Schubert’s Lied “Liebesbotschaft” has been arranged from the source expression, for piano only by Franz Liszt, and guitar by Caspar Joseph Mertz. It has been performed in its original version (representative expression described in this record) by Barbara Hendricks with the piano accompaniment of Radu Lupu. According to IFLA LRM, a performance creates a derivative expression.

\$5/3 Specific Relationship Code for Agents

1-character alphabetic code indicates a specific relationship between persons, corporate bodies and families which is recorded as the relationship between the name related access point, and the 2-- name authorized access point. The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase generated for the reference. The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying an authority record (see example below). The use of a special phrase is optional when displaying a record, however. It is not incorrect to use the > or >> instruction alone.

The relationship code may be used only in 5-- access point fields. See section 6.12, Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields. The following code values are defined:

c	descendant family relationship
d	progenitor family relationship
e	relationship in marriage
j	sibling relationship
g	parent relationship

h	child relationship
k	member (is member of)
l	has member
m	founder (has founded)
n	founded by
p	subordinate corporate body
q	larger corporate body
s	owner (owns)
t	owned by
z	other
x	not applicable

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes (in English):

Relationship code	Relationship information	Reference display instruction phrase, from 5-- field
c	descendant family relationship	see also under the progenitor family's name:
d	progenitor family relationship	see also under the descendant family's name:
e	relationship in marriage	see also under spouse's name:
j	sibling relationship	see also under other sibling's name:
g	parent relationship	see also under the child's name:
h	child relationship	see also under the parent's name:
k	member (is member of)	see also under corporate body or family name:
l	has member	see also under person's name:
m	founder (has founded)	see also under founder's name:
n	founded by	see also under founder's name:
p	subordinate corporate body's name	see also under larger corporate body's name:
q	larger corporate body's name	see also under subordinate corporate body's name:
s	owner's name	see also under owner's name:
t	owned by	see also under owner's name:

Examples of Specific Relationship Code for Agents

EX 1
Record 1
200 #1\$aGrimm\$bJakob
300 0#\$aPisao i u suradnji s bratom Wilhelmom Grimmom
340 ##\$aGrimm, Jakob, njemački filolog i književnik, 1785.-1863.; Grimm, Wilhelm, njemački filolog, brat Jakoba Grimma, 1786.-1859
400 #0\$aGrim\$cBraća
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cBrothers
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cFratelli
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cFreres
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cGebrueder
400 #0\$aGrim\$cVellezerit
[etc.]
400 #1\$aGrimm\$bJacob
500 #1\$5xxxj\$aGrimm\$bWilhelm
Note in English: Wrote also in collaboration with his brother Wilhelm Grimm.
Record 2

200 #1\$aGrimm\$bWilhelm
300 0#\$aPublikacije svih djela što ih je Wilhelm Grimm pisao zajedno sa svojim bratom treba tražiti pod imenom Jakoba Grimma
400 #1\$aGrim\$bVilhelm
500 #1\$5xxxj\$aGrimm\$bJakob
Note in English: Publications which Wilhelm Grimm wrote in collaboration with his brother see under the name of Jakob Grimm.
EX 2
Record 1 (Authority record)
220 ##\$aPicot de Gouberville\$cfamille
500 #1\$5xxxk\$aGouberville\$bGilles de\$f1521?-1578
Record 2 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aGouberville\$bGilles de\$f1521?-1578
520 ##\$5xxxl\$aPicot de Gouberville\$cfamille
EX 3
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
200 #0\$aВиктория Федоровна\$свеликая княгиня\$f1876 - 1936
400 #0\$5k\$aВиктория Мелита\$f1876 - 1936
500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661269264\$5xxxk\$aКирилл Владимирович\$свеликий князь\$f1876 - 1938
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5xxxk\$aРомановы\$ссемья
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66193735\$5xxxk\$aГанноверская\$династия английских королей \$f1714 – 1901
EX 4
Halls Family Foundation was founded by Hall family
Record 1
210 02\$aHall Family Foundation
520 ##\$5xxxm\$aHall\$cfamily
Reference display: Hall (family) See also under the corporate body name: Hall Family Foundation
Record 2
220 ##\$aHall\$cfamily
510 02\$5xxxn\$aHall Family Foundation
Reference display: Hall Family Foundation See also under the name of founder: Hall (family)
EX 5
Herlin family own Kone corporation
Record 1
210 02\$aKone\$сEspoo, Finland
520 ##\$5xxxs\$aHerlin\$cfamily
Reference display: Herlin (family) See also under the corporate body name: Kone (Espoo, Finland)

Record 2
220 ##\$aHerlin\$cfamily
510 02\$5xxxt\$aKone\$cEspoo, Finland
Reference display: Kone (Espoo, Finland) See also under the name of owner: Herlin (family)

\$5/4 Relationship Code Between Agents and a Work or an Expression

1-character alphabetic code indicates a specific relationship between a person, a corporate body, or a family who participated in the creation of a work, or is related to a work, or contributed to an expression of a work, and the title of that work or that expression.

The relationship code may be used only in 5-1 and 5-2 access point fields. Values “a” and “c” may be used in 5-1 fields. The following code values are defined:

a	creator of a work	
b	contributor to an expression of a work	Optionally use field 502 for the personal name related to the expression without \$5 (EX 2).
c	related agent of a work	
x	not applicable	

Examples of Relationship Code Between Agents and a Work or an Expression

EX 1
241 ##\$3FRBNF138930724\$aDebussy, Claude (1862-1918)\$4230\$tPelléas et Mélisande\$sFL 93
501 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$5xxxxa\$aDebussy\$bClaude\$f1862-1918\$4230
501 #1\$3FRBNF119138653\$5xxxxa\$aMaeterlinck\$bMaurice\$f1862-1949\$4480
501 #1\$3FRBNF136131015\$5xxxxc\$aHartmann\$bGeorges\$f1843-1900\$4280
Debussy's opera <i>Pelléas et Mélisande</i> , with a libretto by Maurice Maeterlinck. Both are creators of the work. Georges Hartmann is the dedicatee of the opera, he is recorded with value “c” in \$5 pos. 4 as he is not one of the creators of the opera but an agent associated with the work.
EX 2
242 #1\$3 FRBNF147158759\$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)\$tCarmen\$hActe 2, n° 17\$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée\$nMusique interprétée\$o1995\$wAlagna\$wArmstrong\$wLondon Philharmonic
502 #1\$3FRBNF139819374\$5xxxxb\$aAlagna\$bRoberto\$f1963-....\$rDon José \$4721\$4vte
502 #1\$3FRBNF138908852\$5xxxxb\$aArmstrong\$bRichard\$f1943-....\$4250
512 02\$3FRBNF139047022\$5xxxxb\$aLondon philharmonic orchestra\$4545\$4oun
This expression is for a performance of Georges Bizet's opera Carmen, where Roberto Alagna, Richard Armstrong, and the London Philharmonic Orchestra are all recorded as contributors to the expression. The applicable code in \$5 pos. 4 is value “b”. Relationship control is optional since field 502 already identifies the name of the contributor of an expression.

\$5/5 Relationship Code for Places

A one-character alphabetic code indicates a specific relationship between places or between places and other entities in the 2-- authorized access point fields.

The relationship code may be used only in 5-- related access point fields.

The following code values are defined:

a	is a part	Codes for relationships between places.
b	has part	Codes for relationships between places.

c	absorbs	Codes for relationships between places.
d	is absorbed by	Codes for relationships between places.
e	partially absorbs	Codes for relationships between places.
f	is partially absorbed by	Codes for relationships between places.
h	is divided into	Codes for relationships between places.
i	is a product of the division of	Codes for relationships between places.
j	merges with	Codes for relationships between places.
k	is the result of the merger of	Codes for relationships between places.
l	becomes after merging	Codes for relationships between places.
p	gentilic	Codes for relationships between a place and another entity.
q	is governed by	Codes for relationships between a place and another entity.

Examples of Relationship Code Between Places, and Places and Other Entities

EX 1
215 ##\$7ba0yba0y\$8fre\$aNouvelle-Calédonie
515 ##\$5h####a\$315320491\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aMatthew, Île (Nouvelle-Calédonie, France)
The Ile Matthew Island is part of New Caledonia.
EX 2
215 ##\$aVaugirard
515 ##\$5#####e\$aParis
Vaugirard was a village that was absorbed by the city of Paris (France).
EX 3
215 ##\$aIndiana (United States of America)
550 ##\$5#####p\$aHoosier
The gentilic associated with the state of Indiana, the USA, is “Hoosier”.
EX 4
215 ##\$aParis (France)
510 00\$5#####q\$aVille de Paris\$bCabinet du maire
The city of Paris is governed by the Paris town council.

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in name and function: Character position 0, Name Relationship Code.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Character position 0, Name Relationship Code: additional codes defined.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Character position 1, Reference Suppression Code: additional code defined, x.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Character position 2, Relationship Code for Works.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Character position 3, Relationship Code for Agents.
2012	New character positions/values: character position 4: Mandatory in 5-0 fields.
2012	Additional values: character position 3: Add: x = not applicable.
2012	Text errata.
2017	Update.
2020	New codes, text changes, and a new label for position 2. New examples 5 to 9.
2022	Text errata.
2023	Additional values: \$5/4. Text change, update and new example 2.
2024	New character positions/values: character position 5.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

Subfield Definition

An information allowing a field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record.

Occurrence

Repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

Both of the fields being linked will contain a \$6 subfield as specified below. The subfield also contains a code indicating the reason for the link. The first two elements in the subfield must always be present when the subfield is used; the third element is optional.

For subfields order see section 5.4.

Fixed Length Data Elements

Subfield \$6 fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Linking Explanation Code	1	0
Linking Number	2	1-2
Tag of Linked Field	3	3-5

\$6/0 Linking Explanation Code

This code specifies the reason for the interfield linkage.

a	alternate script
z	other

\$6/1-2 Linking Number

This two-digit number is carried in subfield \$6 of each of the fields to be linked together. The function of the linking number is to permit matching of associated fields. (It is not intended to act in any way as a sequence or site number.) The linking number may be assigned at random, so long as it is identical in each of the fields to be linked together and does not duplicate the number used to link any other groups of fields in the record.

\$6/3-5 Tag of Linked Field

This data element indicates the tag of the field to which a link is being made. The element is optional. If the tag of the field being linked to is the same as the tag of the field being linked, this element would ordinarily be omitted.

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaenga50#####ba0
101 ##\$ajpn
200 #1\$8engjpn\$aAndo,\$bSizuo
200 #1\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]
400 #1\$6a03\$7ba0aba0a\$8engjpn\$aKasima,\$bYasuzo
400 #1\$6a03\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]
400 #1\$6a25\$7ba0yba0a\$8engjpn\$aTakai,\$bSyozo
400 #1\$6a25\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]

The cataloguing agency gives the vernacular and Roman forms of each access point and reference in its records. The optional tag is omitted from the linked fields.

History

1994	Text errata.
2012	Text errata.
2016	Update.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

Subfield Definition

Coded data identifies the scripts of cataloguing and the base access point when they are different from the information coded in the 1-- block.

\$7 is used when a access points, or note is carried in multiple scripts, e.g., Japanese written in kanji or kana, Hebrew written in Hebrew script and Roman script.

Occurrence

Mandatory for parallel script data. Not repeatable. The \$7 subfield may be used with 2-- authorized access points, 3-- notes, 4-- variant and 5-- related access points, and 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields. The script for the first 2-- authorized access point, and the default script for all other field content not otherwise designated by a \$7 subfield, is given in field 100, character positions 21-22. If there is more than one 2-- authorized access point, then the additional ones are included for their alternate scripts, and they will contain \$7 subfields indicating the script. See section 6.7, Alternative Script Data, for more discussion of scripts.

Notes on Subfield Contents

Subfield \$7 contains 8-character positions (designated as \$7/0, \$7/1, etc.) The first group of four characters relates to the script of cataloguing; the second group of four characters relates to the script of the base access point. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield \$7 are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each character position contains a code or a fill character (|).

For subfields order see section 5.4.

Fixed Length Data Elements

Subfield \$7 fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Script of Cataloguing	2	0-1
Direction of the Script of Cataloguing	1	2
Transliteration Scheme for Script of Cataloguing	1	3
Script of the Base Access Point	2	4-5
Direction of Script of the Base Access Point	1	6
Transliteration Scheme for Script of the Base Access Point	1	7

\$7/0-1/4-5 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

2-character alphabetic code specifies the script of cataloguing and of the base access point when the identical access point appears in the record in a different script. The following code values are used:

ba	Latin
ca	Cyrillic
da	Japanese -- script unspecified (mixed scripts)
db	Japanese – kanji
dc	Japanese – kana
ea	Chinese
eb	Chinese – simplified variant
ec	Chinese – traditional variant
ed	Mongolian

ee	Manchu
ef	Yi
eg	Naxi Dongba (Nakhi Tomba)
eh	Naxi Geba
fa	Arabic
ga	Greek
ha	Hebrew
ia	Thai
ib	Burmese
ic	Khmer (Cambodian)
id	Lao
ie	Cham
ja	Devanagari
jb	Bengalese
jc	Gujarati
jd	Gurmukhi
je	Odia (Oriya)
jf	Tibetan
ig	Newa (Newar)
ka	Korean
la	Tamil
lb	Kannada
lc	Malayalam
ld	Sinhala (Singhalese)
le	Telugu
lf	Grantha
ma	Georgian
mb	Armenian
na	Ethiopic
nb	Tifinagh (Berber)
nc	N'ko
oa	Syriac
pa	Egyptian hieroglyphs
zz	Other

\$7/2/6 Direction of the Script of Cataloguing and Direction of Script of the Base Access Point

1-character alphabetic codes specify the direction of the script(s). The following code values are used:

0	left to right
1	right to left

\$7/3/7 Transliteration Scheme for Script of Cataloguing and Transliteration Scheme for Script of the Base Access Point

1-character alphabetic code specifies the transliteration scheme(s). For the transliteration scheme used for the first 2-- base access point, see also 100 \$a/12.

The following code values are used:

a	ISO transliteration scheme	
b	other	Use for identified transliteration scheme for which no specific code has been defined.

c	multiple transliterations	ISO or other schemes. In an authority record, the code “c” is usually used when multiple scripts are recorded in \$7 access point fields.
d	transliteration table established by the national bibliographic agency	
e	transliteration without any identified transliteration scheme	
f	other identified transliteration scheme	
g	ALA-LC romanization table	
h	DIN transliteration scheme	
y	not applicable	No transliteration scheme used.

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaenga50#####ba0
101 ##\$ajpn
210 02\$7ba0yba0a\$8engjpn\$aNihon Toshokan Kyōkai\$cCompany
210 02\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Corporate name in Japanese kanji]\$cCompany
300 0#\$aReplaced Nihon Bunko Kyōkai and Dai Nippon Toshokan Kyōkai
Note: In both access points the language of cataloguing is English, and the language of the base access point is Japanese. In the first access point the script of cataloguing (100/21-22) and the script of the base access point (\$7/4-5) are both Latin, in logical order (\$7/2 & 6) and follow ISO transliteration rules (100\$a/12 and 210\$7/7). In the second access point, the script of cataloguing is still Latin (100/21-22), but the script of the base access point is Kanji (\$7/4-5). The script is in logical order (\$7/3), but the script of the base access point has not been transliterated.

History

1994	Text errata.
2001	Control Subfield \$7: name changed to “Script of cataloguing and script of the base heading”. Character positions 4-7 defined as script of the base heading.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Text errata.
2020	New codes \$7/0-1/4-5 Script. Editorial changes/text errata.
2022	New codes: \$7/0-1/4-5 Script.
2023	New codes and update: \$7/0-1/4-5 Script.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

Subfield Definition

Coded data identifies the language of cataloguing and the language of the base access point. A language may be used in 2-- authorized, 4-- variant and 5-- related and related access points, and 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields.

Occurrence

Mandatory in each 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script when parallel access points or parallel data. Optional in 2--, 4--, 5--. Not repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

See section 6.6, Parallel Data, for more discussion of language of cataloguing. The base access point is that part of the access point that identifies the entity, excluding any qualifying data.

For example, in the access point: 200 #1\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15-- to 160-?\$cimprimeur-libraire, the base access point is “\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico”, and the language of this base access point is Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i.e., “\$cimprimeur-libraire”.

Subfield \$8 contains 6 character positions (designated as \$8/0, 8/1, etc.) The first group of three characters specifies the language of catalogue into which the access point in the field is designed to fit; the second group of three characters specifies the language of the base access point. For language codes use ISO 639-2 Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>).

Because the definitions of the codes in subfield \$8 are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each character position contains a code or a fill character (|).

Fixed Length Data Elements

Subfield \$8 fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Language of Cataloguing	3	0-2
Language of the Base Access Point	3	3-5

\$8/0-2 Language of Cataloguing

3-character code representing the language used in cataloguing. For language codes use ISO 639-2 Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>). In field 2--, the content of \$8/0-2 will always match the content of 100/9-11.

\$8/3-5 Language of the Base Access Point

3-character code representing the language used in the base access point. For language codes use ISO 639-2 Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>).

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre\$aeng
210 01\$8frefre\$aCanada\$bGroupe de travail du Ministre sur la protection des enfants en cas d'accidents de véhicules automobiles

710 01\$8engeng\$aCanada\$bMinister's Task Force on Crash Protection for Infant and Child Passengers in Motor Vehicles
EX 2
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre\$aeng\$aawl
102 ##\$aZZ
230 ##\$aAmi et Amile
730 ##\$8engeng\$aAmis and Amiloun
730 ##\$8welwel\$aAmlyn ac Amig
Works pertaining to the French, English and Welsh literatures (cf IFLA Anonymous Classics).
EX 3
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey50####ba0
101 ##\$agrc
102 ##\$aZZ
230 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8fregrc\$aPentekostárion
230 ##\$7ba0yga0y\$8fregrc\$aΠεντεχοσταριον
430 ##\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aPentecostaire
730 ##\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$aЦветная триодъ
Liturgical work of the Byzantine rite It exists in Greek and Russian versions.
EX 4
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aspa
102 ##\$aXX
200 #1\$8frefre\$aColomb\$bChristophe
700 #1\$8frespa\$aColón\$bCristóbal
EX 5
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$alat\$agrc
102 ##\$aXX
200 #0\$8frefre\$aMarc Aurèle\$scempereur romain
400 #0\$8frelat\$aMarcus Aurelius Antoninus\$scempereur romain
700 #0\$8englat\$aMarcus Aurelius\$cEmperor of Rome\$f121-180
EX 6
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDahrvy0103####ba0
101 ##\$apol\$alat\$aaita\$ahrv
102 ##\$aPL\$aVA
200 #0\$8hrvlat\$aIohannes Paulus\$dII\$cpapa
700 #0\$8frefre\$aJean-Paul\$dII\$cpape
700 #0\$8engeng\$aJohn-Paul\$dII\$cPope
EX 7
100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
101 ##\$ager
210 01\$8engmul\$aGermany.\$bAbwehr
410 02\$8engger\$aAbwehr

History

2001	Change to status: Control subfield \$8 permitted for use in 2-- block.
2001	Control Subfield \$8: name changed to “Language of cataloguing and language of the base heading” Character positions 3-5 defined as language of the base heading.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Text errata.

\$R Real World Object URI

Subfield Definition

Subfield contains a URI that identifies an entity, sometimes referred to as a Thing, a Real World Object or RWO, whether actual or conceptual.

A URI that identifies a name or label for an entity is contained in \$3.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
500 1 # \$3http://id.loc.gov/authorities/names/no2016071283\$ \$aGoings, Mary Seach,\$d1916-015\$Rhttp://id.loc.gov/rwo/agents/no2016071283
EX 2
500 1# \$3http://id.loc.gov/authorities/names/n90689264\$alang, K. D.\$q(Kathy Dawn),\$d1961\$Rhttps://isni.org/isni/000000007839184X

History

2024	New control subfield.

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

The access point for which the record is made.

The access point will be an authorized access point if the record is an authority record, and a variant access point if the record is a reference or general explanatory record. The following fields are defined:

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE
220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
223 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER
230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE
240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Occurrence

An authority record must contain one field from the 2-- block.

The 2-- fields may be repeated for versions of the 2-- authorized access point in different scripts. If, however, the alternative script form links to a separate record that contains the alternative form as the 2-- authorized access point with appropriate variant and related access points and notes in that script, then the alternative script form should be carried in a 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script field.

Notes on Field Contents

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

1994	Text errata.
2001	New subfields/values: \$j Form Subdivision.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Text errata.
2016	Update.
2019	Deleted paragraphs in the section Notes on the Field Contents.

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a personal name.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the personal name are \$a, \$b, \$d and \$g. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c and \$f.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
200	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
k	Attribution Qualifier	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Way the Name is Entered
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name.

It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable. (EX [1](#), [3](#), [4](#)).

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (EX [2](#)).

Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (EX [5](#), [6](#)).

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (EX [2](#)).

If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (EX [7](#)). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates.

Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (EX [1-4](#), [8](#)). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

Full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required.

Not repeatable. (EX [4](#)).

\$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous.

Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work (EX [16](#)). Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable. (EX [2](#)).

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX [10-12](#)).

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [11](#)).

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [12](#)).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

Use when the field is embedded in fields 241, 242. The list of codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, App. B. Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

In cases of multiple identities occurring in the same record, i.e. when the 010 field is repeated, use to link the 010 field containing an ISNI with the 200 field containing the name to be associated with that ISNI.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aHorne,\$bDonald,\$f1921-
EX 2
200 #0\$aAlexander\$dI,\$cEmperor of Russia,\$f1771-1825
EX 3
200 #1\$aRiano y Montero,\$bJuan Facundo,\$f1828-1901
EX 4
200 #1\$aTolkien,\$bJ. R. R.\$g(John Ronald Reuel),\$f1892-1973

EX 5
200 #1\$aArundel,\$bPhilip Howard,\$cSaint\$cEarl of
EX 6
200 #0\$aAlexandra,\$cEmpress,\$cConsort of Nicholas II, Emperor of Russia
EX 7
200 #0\$aJohn\$dII Comnenus,\$cEmperor of the East
EX 8
200 #0\$aJoannes,\$cDiaconus,\$fl.1226-1240
EX 9
200 #1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$jQuotations
EX 10
200 #0\$aJesus Christ\$xNativity
EX 11
200 #1\$aEinstein\$bAlbert\$f1879-1955\$xHomes and haunts\$yGermany\$yBerlin
EX 12
200 #1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$xCriticism and interpretation\$xHistory\$z18th Century
EX 13
200 #1\$aЛермонтов\$bМ. Ю.\$gМихаил Юрьевич\$f1814-1841
EX 14
200 #1\$aПутин\$bВ. В.\$gВладимир Владимирович\$f1952-\$xВизиты\$yЧувашская Республика\$z2004
EX 15
200 #0\$aВильгельм\$dI Молчаливый\$cпринц Оранский\$f1533-1584
EX 16
200 #1\$aBellini\$bGentile\$fd. 1507\$kFollower of
EX 17
010 ##\$a0000000121179116
200 #1\$aVerde\$bCesário\$f1855-1886
EX 18
200 #1\$aVerde\$bCesário\$f1855-1886\$xPoesia\$xTemas\$yLisboa (Portugal)
EX 19
010 ##\$a0000000121224298
200 #1\$8itarus\$aStravinsky\$bIgor\$f1882-1971
300 0#\$a\$Compositore e musicista russo, nel 1934 naturalizzato francese e nel 1945 statunitense
300 0#\$aNato a Oranienbaum (Russia), morto a New York (Stati Uniti)
400 #1\$5z\$8itarus\$aStravinski\$bIgor Fedorovič\$f1882-1971

400 #1\$5z\$8itarus\$aStravinskij\$bIgor' Fëdorovič\$f1882-1971
700 #1\$5z\$8rusrus\$aСтравинский\$bИгорь Фёдорович\$f1882-1971
EX 20
010 ##\$a0000000110365992
200 #1\$8itaita\$aAgnesi\$bMaria Teresa\$f1720-1795
300 0#\$aCembalista, compositrice, cantante, sorella di Maria Gaetana
300 0#\$aSposata nel 1752 con Pietro Antonio Pinottini
300 0#\$aNata e morta a Milano
400 #1\$5z\$8itaita\$aAgnesi\$bTeresa\$f1720-1795
400 #1\$5j\$8itaita\$aAgnesi Pinottini\$bMaria Teresa\$f1720-1795
400 #1\$5j\$8itaita\$aD'Agnesi Pinottini\$bMaria Teresa\$f1720-1795
400 #1\$5j\$8itaita\$aAgnesi Pinottini\$bMaria Teresa d'\$f1720-1795
400 #1\$5j\$8itaita\$aAgnesi Pignottini\$bMaria Teresa\$f1720-1795
500 #1\$5xxxj\$8itaita\$aAgnesi\$bMaria Gaetana\$f1718-1799\$o0000000108623497
500 #1\$5xxxe\$8itaita\$aPinottini\$bPietro Antonio\$f1723-1792
The record contains two identities of the two sisters identified in \$5 by sibling relationship (code “j”, character position 3): one sister represented by the name entered in the 200 field with variant forms of name entered in the 400 fields, and the other sister represented by her name entered in the first 500 field. Each of these identities has its own ISNI in a dedicated 010 field. The link between each of the ISNIs and its associated identity is made by means of the \$6 subfield.

History

2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2016	Update field.

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a corporate body name.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the corporate name are \$a, \$b, \$h and \$g. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$d, \$e and \$f.

Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 210); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 215).

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
210	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	Specifies the Type of Corporate Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Specifies the Way the Names are Entered
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction

	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (EX [4](#)). If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy (EX [1](#), [4](#)); or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (EX [2](#), [8](#)).

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference.

Repeatable. (EX [3](#), [4](#))

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

Number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series.

Not repeatable. (EX [4](#))

\$e Location of Meeting

Place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable. (EX [4](#), [5](#))

\$f Date of Meeting

Date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable. (EX [4](#), [5](#))

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points. (See EX [5](#) under field 410.)

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

Part of the name following the inversion in a access point with an inverted element.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX [6](#)).

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX [5](#)). Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [5](#), [7](#), [8](#))

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [7](#))

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [8](#))

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

Use when the field is embedded in fields 241, 242. The list of codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, App. B. Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

In cases of multiple identities occurring in the same record, i.e. when the 010 field is repeated, use to link the 010 field containing an ISNI with the 210 field containing the name to be associated with that ISNI. Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

150 CODED DATA FIELD: CORPORATE NAME
410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1
210 02\$aBrunel University.\$bEducation Liaison Centre

EX 2
210 01\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration
EX 3
210 02\$aPomorski muzej\$c(Kotor)
EX 4
210 02\$aLabour Party\$c(Great Britain).\$bConference\$d(72nd ;\$f1972 ;\$eBlackpool, Lancashire)
EX 5
210 12\$aNorth Carolina Conference on Water Conservation\$f(1975 ;\$eRaleigh)\$xPeriodicals
EX 6
210 02\$aChurch of England.\$xClergy.\$jBiography
EX 7
210 02\$aCatholic Church\$yScotland\$xGovernment
EX 8
210 01\$aUnited States\$bArmy\$xRecruiting, enlistment, etc.\$zCivil War, 1861-1865
EX 9
210 01\$aРоссия\$c1917, февраль – октябрь\$bМинистерство продовольствия
EX 10
210 01\$aРоссийская Федерация\$bГосударственная Дума\$c2003-
EX 11
210 02\$aИнститут археологии\$cМосква
EX 12
210 12\$aМеждународная научная конференция на тему “Государства Центральной Азии: поиск места в мировой политике”\$f1994\$eМосква
EX 13
210 02\$aСтрогановское центральное художественно-промышленное училище\$cМосква
EX 14
210 10\$aБут,\$gНиколай Яковлевич,\$hВыставка произведений “Выполняя интернациональный долг. Афганские зарисовки”\$f1985\$eМосква
EX 15
210 02\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Курск≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, атомная подводная лодка\$xАвария\$хЭкологическиепоследствия
EX 16
210 02\$aМузей изящных искусств\$cТолидо, город (Огайо, штат; США)\$xКоллекцияграфики\$хВыставки\$z2005 – 2006
EX 17

Record 1: record from the Russian national authority file of corporate names
152 ##\$aRCR
210 01\$aГермания\$bВерховное главнокомандование вооруженными силами\$bУправление разведки и контрразведки
Record 2: record from the Russian national authority file of subject access points
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
210 02\$aАбвер
The example shows access points for the same corporate body formulated in accordance with descriptive cataloguing rules and subject system in use.
EX 18
210 00\$8itaita\$aLucca\$gFrancesco & C.\$z1826-1828
410 02\$5n\$8itaita\$aFrancesco Lucca & C.
410 00\$5z\$8itafre\$aLucca\$gFrançois & C.
510 00\$5h\$8itaita\$aLucca\$gFrancesco
500 #1\$6z01010\$5xxxs\$8itaita\$aLucca\$bFrancesco\$f1802-1872\$o0000000121189031
The name Francesco Lucca & C. was used by the publisher only in 1826-1828. Founder and owner was Francesco Lucca. The publishing house had no name, ISNI is referred to the owner.

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	Updated definition/scope: Indicator 1.
2016	Update field.

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a territorial or geographic name.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 215); territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 210).

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
215	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX [5](#)).

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX [2](#)). Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents. Repeatable. (EX [1](#), [3](#))

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [6](#))

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [3](#))

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

415 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME
515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME
715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME

Examples

EX 1
215 ##\$aUnited States\$xHistory
EX 2
215 ##\$aOntario\$xGuidebooks
EX 3
215 ##\$aOntario\$xHistory\$z1801-1900
EX 4
215 ##\$aRocky Mountains
EX 5
215 ##\$aParis (Texas)\$jGuidebooks
EX 6
215 ##\$aUnited States\$xBoundaries\$yCanada
EX 7
215 ##\$aПа-де-Кале, пролив
EX 8
215 ##\$aМарс, планета\$xГеология
EX 9

215 ##\$aЕгипет Древний\$xИстория

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a trademark name.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the trademark name is \$a. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c and \$f.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
216	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK	R	O
a	Data Element	NR	MA
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Data Element

Name of the trademark in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers.

Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates (EX [3](#), [4](#)). Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A trademark or “mark” is a distinctive word, phrase, logo, design, or any other device that can be represented graphically, used by a business or company to identify its products or services and distinguish them from the products and services made, sold or provided by others. Some examples are: Levi’s (trademark of Levi Strauss & Co.), Pentium (trademark of Intel Corporation), Decca (trademark of Decca Record Company).

Under the common term trademark other specific categories of marks such as service marks, trade dress, collective marks, etc., can be found. The trade name of a business can function as a mark as well. For instance Sony Music Entertainment Inc. uses its trade name Sony Music as a trademark on its line of sound recordings (see 516).

As far as sound recordings are concerned, the trademark, commonly known as the “label”, together with the label number uniquely identifies each commercial recording (see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, field 071).

Related Fields

416 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
516 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
716 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1
216 ##\$aKitekat
EX 2

216 ##\$aErato\$cmarque phonographique
EX 3
216 ##\$aDanone\$cmarque
EX 4
216 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8frerus\$aMelodiâ\$cmarque russe
216 ##\$7ba0yca0y\$8frerus\$aМелодия
416 ##\$7ba0yba0e\$8frerus\$aMelodiya
The first field 216 contains the transliterated form using the ISO transliteration scheme. The qualifier is necessary to distinguish the name of the Russian trademark from an otherwise identical New-Caledonian trademark. The second field 216 contains the Cyrillic. The variant form, in 416, appears on the products edited in France and follows no identified transliteration table.

History

2001	New field.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Field Definition and Scope

Standard citation which identifies printer/publisher device.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
217	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE	R	O
a	Printer/Publisher Device Description	NR	MA
b	Motto	R	O
c	Standard Citation	R	O
d	Size	NR	O
g	Iconographic Term	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Printer/Publisher Device Description

Description of the figurative elements of the device.

Not repeatable.

\$b Motto

Short sentence or phrase chosen as encapsulating the beliefs or ideals.

Repeatable.

\$c Standard Citation

Citation which identifies unambiguously a device.

Repeatable.

\$d Size

Size, in centimetres, of a device.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date

Dates of a printer/publisher when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Iconographic Term

Term relating to the main iconographic elements present in the device.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a printer/published device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a printed/publisher device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each device should be characterized by one or more standard citations which identify it unambiguously. The standard citation identifies the figure of the device within pre-established bibliographic sources and consists of an alphabetic character identifying the repertory, and of numerical characters identifying the device within the repertory (number of the figure), e.g., Z534 (Z = Zappella; 534 = number of the device in the repertory). A device may have several standard citations because it may be present in one or more sources.

Partial list of device sources for printer/publisher device of XVI century:

A	Ascarelli, F. La tipografia cinquecentina italiana. Firenze: Sansoni Antiquariato, 1953.
T	Ascarelli, F.; M. Menato. La tipografia del 500 in Italia. Firenze: L.S. Olschki, 1989.

Q	Ascarelli, F.; E. Vaccaro. Marche poco note di tipografi editori italiani del sec. XVI dalla raccolta della biblioteca universitaria Alessandrina in “Miscellanea di studi in memoria di Anna Saitta Revignas”. Firenze: L.S. Olschki, 1978, p. 29-52
K	Kristeller, P. Die italienischen Buchdrucker- und Verlegerzeichen bis 1525. Strassburg: J.H. Ed. Heitz, 1893 (ripr. facs.: Naarden, A.W. Van Bekhoven, 1969).
V	Vaccaro, E. Le marche dei tipografi ed editori del secolo XVI nella Biblioteca Angelica. Firenze: L.S. Olschki, 1983.
Z	Zappella, G. Le marche dei tipografi e degli editori italiani del Cinquecento. Milano: Editrice Bibliografica, 1986.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the printer/publisher device is \$b.
Qualifying/descriptive data are recorded in \$a, \$c, \$d and \$f.

Related Fields

510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
517 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$aGuida SBN. Libro antico
217 ##\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$bFestina lente\$cZ11524\$d40 x 48 mm\$f1574–1599\$gTartaruga\$gVela\$gGiglio
510 00\$3IT\ICCU\CNCT\CNCT000160\$aSermartelli,\$gBartolomeo\$c<1>
510 00\$3IT\ICCU\CNCT\CNCT000045\$aSermartelli,\$gMichelangelo
801 #3\$aIT\$bICCU\$c20070102
810 ##\$aZappella, Giuseppina, Le marche dei tipografi e degli editori italiani del cinquecento
810 ##\$aEDIT16\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it
856 4#\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/scripts/iccu_ext.dll?fn=63&ci=84

History

2009	New field.

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a family name.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the family name is \$a. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$d and \$f.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
220	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Family name in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

Categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection.

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable. (EX [3](#))

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [2](#))

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [2](#))

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

Use when the field is embedded in fields 241, 242. The list of codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, App. B. Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

In cases of multiple identities occurring in the same record, i.e. when the 010 field is repeated, use to link the 010 field containing an ISNI with the 220 field containing the name to be associated with that ISNI.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

420 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1

220 ##\$aDuecker\$cFamily
EX 2
220 ##\$aBuchanan\$cClan\$xHistory\$yScotland
EX 3
220 ##\$aPahlavi\$cDynasty\$f1925-1979
EX 4
220 ##\$aРамескиды\$cдинастия\$f1206 – ок.1070 до н.э.
EX 5
220 ##\$aКуттер\$cсемья фотографов\$xВыставки\$yЛюксембург, г.\$z1999
EX 6
220 ##\$aBragança\$cCasa de

History

2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$d Places associated with the family.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$c Type of family.
2016	Update.

223 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of name and other details relating to a fictitious character in works and expressions.

This field contains a character name listed in a performance-related resource (notably movies, operas scores, plots and librettos).

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
223	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name of the Character	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name.

Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Name of the Character

Additions to name of character which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets, indications of office, or the relationship with another character.

Repeatable. (EX [1](#), [2](#))

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

146 MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE
200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
4XX VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAMES

Examples

EX 1
146 ##\$b01vso####
223 ##\$aSerpina
300 0#\$asoprano
541 ##\$1200#1\$aPergolesi\$bGiovanni Battista\$1231##\$aLa serva padrona\$cintermezzo
146 ##\$b01vbs####
223 ##\$aUberto
300 0#\$abasso
541 ##\$1200#1\$aPergolesi\$bGiovanni Battista\$1231##\$aLa serva padrona\$cintermezzo
146 ##\$b01zas####
223 ##\$aVespone\$cServo di Uberto
300 0#\$aattore muto
541 ##\$1200#1\$aPergolesi\$bGiovanni Battista\$1231##\$aLa serva padrona\$cintermezzo
The characters for Giovanni Battista Pergolesi's intermezzo <i>La serva padrona</i> . Voice ranges and the fact that Vespone is a silent character are specified in coded field 146 and in a note field.
EX 2
223 ##\$aVologeso\$cre de' Parti\$csposo di Berenice
523 ##\$aBerenice\$cregina d'Armenia\$csposa di Vologeso
541 ##\$1200#1\$aZeno\$bApostolo\$1231##\$aVologeso\$cdramma per musica
The character of Vologeso in the textual work <i>Il Vologeso dramma per musica</i> by Apostolo Zeno. Field 541 in embedded fields technique.
EX 3
223 ##\$aAyla
530 ##\$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠clan of the cave bear
One character in Michael Chapman's film <i>The clan of the cave bear</i> .
EX 4
223 ##\$aChiaramantesi\$bGabriello
541 #0\$aBenelli, Sem\$4230\$tLa cena delle beffe
223 ##\$aChiaramantesi\$bNeri
541 #0\$aBenelli, Sem\$4230\$tLa cena delle beffe

223 ##\$aMalespini\$bGiannetto
541 #0\$aBenelli, Sem\$4230\$tLa cena delle beffe
Part of the characters for Sem Benelli's <i>La cena delle beffe</i> ; names entered under surname. Field 541 in standard subfields technique.
EX 5
223 ##\$aAmsterdam Vallon
531 ##\$aGangs of New York
<i>Gangs of New York</i> by Martin Scorsese: the main character, Amsterdam Vallon.
EX 6
223 ##\$aMelisanda
542 ##\$aMaeterlinck\$bMaurice\$tPelléas et Mélisande\$drame lyriquekfrancese\$mitaliano \$wCarlo Zangarini
The character of Mélisande in an expression consisting in the Italian translation by Carlo Zangarini of Maurice Maeterlinck's libretto.

History

2019	New field.

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a title.

A name/title access point is intended to be used to bring together different titles of a work.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field does not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If a title intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 (entity “work”) or -32 (entity “expression”) instead.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the title are \$a, \$i, and \$h. Qualifying data are recorded in subfields from \$b to \$w.

Note that a record describing a title entity has the value “P” in record label, position 9 (type of entity).

Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
230	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	General Material Designation	R	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
l	Form Subheading	NR	O
m	Language	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
q	Version (or Date of Version)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used. Not repeatable.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of the general material designation.

Repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX [11](#)).

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX [14](#)).

\$k Date of Publication

Date of publication of the item when it is added to the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title.

Not repeatable. (EX [1](#))

\$m Language

Language of the item, when required as part of the title. (EX [1](#), [5](#), [10](#))

If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m. Not repeatable. (EX [13](#)).

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$q Version (or Date of Version)

Identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version.

Not repeatable. (EX [1](#))

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the item.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable. (EX [12](#))

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable. (EX [12](#))

\$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

Statement that a musical work is an arrangement.

Not repeatable. (EX [2](#))

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable. (EX [3](#))

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [3](#), [6](#))

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable. (EX [6](#))

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE
530 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE
730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1
230 ##\$aBible.\$mEnglish.\$qAuthorized.\$lSelections

EX 2
230 ##\$aGod save the King;\$warr.
EX 3
230 ##\$aBeowulf\$xLanguage\$jGlossaries, etc.
EX 4
230 ##\$aCrónica de los Reyes de Castilla
EX 5
230 ##\$aJuliana\$mMiddle English
EX 6
230 ##\$aCoran\$xAppréciation\$yEurope
EX 7
230 ##\$aCBMS regional conference series in mathematics
EX 8
230 ##\$aCambridge history of Iran
EX 9
230 ##\$aViking books
EX 10
230 ##\$aIliad.\$hBook 24.\$mEnglish
EX 11
230 ##\$aPièces de viole.\$h4e livre.\$h23e partie.\$iArabesque
EX 12
230 ##\$aConcertos\$roboes(2), string orchestra\$sop.9, no.3\$uF major
EX 13
230 ##\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠malade imaginaire.\$mEnglish & French
EX 14
230 ##\$aБиблия\$iВетхий Завет\$iПсалтирь\$ппер. с евр.
EX 15
230 ##\$aБазилики\$lсборник законов
EX 16
230 ##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Повесть временных лет≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$lлетописный свод \$xИсследование текста

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.

2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2020	Editorial changes (examples).
2023	Errata/text edit: definition, \$l, examples.

231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of title for the work entity.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model describing a work that has no creator's name associated with it.

Note that a record describing a title entity has value “P” in record label, position 9 (type of entity).

Additional information about the authorized title access point for a work entity is indicated in subfield 154\$a, code “a” on the character position 1.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
231	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)	R	O
a	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
g	Form of Work Subdivision	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object URI	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title

Title by which the work is known.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$g Form of Work Subdivision

A standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title of work. (EX [6](#), [7](#)) Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable. (EX [4](#))

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

431 VARIANT ACCESS POINT - TITLE (WORK)
531 RELATED ACCESS POINT - TITLE (WORK)
731 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT - TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1
154 ##\$axa
231 ##\$aProphéties de la Sibylle érythréenne\$fcatalan
This piece of music – also known as Cant de la Sibil·la , Canto de la Sibila, etc.— has several musical versions that can be individuated thanks to the language of the poem.
EX 2
154 ##\$aba
231 ##\$aBible\$iCorinthians\$h1st
EX 3
154 ##\$axa
231 ##\$aLlibre vermell de Montserrat
EX 4
154 ##\$axa
231 ##\$aLiturgie des heures\$kCommunauté Saint-Martin
EX 5
154 ##\$aba
231 ##\$aMahābhārata\$iVanaparva\$iNalopākhyāna
EX 6
231 ##\$aBible.\$gSelections.
EX 7
231 ##\$aCratère de Vix.\$gCopie.\$kRésine, RMN.
A resin copy of a famous Greek bronze vase discovered in a Celtic tomb in France in 1953, made by the French Réunion des Musées Nationaux.

History

2012	New field.
2020	Editorial changes (examples).
2023	Errata/text edit: definition, examples.
2024	Text edit, new subfields \$3, \$R and \$g.

232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of title for the expression entity.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model describing an expression of work that has no creator's name associated with it.

Note that a record describing a title entity has value “P” in record label, position 9 (type of entity).

Additional information about the authorized title access point for an expression entity is indicated in subfield 154\$a, code “b” on the character position 1.

This field is also intended for linking the field to the authority record describing the related work, by the means of a \$3 subfield (standard subfield technique) or an embedded 001 field (embedded field technique) holding the record identifier for the work.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
232	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
a	Title [Work]	NR	MA
g	Form of work subdivision [Work]	NR	O
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object URI	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

In the list of data subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording “[Work]”. They can be copied from the record describing the related work. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with “[Expression]”.

\$a Title [Work]

Title by which the work is known.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$g Form of Work Subdivision

A standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title of a work. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression.

The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression. Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression.
Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - TITLE (WORK)
432 VARIANT ACCESS POINT - TITLE (EXPRESSION)
532 RELATED ACCESS POINT - TITLE (EXPRESSION)
732 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1
154 ##\$abb
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the Work>\$aBible\$iCorinthians\$h1st\$mGreek\$o1934
Subfields \$3, \$a and \$i refer to the work, while \$m identifies the language of the expression, and \$o the date associated with the expression.

EX 2
154 ##\$axb
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aLiturgie des heures\$kCommunauté Saint-Martin\$nmusique notée\$mlatin-français
EX 3
154 ##\$abb
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aMahābhārata\$iVanaparva\$iNalopākhyāna\$msanskrit-allemand\$o1885

History

2012	New field.
2020	Editorial changes (examples).
2021	Changed status: deleted provisional.
2024	Text edit. New subfields \$R and \$g.

235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of collective title.

A collective title access point is intended to bring together various works by prolific authors.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the collective preferred title are \$a and \$e. Qualifying data are recorded in subfields from \$b to \$w.

This field is only used embedded in a -45 name/collective title fields.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
235	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE	R	O
a	Collective Title	NR	MA
b	General Material Designation	R	O
e	Collective Subtitle	NR	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
m	Language	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Collective Title
	0	Complete collected works
	1	Selected works, i.e., a collection of individual items by an author, but not the entirety of his work
	2	Selections, i.e., parts of the works of an author, including extracts from works
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Collective Title

Main term used to bring together works of one kind.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

Not repeatable.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of general material designation.

Repeatable.

\$e Collective Subtitle

Subsequent term or terms used to subdivide the collective title.

Not repeatable.

\$k Date of Publication

Date of the item when added to a collective title to further subdivide a collection.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language

Language of the item when required as part of the authorized access point in order to group together items in the same language.

Not repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the item.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

Statement that a musical work is an arrangement.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the collective title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the collective title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

See field 245.

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in terminology
2009	Change to status: Embedded in -45 fields.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a name/title.

A name/title access point is intended to be used to bring together different titles of a work.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field does not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If a name/title intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is desired, use fields -41 (entity “work”) or -42 (entity “expression”) instead.

Note that a name/title entity has the value “h” in record label, position 9 (type of entity).

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
240	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Title	NR	MA
g	Form of Work Subdivision	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 230 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 240, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**\$a Name**

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements (EX [3](#)). Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements (EX [3](#)). Not repeatable.

\$g Form of Work Subdivision

A standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
540 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1
240 ##\$1215##\$aFrance.\$1230##\$aBulletin officiel du registre du commerce
EX 2
240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$1230##\$aHamlet\$jBibliographies
Examples 1 & 2 illustrate the embedded fields technique.
EX 3
240 ##\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$tDon Giovanni. KV527 (Prague)
Example 3 illustrates the standard subfields technique.
EX 4
240 ##\$1200#1\$aРолинг\$bД. К.\$gАжоан Кэтлине\$f1965 –\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Гарри Поттер и философский камень≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$xСюжет\$хИспользование для компьютерной игры
EX 5
240 ##\$1200#1\$aМусоргский\$gМодеест Петрович\$bМ. П.\$f1839 – 1881\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Борис Годунов≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$lопера
See also Example under field 540 for use of control subfields in an embedded field.
EX 6
240 ##\$Stoker, Bram (1847-1912).\$tDracula\$gSelections.
EX 7
240 ##\$aGautier, Théophile (1811-1872).\$tLe roman de la momie.\$gAbrégé.

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.
2012	Additional subfields to field.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.

2023	Text edit (definition).
2024	New subfield \$g.

241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of name/title for the work entity.

A name/title access point for the work is intended to bring together various expressions or manifestations of the work that have appeared under different titles.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model describing a work that has at least one creator whose name is known to be associated with it.

Note that a record describing a name/title entity has value “h” in record label, position 9 (type of entity).

Additional information about the authorized name/title access point for a work entity is indicated in subfield 154\$a, code “a” on the character position 1.

Describing such an entity, the name of the agent must be recorded in the field 501, 511 or 521, the relationship agent to work is indicated by the code \$5, pos. 4 (“b” or “c”). Therefore, the subfield \$a in standard fields technique or “name” values in embedded fields technique of the field 241 are optional.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
241	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Interfield Linking Data	R	MA
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	O
t	Title	NR	MA
g	Form of Work Subdivision	NR	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O

3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Name Associated with the Work	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	
R	Real World Object URI	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation.

Repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 231 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 241, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements. Optional (see Field Definition above). Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements.

When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$g Form of Work Subdivision

A standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part. (EX [2B](#), [6B](#))

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part. (EX [3B](#), [6B](#))

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable. (EX [11](#)).

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable. (EX [5B](#))

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable. (EX [5B](#), [9A](#).)

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable. (EX [5B](#))

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable. (EX [8](#))

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Name Associated with the Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
441 VARIANT ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)
541 RELATED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)
741 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1A
Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1200#1\$aAzzarone\$bPietro\$4070\$1231##\$tStoria della letteratura italiana
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aAzzarone\$bPietro\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 1B
Standard subfields technique
241 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$aAzzarone, Pietro\$4070\$tStoria della letteratura italiana
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aAzzarone\$bPietro\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 2A
Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1001FRBNF11904568X\$1200#1\$aGenette\$bGérard\$f1930-....\$4070\$1231##\$aFigures\$h2
501 #1\$3FRBNF11904568X\$5xxxxa\$aGenette\$bGérard\$f1930-....\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 2B
Standard subfields technique
241 #1\$3FRBNF11904568X\$aGenette, Gérard (1930-....)\$4070\$tFigures\$h2
501 #1\$3FRBNF11904568X\$5xxxxa\$aGenette\$bGérard\$f1930-....\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.

EX 3A
Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1001FRBNF123043175\$1200#1\$aPlutarque\$f0046?-0120?\$4070\$1231##\$aVies parallèles \$iDémosthène-Cicéron
501 #1\$3FRBNF123043175\$5xxxxa\$aPlutarque\$f0046?-0120?\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 3B
Standard subfields technique
241 #1\$3FRBNF123043175\$aPlutarque (0046?-0120?)\$4070\$tVies parallèles\$iDémosthène-Cicéron
501 #1\$3FRBNF123043175\$5xxxxa\$aPlutarque\$f0046?-0120?\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 4A
Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1001FRBNF124836229\$1200#1\$aManzoni\$bAlessandro\$f1785-1873\$4070\$1231## \$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠conte di Carmagnola
501 #1\$3FRBNF124836229\$5xxxxa\$aManzoni\$bAlessandro\$f1785-1873\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 4B
Standard subfields technique
241 #1\$3FRBNF124836229\$aManzoni, Alessandro (1785-1873)\$4070\$t≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠conte di Carmagnola
501 #1\$3FRBNF124836229\$5xxxxa\$aManzoni\$bAlessandro\$f1785-1873\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 5A
Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1001FRBNF148060677\$1200#1\$aChopin\$bFrédéric\$f1810-1849\$4230\$1231##\$aBallades \$rPiano\$sCT 5\$uFa mineur
501 #1\$3FRBNF148060677\$5xxxxa\$aChopin\$bFrédéric\$f1810-1849\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 5B
Standard subfields technique, structured title
241 #1\$3FRBNF148060677\$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)\$4230\$tBallades\$rPiano\$sCT 5\$uFa mineur
501 #1\$3FRBNF148060677\$5xxxxa\$aChopin\$bFrédéric\$f1810-1849\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 5C
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
241 #0\$3FRBNF148060677\$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)\$4230\$tBallades. Piano. CT 5. Fa mineur
501 #1\$3FRBNF148060677\$5xxxxa\$aChopin\$bFrédéric\$f1810-1849\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 6A
Embedded fields technique

241 ##\$1001FRBNF147867098\$1200#1\$aBizet\$bGeorges\$f1838-1875\$4230\$1231##\$aCarmen\$hActe 2, n° 17\$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée
501 #1\$3FRBNF147867098\$5xxxxa\$aBizet\$bGeorges\$f1838-1875\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 6B
Standard subfields technique, structured title
241 #1\$3FRBNF147867098\$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)\$4230\$tCarmen\$hActe 2, n° 17\$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée
501 #1\$3FRBNF147867098\$5xxxxa\$aBizet\$bGeorges\$f1838-1875\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 6C
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
241 #0\$3FRBNF147867098\$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)\$4230\$tCarmen. Acte 2, n° 17, La fleur que tu m'avais jetée
501 #1\$3FRBNF147867098\$5xxxxa\$aBizet\$bGeorges\$f1838-1875\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 7
Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$121001\$3FRBNF11863754X\$12101\$aFrance\$4070\$1231##\$aBulletin 7esponsi du 7esponsi du commerce
511 01\$3FRBNF11863754X\$5xxxxa\$aFrance\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 511, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 8
Embedded fields technique, Library of Congress subject headings
241 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the name>\$1200#1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$4070\$1231##\$aHamlet\$jBibliographies
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 9A
Standard subfields technique, structured title
241 #1\$3FRBNF14027233X\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$4230\$tDon Giovanni\$sKV 527
501 #1\$3FRBNF14027233X\$5xxxxa\$aMozart\$bWolfgang Amadeus\$f1756-1791\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 9B
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
241 #0\$3FRBNF14027233X\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$4230\$tDon Giovanni. KV 527
501 #1\$3FRBNF14027233X\$5xxxxa\$aMozart\$bWolfgang Amadeus\$f1756-1791\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 10A
Embedded fields technique, original Cyrillic script
241 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the name>\$1200#1\$aРОЛИНГ\$bА. К.\$gАжоан КэТЛИН\$f1965 –\$4070\$1230

##\$a#NSB#”#NSE#Гарри Поттер и философский камень#NSB#”#NSE# \$xCсюжет\$xИспользование для компьютерной игры
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aРолинг\$bД. К.\$gДжоан Кэтлин\$f1965 –\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 10B
Embedded fields technique, transliteration
241 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the name>\$1200#1\$aРолинг\$bД. К.\$gДжоан Кэтлин\$f1965 – \$4070\$1231##\$a#NSB#”#NSE#Garri Potter I filosofskij kamen”#NSB#”#NSE# \$xCûžet\$xIspol”zobanie dlâ komp’ûternoj igry
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aРолинг\$bД. К.\$gДжоан Кэтлин\$f1965 –\$4070
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 11A
Embedded fields technique, original Cyrillic script
241 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the name>\$1200#1\$aМусоргский\$gМодест Петрович\$bМ. П.\$f1839 – 1881\$4230\$1231##\$a#NSB#”#NSE#Борис Годунов#NSB#”#NSE#сопера
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aМусоргский\$gМодест Петрович\$bМ. П.\$f1839 – 1881\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 11B
Embedded fields technique, transliteration
241 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the name>\$1200#1\$aMusorgskij\$gModest Petrovič\$bM. P.\$f1839 – 1881\$4230\$1231##\$a#NSB#”#NSE#Boris Godunov#NSB#”#NSE#сопера
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxxa\$aMusorgskij\$gModest Petrovič\$bM. P.\$f1839 – 1881\$4230
The name of the agent is recorded in the field 501, the “name” values of the field 241 are optional.
EX 12
241 ##\$Stoker, Bram (1847-1912).\$tDracula\$gChoix\$kCassou-Noguès ; Langenhagen
Excerpts from <i>Dracula</i> selected by Anne Cassou-Noguès and Aude de Langenhagen
EX 13
241 ##\$aGautier, Théophile (1811-1872).\$tLe roman de la momie.\$gAbrégé.
An abbreviated version of Théophile Gautier’s novel <i>Le roman de la momie</i> .

History

2012	New field.
2023	Text edit., change of scope and examples.
2024	Text edit. New subfields \$R and \$g.

242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of name/title for an expression of a work.

A name/title access point for the work is intended to bring together various expressions or manifestations of the work that have appeared under different titles.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model for expression entity.

Note that a record describing a name/title entity has value “h” in record label, position 9 (type of entity).

Additional information about the authorized name/title access point for an expression entity is indicated in subfield 154\$a, code “b” on the character position 1.

Describing such an entity, the name of the agent related to the expression is recorded in a field 502, 512 or 522, the relationship agent to expression is indicated by the code \$5, pos. 4.

This field is also intended for linking field to the authority record describing the related work, by the means of a \$3 subfield (standard subfield technique) or an embedded 001 field (embedded field technique) holding the record identifier for the work.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
242	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Interfield Linking Data	R	MA
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name [Work]	NR	MA
t	Title [Work]	NR	MA
g	Form of Work Subdivision [Work]	NR	O
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O

l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object URI	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 232 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 240, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

In the list of data subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording “[Work]”. They can be copied from the record describing the related work. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with “[Expression]”.

\$a Name [Work]

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements.

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title [Work]

Title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements. When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 241 is used.

Mandatory.

\$g Form of Work Subdivision [Work]

A standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title of work. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable. (EX [3](#))

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m. Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communicate on in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression.

The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable. (EX [6](#))

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable. (EX [4](#), [6](#))

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)
442 VARIANT ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
502 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION
542 RELATED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
742 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT - NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1A
Embedded fields technique
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aAzzarone\$bPietro\$4070\$1232##\$aStoria della letteratura italiana\$mitalien
EX 1B
Standard subfields technique
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aAzzarone, Pietro\$4070\$tStoria della letteratura italiana\$mitalien
EX 2A
Embedded fields technique
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$3\$aGenette\$bGérard\$f1930-....\$4070\$1232##\$aFigures\$h2\$mfrançais
EX 2B
Standard subfields technique
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aGenette, Gérard (1930-....)\$4070\$tFigures\$h2\$mfrançais
EX 3A
Embedded fields technique
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aPlutarque\$f0046?-0120?\$1232##\$aVies parallèles\$iDémosthène-Cicéron\$mfrançais\$IExtraits
EX 3B
Standard subfields technique
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aPlutarque (0046?-0120?)\$tVies parallèles\$iDémosthène-Cicéron\$mfrançais\$IExtraits
EX 4A

Embedded fields technique
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aManzoni\$bAlessandro\$f1785-1873\$1232##\$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠conte di Carmagnola\$mfrançais\$wClavareau
EX 4B
Standard subfields technique
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aManzoni, Alessandro (1785-1873)\$tIl conte di Carmagnola \$mfrançais\$wClavareau
EX 5A
Embedded fields technique
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aChopin\$bFrédéric\$f1810-1849\$1232##\$aBallades\$rPiano\$sCT 5\$uFa mineur\$nMusique notée
EX 5B
Standard subfields technique, structured title
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)\$tBallades\$rPiano\$sCT 5\$uFa mineur\$nMusique notée
EX 5C
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
242 #0\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)\$tBallades. Piano. CT 5. Fa mineur. Musique notée
EX 6A
Embedded fields technique
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aBizet\$bGeorges\$f1838-1875\$1232##\$aCarmen\$hActe 2, n° 17\$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée\$nMusique interprétée\$o1995\$wAlagna \$wArmstrong\$wLondon Philharmonic
EX 6B
Standard subfields technique, structured title
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)\$tCarmen\$hActe 2, n° 17\$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée\$nMusique interprétée\$o1995\$wAlagna\$wArmstrong\$wLondon Philharmonic
EX 6C
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
242 #0\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)\$tCarmen. Acte 2, n° 17, La fleur que tu m'avais jetée. Musique interprétée (1995 ; Alagna ; Armstrong ; London Philharmonic)

History

2012	New field.
2023	Text edit., change of scope.
2024	Text edit, new subfields \$R and \$g.

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties and other agreements between two or more parties.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Conventional name/title access points for legal and religious texts are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction or church and a conventional title.

The access points for treaties are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction of the first party, followed by a conventional title and the name of the jurisdiction of the other party. They can also be formed just by a commonly recognized conventional title.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the conventional name/title for legal and religious texts are \$a, \$b, \$e and \$i. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$f, \$l, \$n and \$t.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
243	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	NR	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
t	Conventional Title	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Form of Conventional Name
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Specifies the Form of Conventional Name/Title

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value 2: Name entered under other form

Used for church names.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy.

Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions.

Repeatable.

\$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued (EX [4](#), [5](#)).

If necessary, subfield \$b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or \$c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used. Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing

Date of legal issue or version when added to the authorized conventional name access point (EX [2](#), [3](#)).

The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the authorized conventional name access point (EX [4](#), [5](#)). Repeatable (EX [5](#)).

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the authorized conventional name access point is being applied is only a part of the text named in the access point (EX [2](#)).

Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX [3](#)).

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the authorized conventional name access point (EX [5](#)).

Repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$t Conventional Title

Authorized form of a conventional title for the text being catalogued.

The term(s) of the title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable (EX [5](#)).

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the conventional name access point which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the conventional name access point that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

443 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
543 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Examples

EX 1
243 #1\$aPortugal\$tLeis, decretos, etc.
EX 2

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

243 #1\$aPortugal\$tLeis, decretos, etc.\$iCódigo de processo penal,\$f1987
EX 3
243 #2\$aCatholic Church\$tLiturgy\$iMissale\$iKyriale
EX 4
243 #1\$aPortugal.\$tTratados, etc.\$eRússia,\$f1798
543 #1\$aRússia.\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal,\$f1798
EX 5
243 #2\$aIgreja Católica\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal\$f1778
543 #1\$aPortugal\$tTratados, etc.\$eIgreja Católica\$f1778

History

2009	New field.
2023	Text edit/errata.

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of name/collective title.

A name/collective title access point is intended to bring together records for various works by prolific authors.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The field contains name/collective title formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system that does not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
245	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Collective Title	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 235 for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 245, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields may be needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**\$a Name**

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements (EX [3](#)). Not repeatable.

\$t Collective Title

Title proper of a bibliographic item containing several works by one or more authors issued in a single volume or uniform set.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements (EX [3](#)). Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/collective title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/collective title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

Embedded Fields Technique
EX 1
245 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks.\$mRussian
EX 2
245 ##\$1200#1\$aWilde,\$bOscar.\$12352#\$aPlays.\$eSelections
Standard Subfields Technique
EX 3
245 ##\$aWilde, Oscar\$tPlays. Selections
Embedded Fields Technique
EX 4
245 ##\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bВ.\$gВильям\$f1564-1616\$12351#\$aИзбранные сочинения\$k1938
EX 5
245 ##\$1200#1\$aБах\$bИ. С.\$gИоганн Себастьян\$f1685 – 1750\$12350#\$aВокальные произведения
EX 6
245 ##\$1200#1\$aТерехина\$bЛ. И.\$gЛидия Ивановна\$f1950\$12350#\$aПоэзия\$xЯзык и стиль

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of a topical subject access point.

Field also contains the preferred form of a category formulated in accordance with the provisions of the system of subject categories used. It may contain the category in textual form, coded form, or both forms.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
250	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	R	O
a	Topical Subject or Subject Category	NR	MA
n	Subject Category Code	R	O
m	Subject Category Subdivision Code	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Topical Subject or Subject Category

Term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points or subject categories used.

Not repeatable.

\$n Subject Category Code

Coded representation of a subject category (EX [7](#)).

Repeatable.

\$m Subject Category Subdivision Code

Coded representation of a subject category subdivision (EX [8](#)).

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) or material (EX 4). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX 5). Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents. (EX 2) or a term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the \$a subfield.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents (EX 1).

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents (EX 3).

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

450 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
550 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1
250 ##\$aEducation\$yItaly
EX 2
250 ##\$aConstruction industry\$xLaw and legislation
EX 3
250 ##\$aArchitecture, Modern\$z19th century
EX 4
##\$aBiology\$jPeriodicals
EX 5
250 ##\$aBiology\$xPeriodicals

Examples 4 and 5 illustrate alternative approaches to coding form; either explicitly using subfield \$j or as a topical subdivision, using subfield \$x.

EX 6

250 ##\$aBiology\$xPeriodicals\$xBibliography\$jUnion lists

EX 7

250 ##\$nK800

Subject category code recorded according to the AGRIS Thesaurus identified in 152 Rules subfield \$bagris.

EX 8

250 ##\$nZ1\$m.542.248.797\$2mesh

The MeSH notational equivalent of the subject access point for Slovakia.

EX 9

250 ##\$aМорская пехота\$xИстория\$yСоединенные Штаты Америки\$z1941 – 1945

EX 10

250 ##\$aТабасаранский язык

EX 11

250 ##\$aТаможенный контроль\$yРоссийская Федерация

EX 12

250 ##\$aПолитические партии\$xПрограммы\$yРоссийская Федерация

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$m Subject category subdivision code.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$n Subject category code.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$x Topical subdivision or subject category subdivision text.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$a Topical subject or subject category.
2019	Text errata.

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form for a place of publication, production, etc. or a place and date of performance or recording, or provenance.

The field may include the name of a country, state or province, county and/or city.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the place name are \$d and \$k. Qualifying data are recorded in subfields from \$a to \$o.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
260	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)	NR	MA
b	State or Province, etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date	R	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Area	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Country (Nation State)

Political unit where the state and nation are congruent.

Not repeatable.

\$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country.

Not repeatable.

\$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$d City, etc.

Name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one

For smaller unites, see \$k. Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc.

Repeatable. (EX [4-6](#), [8](#), [9](#)).

\$f Date

A date is a specific time that can be named.

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats (EX [4-9](#)).

\$g Season

Each of the four divisions of the year (spring, summer, autumn, and winter) marked by particular weather patterns.

Not repeatable (EX [4](#)).

\$h Occasion

A special or formal event.

Not repeatable (EX [6](#), [8](#), [9](#)).

\$i Final Date

Date on which something ends.

Not repeatable (EX [9](#)).

\$k Subsection of City, etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest (EX [10](#)).

\$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$n Extraterrestrial Areas

Any extra-terrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$o Geographical Area

Larger area than country, such as world, hemisphere, continent.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used (EX 10).

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

460 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
760 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1
260 ##\$aUnited States\$bAlabama\$dMontgomery
EX 2
260 ##\$dRoma
EX 3
260 ##\$aUnited States\$bVirginia\$cPrince William County\$dHaymarket
EX 4
260 ##\$aItaly\$dMilano\$eTeatro Ducale\$f1794\$gAutunno
EX 5
260 ##\$dSydney\$eSydney Opera House\$eConcert hall\$f19990510
EX 6
260 ##\$aItaly\$bPuglia\$cLecce\$dSerrano\$ePiazza del Duomo\$f1970\$hFesta dell'Assunta
EX 7
260 ##\$aGreat Britain\$dLondon\$f2002
EX 8
260 ##\$aAT\$dVienna\$eHofburg Kapelle\$f17050410\$hVenerdi Santo
EX 9

260 ##\$aIT\$bBasilicata\$cMatera\$dScalzano ionico\$epiazza del comune\$f20031127\$i20031128 \$hinquinamento atomico
EX 10
260 ##\$oWorld\$oEurope\$aUnited Kingdom\$bEngland\$cGreater London\$dLondon\$kCity of Westminster\$kWestminster
Complete hierarchy from Getty Thesaurus of Geographic Names for an item published in Westminster. The Thesaurus is recorded in 152 subfield\$btgn.
EX 11
260 ##\$nMoon\$nApennines
The Moon is entered in \$n as are any geographical subdivisions.
EX 12
260 ##\$eChallenger II
EX 13
260 ##\$aРоссия\$bТатарстан\$cКукморский район\$dНырья, деревня
EX 14
260 ##\$oЦентральная Европа\$mРейн, река
EX 15
260 ##\$dСанкт-Петербург, город\$eЛетний сад

History

2009	Changes in name and function.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: subfields \$e - \$o.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$c Intermediate political jurisdiction.

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition and Scope

Preferred form of the term indicating the form, genre or physical characteristics.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Field is repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
280	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Type of the Entity
	#	Not defined
	0	Work
	2	Manifestation
	3	Item

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Term in the form prescribed by the system of form access points used.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX [9](#)).

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX [10](#)). Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to the form access point to specify the aspect that the access point represents (EX [2](#)).

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents (EX 1).

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents (EX 1, 2).

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

152 RULES
180 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS
250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS
580 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS
780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$brbgenr
280 ##\$aEmblem books\$yGermany\$z17th century
A form access point constructed according to Genre terms: thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing.
EX 2
152 ##\$brbgenr
280 ##\$aDictionaries\$xFrench\$z18th century
The item is a French Dictionary published in 1770.
EX 3
152 ##\$brbpap
280 ##\$aBritish marbled papers\$y Germany\$z17th century
The term indicating physical characteristics of the item constructed according to Paper terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing.
EX 4
152 ##\$brbtyp
280 ##\$aOld style types
EX 5
152 ##\$brbprov

280 ##\$aArmorial bookplates
EX 6
152 ##\$brbpri
280 ##\$aManuscript corrections
EX 7
Record 1
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aSuperhero films
825 ##\$aExample of particular hero at Superman films
830 ##\$aFor films with particular heroes, use the appropriate LCSH
Record 2
152 ##\$blc
250 ##\$aSuperman films
580 ##\$2gsafd\$aSuperhero films
A form access point constructed according to Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc., C.f. gsafd note “Consult LCSH for films with particular heroes, e.g., Superman films”.
EX 8
Record 1
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aComedies
550 ##\$2lc\$aComedy
A Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc., access point for documents consisting of comedies. Normally a gsafd term for documents of ... will be identical to the corresponding Library of Congress Subject Heading for documents about... This is one of the exceptions.
Record 2
152 ##\$blc
250 ##\$aComedy
580 ##\$2gsafd\$aComedies
An LCSH for documents about comedies.
EX 9
280 ##\$aChildren’s stories\$jPictorial works
EX 10
280 ##\$aChildren’s stories\$xPictorial works
Examples 11 and 12 illustrate alternative approaches to coding form; either explicitly using subfield \$j or as a topical subdivision, using subfield \$x.
EX 11
152 ##\$brbgenr
280 #0\$aEmblem books\$yGermany\$z17th century
EX 12

152 ##\$brbprov
280 #3\$aArmorial bookplates
EX 13
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
280 ##\$aЭнциклопедии
300 1#\$aСправочное издание, содержащее в обобщенном виде основные сведения по одной или всем отраслям знаний и практической деятельности, изложенные в виде кратких статей, расположенных в алфавитном или систематическом порядке
Note in 300 in English: A comprehensive compendium that holds information from either all branches of knowledge or a particular branch of knowledge.

History

2001	New field.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Indicator 2.
2021	Editorial changes.
2024	Text edit, new subfields \$3 and \$R.

3-- NOTES BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

Information notes are used to provide historical information about an access point or to provide information when simple references generated from variant or related access points do not explain adequately a relationship. An information note in a reference record explains relationships between the reference access point and the authorized access point(s) to which the user of the reference is directed. Information notes in general explanatory records give the conventions used in formulating or filing authorized access points of the type one might expect to find under the form given in the explanatory access point.

The following information note fields are defined:

300 INFORMATION NOTE
305 TEXTUAL SEE ALSO REFERENCE NOTE
310 TEXTUAL SEE REFERENCE NOTE
320 GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE
327 CONTENTS NOTE
330 GENERAL SCOPE NOTE
333 USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE
334 AWARDS NOTE
340 BIOGRAPHICAL AND ACTIVITY NOTE
341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER
356 GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE
370 NOTE ON WORK
371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION
378 ABSTRACT OF WORK OR EXPRESSION

Occurrence

The fields in the 3-- block are optional and repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

All information notes are in a textual form suitable for display to the public, for whom they are intended. Notes intended primarily to guide cataloguers are carried in the 8-- SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK.

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2016	Update.
2019	Table update. Deleted paragraph in the section Notes on Field Contents.
2020	Update.
2024	Update.

300 INFORMATION NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Note that assist in explaining the relationship between the 2-- access point and other entities.

This field is also used to provide information which helps to identify an access point.

It is used in an authority or reference record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
300	INFORMATION NOTE	R	O
a	Information Note	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Note
	0	Note concerns name or title use of access point
	1	Note concerns subject use of access point
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Information Note

Information note in natural language.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used. Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
Record 1 (Authority record)
210 01\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration
300 0#\$aReplaced Ontario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission on Sept. 1, 1979.
510 02\$5a\$aOntario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission
Record 2 (Authority record)
210 02\$aOntario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission
300 0#\$aReplaced by Ontario. Office of Arbitration on Sept. 1, 1979.
510 01\$5b\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration
EX 2
Record 1 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aØrn,\$bB.
300 0#1\$aJoint pseudonym of Mette Bader, Hans Jørn Christensen, Jørgen Døør and others.
500 #1\$5f\$aBader,\$bMette
500 #1\$5f\$aChristensen,\$bHans Jørn
500 #1\$5f\$aDøør,\$bJørgen,\$f1933-
Record 2 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aBader,\$bMette
500 #1\$5l\$aØrn,\$bB.
Record 3 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aChristensen,\$bHans Jørn
500 #1\$5l\$aØrn,\$bB.
Record 4 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aDøør,\$bJørgen,\$f1933-
500 #1\$5l\$aØrn,\$bB.
EX 3
210 01\$aCanada.\$bRoyal Commission on Banking Finance
300 0#1\$aEstablished Oct. 18, 1961. Final report submitted Feb. 4, 1964. Chairman: Dana Harris Porter.
Note: Example of an information note with no related references.
EX 4
210 02\$aЦНИИ морского флота\$cЛенинград
300 0#1\$aОбразован в 1939 г. В 1953 г. Институт был переименован, а с 1954 по 1987 гг. Вновь существовал под прежним наименованием
EX 5
200 #1\$aБурбаки\$bH.\$gНикола
300 0#1\$aКоллективный псевдоним группы французских математиков
EX 6
210 02\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠ЛИБНЕТ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, национальный информационно-библиотечный центр\$cМосква, город
300 1#1\$aЦентр основан двумя национальными библиотеками России: Российской государственной библиотекой и Российской национальной библиотекой в марте 2001 года для реализации проектов сотрудничества российских библиотек в области создания, обмена и использования электронных ресурсов на базе современных технологий

History

1994	Text errata.

305 TEXTUAL SEE ALSO REFERENCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Explanatory text and the access point referred to that are required when an adequate see also reference cannot be constructed solely from the content of one or more 5--related access point field(s) contained in authority record.

The authorized access point referred from is the 2-- record access point of the authority record. Each authorized access point referred to and the “see also” (or similar) instruction, are given in a 305 field.

This note is generally used in addition to, not in lieu of, the 5-- related access point fields in records for the related access points. The authorized access point in the 2-- record access point field is traced as a 5-- related access point in the authority record for each access point referred to in the 305 note. If the relationship among the authorized access points is reciprocal, the authority record that carries this note also carries 5-- related entity fields for each access point referred to in the note. If the note does not refer directly to other authorized access points but only gives examples, then there will be no corresponding access points. The example access points should be cited in the field 825 in the authority record for each access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
305	TEXTUAL SEE ALSO REFERENCE NOTE	R	O
a	Instruction Phrase	R	MA
b	Access Point Referred to	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Note
	0	Note concerns name or title use of access point
	1	Note concerns subject use of access point
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Instruction Phrase

See also reference instruction phrase.

This subfield must be present if the field is used. Repeatable.

\$b Access Point Referred to

Related access point to be searched under in the catalogue.

Transcribe the access point according to the rules in use by the agency, including any required punctuation. Repeatable for each access point referred to.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
Record 1 (Authority record)
210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Social Services
300 0# \$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0# \$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1# \$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bSocial Services, Dept. of
510 01\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Human Resources
510 01\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Income Maintenance
Record 2 (Authority record)
210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Income Maintenance
300 0# \$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0# \$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1# \$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bIncome Maintenance, Dept. of
510 01\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Social Services
510 01\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Human Resources
Record 3 (Authority record)
210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Human Resources
300 0# \$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0# \$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1# \$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bHuman Resources, Dept. of
510 01\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Social Services
510 01\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. Of Income Maintenance
EX 2
(Authority record)
200 #1\$aPage,\$bH.A.

305 0# \$a For works of this author written under his real name, see also \$b Japp, Alexander H.
305 0# \$a For works written under another pseudonym, see also \$b Gray, E. Condor.
500 #1\$z0 \$a Japp, \$b Alexander H.
500 #1\$z0 \$a Gray \$e E. Condor
EX 3
Record 1 (Authority record)
250 ## \$a Collectors and collecting
305 ## \$a See also subdivisions \$b Collectors and collecting \$a and \$b Collection and preservation \$a under names of objects collected, e.g., \$b Postage stamps--Collectors and collecting, \$b Zoological specimens--Collection and preservation.
Note: This note gives information and includes examples but does not point to other specific authorized access points, thus there are no 5-- related access point fields in records for the access points given as examples. Those records should contain an 825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE that cites this record.
Record 2 (Authority record)
250 ## \$a Postage stamps
825 1# \$a Example under Collectors and collecting.
EX 4
Record 1 (Authority record)
152 ## \$a RCR
210 02 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
305 0# \$a С 1951 по 1999 гг. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Советская Башкирия”, газета (Уфа)
305 0# \$a С 1999 по 2001 гг. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Известия Башкирии”, газета (Уфа)
305 0# \$a С 2001 г. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Республика Башкортостан”, газета (Уфа)
410 02\$z \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Власть труда≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5b0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5b0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5b0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
Record 2 (Authority record)
152 ## \$a RCR
210 02 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
305 0# \$a До 1951 г. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Красная Башкирия”, газета (Уфа)
305 0# \$a С 1999 по 2001 гг. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Известия Башкирии”, газета (Уфа)
305 0# \$a С 2001 г. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Республика Башкортостан”, газета (Уфа)
510 02 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5b0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5b0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
Record 3 (Authority record)
152 ## \$a RCR
210 02 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
305 0# \$a До 1951 г. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Красная Башкирия”, газета (Уфа)
305 0# \$a С 1951 по 1999 гг. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Советская Башкирия”, газета (Уфа)
305 0# \$a С 2001 г. См. В каталоге: \$b ”Республика Башкортостан”, газета (Уфа)
510 02\$5b0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5a0 \$a ≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
Record 4 (Authority record)
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
305 0#\$aДо 1951 г. См. В каталоге:\$b”Красная Башкирия”, газета (Уфа)
305 0#\$aС 1951 по 1999 гг. См. В каталоге:\$b”Советская Башкирия”, газета (Уфа)
305 0#\$aС 1999 по 2001 гг. См. В каталоге:\$b”Известия Башкирии”, газета (Уфа)
410 02\$5z\$aРеспубликанская общественно-политическая газета “Республика Башкортостан”\$cУфа
510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа
EX 5
Record 1
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aУлицы
305 1#\$aЛитературу об улицах отдельных городов см. Также под назв. Соответствующего города с подзаголовком – Улицы, например\$bМосква, город – Улицы
Record 2
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
215 ##\$aМосква, город\$xУлицы\$xИстория
825 ##\$aИспользуется как пример в записи: Улицы
EX 6
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
280 ##\$aЭнциклопедии
300 1#\$aСправочное издание, содержащее в обобщенном виде основные сведения по одной или всем отраслям знаний и практической деятельности, изложенные в виде кратких статей, расположенных в алфавитном или систематическом порядке
305 1#\$aСм. Также под названием отдельных предметов с подзаголовком “Энциклопедии”, например:\$bТехника – Энциклопедии

History

1994	Text errata.
2017	Text errata: Examples misprints.

310 TEXTUAL SEE REFERENCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Explanatory text and the access point referred to that are used in a reference record when an adequate see reference cannot be constructed solely from the content of one or more 4-- variant access point field(s).

The variant form of name referred from is the 2-- record access point of the reference record. Each access point referred to and the “see” (or similar) instruction are given in a 310 field. The access point of the 2-- field of the reference record is traced as a 4-- variant access point field in the authority record for each access point referred to, unless the note gives only examples, in which case there are no 4-- variant access point fields but the field 825 is used in the authority record for each access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
310	TEXTUAL SEE REFERENCE NOTE	R	O
a	Instruction Phrase	R	MA
b	Access Point Referred to	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Note
	0	Note concerns name or title use of access point
	1	Note concerns subject use of access point
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Instruction Phrase

See reference instruction phrase.

This subfield must be present if the field is used. Repeatable.

\$b Access Point Referred to

Authorized access point to be searched under in the catalogue.

Transcribe the access point according to the rules in use by the agency, including any required punctuation. Repeatable for each access point referred to.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
Record 1 (Reference record)

001 82-0062483
200 #1\$aMahfouz,\$bNaguib
310 0#\$aSearch under\$bMa.hfūz, Najīb, 1882-\$bMa.hfūuz, Najīb,\$f1912-
Record 2 (Authority record)
001 81-000236
200 #1\$aMa.hfūz,\$bNajīb,\$f1882-
400 #1\$382-0062483\$5 0\$aMahfouz,\$bNaguib
Record 3 (Authority record)
001 80-004964
200 #1\$aMa.hfūz,\$bNajīb,\$f1912-
400 #1\$382-0062483\$5 0\$aMahfouz,\$bNaguib
EX 2
Record Label, character position 6 = y (reference record)
250 ##\$aTravel regulations
310 1#\$aSee subdivision\$bOfficials and employees--Travel regulations\$aunder countries, government departments, cities, etc.; and subdivision\$bTravel regulations\$aunder special categories of officials, e.g.,\$bJudges--Travel regulations
EX 3
200 #1\$aЖемчужников\$bА. М.\$gАлександр Михайлович
310 0#\$aПубликовался только в составе коллективного псевдонима:\$bКозьма Прутков

History

1994	Text errata.

320 GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Note in a general explanatory record that provides explanatory information to assist in searching or filing.

The word or phrase referred from is given in the 2-- field and the explanatory information is given in a 320 field.

The reference is not traced on any authority record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
320	GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE	NR	O
a	General Explanatory Reference Note	R	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a General Explanatory Reference Note

Text of the explanatory note.

Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
Record Label, character position 6 = z (general explanatory record)
200 #0\$aDe la
320 ##\$aFor names beginning with a prefix, search under the prefix (under each element if the prefix is made up of multiple words) as well as under the name following the prefix.
EX 2
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aВоенные уставы и наставления
320 ##\$aДокументы об Общевоинских уставах отдельных стран см. Под названием страны, например: Российская Федерация. Военные уставы и наставления

327 CONTENTS NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Note that describes the content of a work or an expression.

It can be used for any case where the content needs to be described at the work or expression level, including the case of an aggregating expression.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM.

Repeatable only for structured notes (ind. 2 = 1) using more than one level of description.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
327	CONTENTS NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	R	O
b	Title of Level 1 Subdivision	R	O
c	Title of Level 2 Subdivision	R	O
d	Title of Level 3 Subdivision	R	O
e	Title of Level 4 Subdivision	R	O
f	Title of Level 5 Subdivision	R	O
g	Title of Level 6 Subdivision	R	O
h	Title of Level 7 Subdivision	R	O
i	Title of Level 8 Subdivision	R	O
z	Other Information Concerning a Subdivision	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Completeness Indicator
	#	Undetermined
	0	Incomplete contents
	1	Complete contents
	2	Partial contents
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Unstructured note
	1	Structured note

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Completeness Indicator

Specifies the level of completeness of recording the content.

Value #: Undetermined

Use in the case of a structured field that is repeated.

Value 0: Incomplete contents

Content information is not fully available to be recorded. (EX [4](#))

Value 1: Complete contents

Content is fully recorded. (EX [1](#), [2](#))

Value 2: Partial contents

Only selected content is recorded. (EX [3](#), [5](#))

Indicator 2: Structure Indicator

This indicator specifies whether or not the field is structured.

Subfields Description**\$a Text of Note**

Repeatable.

\$b Title of Level 1 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$c Title of Level 2 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$d Title of Level 3 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$e Title of Level 4 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$f Title of Level 5 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$g Title of Level 6 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$h Title of Level 7 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$i Title of Level 8 Subdivision

Repeatable.

\$z Other Information Concerning a Subdivision

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The expressions or works that are embodied by an aggregate should be entered in this field in a separate occurrence of subfield \$a. The content of the data elements is following the practices of the cataloguing agencies, but generally, the access point form is recommended (EX [1](#)).

When the contents note is *complete* (Indicator 1 = 1), the term “*Contents*: “ or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically as a print constant when the contents note is output (EX [1](#), [2](#)).

When the contents note is *not complete* (Indicator 1 = 0), the phrase “*Incomplete contents:*” or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically as a print constant when the contents note is output (EX 4).

When the contents note is *partial* the appropriate introductory text, which may take several different forms, must be entered manually (3, 5).

When the contents note is unstructured (Indicator 2 = #), the full text of the contents note is entered in subfield \$a, repeated as necessary (EX 1, 2), using punctuation as necessary and no other subfields are used.

When the contents note is structured (Indicator 2 = 1), \$a is not used but any other subfields are used (EX 6, 7).

If multiple levels of description are necessary, create one field for each first level subdivision (\$b) and necessary subsequent subdivisions (EX 7).

Related Fields

531, 532, 541, 542 RELATED ACCESS POINT – WORK OR EXPRESSION	Field 327 is used when aggregated expressions or component parts of a work are not described as separate instances by the cataloguing agency. Therefore, a relationship can not be established in fields 531, 532, 541 or 542.

Examples

EX 1
327 1#\$aGeorges Simenon. Le train de Venise. Text. English (Hamilton)\$aGeorges Simenon. Maigret voyage. Text. English (Hamilton)\$aGeorges Simenon. Les innocents. Text. English (Ellenbogen)
The expression described contains translations from three French novels by George Simenon. Within the contents note, aggregated expressions are given in their authorized access point form, according to local instructions on expression access points.
EX 2
327 1#\$aThe Venice train;\$aMaigret and the millionaires;\$aThe innocents.
A contents note for the expression above in a less full form. English titles are preferred, and the access point form is not used.
EX 3
327 2#\$aIncludes the text of The Theft Act 1968 and The Theft Act 1978
An expression of a legal work which contains, in addition to the author's commentary, the full texts of two UK statutes.
EX 4
327 0#\$av. 2. 987-1328\$av. 3. 1328-1589
A multi-volume work on the history of France, of which only v. 2 & 3 are available for description. The following note could be generated from this field: 'Incomplete contents: v. 2. 987-1328. – v. 3. 1328-1589'
EX 5
327 2#\$aSelected contents: Country report on retrospective cataloguing : Denmark / Niels Ivan Boserup, Erland Kolding Nielsen. – Norway : status report on retrospective cataloguing / Hans M. Fagerli. – Retrospective bibliography : the eighteenth century
EX 6

327 #1\$bIntroduction\$bPrologue\$bCommunauté villageoise et peuple ancien\$bLa fin d'un monde\$bLe nouveau monde\$bLe village bariolé\$bGrandir et vieillir à Cadenet\$bEpilogue
Table of contents of the work <i>La fin du village</i> by Jean-Pierre Le Goff. Only first level subdivisions (\$b) are detailed by the cataloguing agency.
EX 7
327 #1\$bL'étrange défaite\$cI.Présentation du témoin\$cII.La déposition d'un vaincu\$cIII.Examen de conscience d'un Français
327 #1\$bLe testament de Marc Bloch
327 #1\$bEcrits clandestins\$cI. Pourquoi je suis républicain\$cII. L'alimentation humaine et les échanges internationaux [...]
327 #1\$bAnnexes\$cI. Rapport sur les ravitaillements de la 1ère armée\$cII. Les citations militaires de Marc Bloch 1915-1940 [...]
Table of contents of the work <i>L'étrange défaite</i> by Marc Bloch. First and second level subdivisions are detailed by the cataloguing agency in a structured way. Field is repeated in order to better describe the two-level subdivisions in relation to each other.
EX 8
327 #1\$a Sonate op. 49 Nr. 1\$aSonate op. 49 Nr. 2\$aSonate op. 107 \$aTarantella WoO II/12\$aAlbumblatt : WoO II/13
A content note for the expression above in a less full form, which is a compilation of works by one person (score). The access point form is not used.
EX 9
327 1# \$aReger, Max (1873-1916). Sonatas. Clarinet, piano. No. 1, op. 49, no. 1. Ab major\$aReger, Max (1873-1916). Sonatas. Clarinet, piano. No. 2, op. 49, no. 2. F# minor\$aReger, Max (1873-1916). Sonatas. Clarinet, piano. No. 3, op. 107. Bb major\$aReger, Max (1873-1916). Tarantella. Clarinet. Piano. G minor\$a Reger, Max (1873-1916). Albumblatt. Clarinet, piano.
The expression described contains works expressed in musical notation for clarinet and piano. Within the contents note, aggregated expressions are given in their authorized access point form, according to UNIMARC recommendation on expression access points.

History

2024	New field.

330 GENERAL SCOPE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Note that describes the scope of the access point in the 2-- fields.

This field is used in an authority record.

Scope information may give a precise definition of a potentially ambiguous term, contrasting information about similar terms, notices to users, etc.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
330	GENERAL SCOPE NOTE	R	O
a	General Scope Note	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Note
	0	Note concerns name or title use of access point
	1	Note concerns subject use of access point
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a General Scope Note

Text of the scope note.

Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616
330 l#\$aThe subdivisions provided under this access point represent for the greater part standard subdivisions usable under any literary author access point and do not necessarily pertain to Shakespeare.
EX 2
Record 1
250 ##\$aFire-damp
330 1#\$aHere are entered works on methane as a combustible gas formed in coal mines. Works on methane present in a stratum of coal are entered under Coalbed methane.

Record 2
250 ##\$aCoalbed methane
825 1#\$aCited under Fire-damp
EX 3
220 ##\$aРомановы\$ссемья
330 ##\$aПод данной рубрикой собираются материалы, повествующие о жизни и деятельности лиц, связанных родственными узами с династией Романовых
EX 4
250 ##\$aДети\$xРазвитие внимания
330 ##\$aПод данной ПР собираются документы о развитии внимания у детей всех возрастов

History

1994	Text errata.

333 USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Information about the users or intended audience of the work or an expression of a work.

Use for an unstructured note on intended audience present in coded form in field 125.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
333	USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Text of Note

The text of users/intended audience note.

Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
333 ##\$aFor remedial reading programmes
A note made in the record for a set of flash cards.
EX 2
333 ##\$aMPAA rating: R
A note made in the record for a motion picture which has been given a restricted rating.
EX 3
333 ##\$aProgram designed for geographers, planners, geologists, meteorologists, and others who have a professional interest in analyzing spatial data
A note made in the record for a software.
EX 4
333 ##\$a”Catholic paper for the Slovaks in Cleveland, Ohio, and vicinity”
A note, quoted from the resource (a periodical).

Related Fields

125 CODED DATA FIELD: INTENDED AUDIENCE	This field contains a coded data for the intended audience of a work or expression.

History

2012	New field.
2020	Editorial changes. Added section Related fields. Updates 2020.
2022	Added control subfields \$6 and \$7.

334 AWARDS NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Information on awards or prizes associated with the entity identified in block 2-- (agents, works, expressions).

Repeatable if awards or prizes are intended to be displayed separately.

Occurrence & Subfields

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
334	AWARDS NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O
b	Name of Award	NR	O
c	Year of Award	NR	O
d	Country of Award	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Unstructured note
	1	Structured note

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Structure Indicator

Specifies whether the field is structured.

Value #: Unstructured note

All information is recorded in a single occurrence of subfield \$a.

Value 1: Structured note

Information is recorded as necessary in subfields other than \$a.

Subfields Description

\$a Text of Note

The complete text of an unstructured note.

Subfield \$a should be present if Indicator 2 is blank (#). Not repeatable.

\$b Name of Award

The name of the award.

Not repeatable.

\$c Year of Award

Year in which the award was granted.

The year is entered in the form YYYY. Not repeatable.

\$d Country of Award

Code for the country where the award is granted.

For country codes use ISO 3166-1, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format Manual, Appendix A.

Optional. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield \$u may therefore be used to link to a site describing the award or prize. Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
334 AWARDS NOTE	This field contains information on awards or prizes associated with the described material. This field applies to the manifestation or non IFLA LRM cataloguing.

Examples

EX 1
Single subfield method
334 ##\$aCésar du meilleur film documentaire 2009
Prize awarded to the film <i>Les plages d'Agnès</i> (work), directed by Agnès Varda.
EX 2
Multiple subfields method
334 #1\$bBooker Prize\$c2019\$dGB
Prize awarded to both novels (works) <i>The Testaments</i> by Margaret Atwood and <i>Girl, Woman, Other</i> by Bernardine Evaristo. The same field may appear in two different work records.
EX 3
Multiple subfields method
334 #1\$bPrix Russophonie\$c2019\$dFR
Award of the best literary translation from Russian to French, granted to Christine Zeytounian-Beloüs for <i>L'imparfait du temps passé</i> in 2019. This field appears in the expression record corresponding to the French translation of work Прошедшее время несовершенного вида by Grisha Bruskin.
EX 4
Single subfield method
334 ##\$aInternational Classical Music Awards 2019\$uhttps://www.icma-info.com/winners-2019/

An award was granted to Berliner Barock Solisten and Frank Peter Zimmermann for their interpretation of Violin Concertos BWV 1041, 1042, 1052 by Johann Sebastian Bach. This field appears in an expression record. It uses subfield \$a as this award is not related to a country, therefore the multiple subfields method cannot be used.

EX 5

Single subfield method

334 ##\$aPrix nobel de physique 1963

Note on the Nobel prize in Physics granted to Maria Goeppert-Mayer. This field appears in a record for personal name.

History

2020	New field.
2022	Added control subfields \$6 and \$7.
2024	Text edit.

340 BIOGRAPHICAL AND ACTIVITY NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Essential biographical or historical details and/or activity information about the entity defined in the 2-- fields.

This field is used in an authority or a reference record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
340	BIOGRAPHICAL AND ACTIVITY NOTE	R	O
a	Biographical Note	NR	MA
b	Activity Note	NR	O
c	Occupation/Profession	R	O
d	Function/Field of Activity	R	O
e	Term of Rank, Honour, or Office	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
p	Affiliation/Address	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Biographical Note

Text of the biographical or historical note.

Not repeatable.

\$b Activity Note

A free text activity note.

Not repeatable.

\$c Occupation/Profession

A term specifies the profession, business, or avocation of an individual.

If a controlled vocabulary is used, subfield \$2 should follow. Repeatable.

\$d Function/Field of Activity

A term specifies the function, activity, organizational processes of the person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$e Term of Rank, Honour, or Office

A term specifying title, rank, honour, or office of a person or a family (EX 12).

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates or period of engagement in a field of endeavour, or work in a profession or occupation, or field of business.

Not repeatable.

\$p Affiliation/Address

Name of a group, e.g., an institution, and/or place with which the person, corporate body, family etc. is affiliated or was affiliated through employment, membership, cultural identity, residence, etc.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The contents of the field will be determined by the provisions of the cataloguing rules used by the cataloguing agency.

If the entity has more than one field of occupation or activity/affiliation/profession at a time subfields \$c, \$d, \$p are repeated. If these vary over time, the field is repeated. If terms from different source vocabularies are used the field is repeated.

Related Fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER
640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY

Examples

EX 1
102 ##\$aUS\$aDE
152 ##\$aAACR2
200 #1\$aArendt\$bHannah\$f1906-1975
340 ##\$aGerman by birth. Naturalized American in 1951\$bpolitical theorist
EX 2
120 ##\$aca
200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJan,\$f1926-
340 ##\$a James Humphry Morris, 10-2-26; had a sex change operation, took new name "Jan Morris"; intends to complete a trilogy using James Morris, will publish other future books as Jan Morris
500 #1\$aMorris,\$bJames,\$f1926-

EX 3
100 ##\$a19930723frey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aund
102 ##\$aIT
120 ##\$aba
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$8freita\$aNiccolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15..-160.?\$cimprimeur-libraire
300 0#\$aA publié également sous la raison: “Ad signum Seminantis” (“al segno del Seminante”) entre 1572 et 1575
300 0#\$aEn 1559-1560 travaille en association avec son frère Cornelio Niccolini da Sabbio
340 ##\$aVenezia, 1557-1605? In contrada San Giulian. Al segno del Seminante
340 ##\$aDominus illuminatio mea et salus mea, quem timebo? Prudentia negocium non Fortuna ducat. Nisi qui legitime certaverit
EX 4
100 ##\$a 19831125frey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aara\$aFRE
102 ##\$aZZ
150 ##\$af
152 ##\$aAFNOR
210 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aInstitut du monde arabe
300 0#\$aCréé en commun avec les États arabes et la République française. Acte de fondation signé le 28-2-1980. Décret portant reconnaissance d'utilité publique du 14-10-1980
340 ##\$p23 quai Saint-Bernard, 75005 Paris. Tel. 46.34.25.25 (Standard) et 40.51.38.38 (Informations)
EX 5
216 ##\$aColumbia\$cmarque américaine
340 ##\$aDates d'existence : 1890-
340 ##\$aInitialement crée aux États-Unis, elle s'implante en Angleterre en 1928. En 1928, cette filiale connue sous le nom de British Columbia, se sépare de la maison mère américaine pour fonder EMI (Electrical Music Industries) en 1930 en association avec Gramophone. EMI déclare le label Columbia à la Chambre de commerce de Londres en privant la maison mère américaine du droit d'utiliser ce label. En 1945, la maison mère américaine Columbia crée le label CBS pour les exportations vers l'Europe et continue parallèlement à publier sous le label Columbia aux Etats-Unis
EX 6
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #0\$aАввакум\$cЧестной, Дмитрий Семенович, архим.\$f1804-1866
340 ##\$bВостоковед, дипломат, переводчик\$aIПринимал участие в кругосветном плавании на фрегате “Паллада” в составе экспедиции Е.В. Путятина. В качестве миссионера долгое время жил в Китае. Данные о рождении противоречивы. Похоронен на кладбище Александро-Невской лавры в Петербурге.
EX 7
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aБакунин\$bА. И.\$f1872-1968\$gАнтон Игнатьевич
340 ##\$bПрактик сыскного дела, основоположник русской научной криминалистики. Автор книг “Психология преступника...”, “Теория вероятности преступления”, “Пособие по криминалистике...” и др.\$aIПосле 1917 года – в эмиграции. Умер в Англии.

EX 8
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aAvicenne\$f0980-1037
340 ##\$cPhilosophe\$cMédecin
EX 9
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aReagan\$bRonald\$f1911-2004
340 ##\$cActeur\$f1937-1964
340 ##\$dGouverneur de Californie\$f1967-1974
340 ##\$dPrésident des États-Unis\$f1981-1988
EX 10
200 #1\$aSaint-Exupéry\$bAntoine de\$f 1900-1944
340 ##\$cNovelists\$2lcsh\$cEssayists\$2lcsh\$cAir pilots\$2lcsh
EX 11
152 ##\$RCR
200 #1\$aПушкин\$bА. С.\$f1799-1837\$gАлександр Сергеевич
340 ##\$dПоэзия русская\$2nlr_sh
EX 12
200 #0\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aPhilippe\$d III\$f1396-1467\$cduc de Bourgogne
340 ##\$eDuc de Bourgogne (1419-1467)\$eComte de Flandre, d'Artois et de Bourgogne (1419-1467) \$eDuc de Brabant et de Limbourg (1430-1467)\$eComte de Hollande, Zélande et de Hainaut (1433-1467)\$eDuc de Luxembourg (1444-1467)

History

2001	New field.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2009	New paragraphs: History: According to the 2nd edition, definition of this field restricted its use only to personal and family names although examples showed its use also for corporate body names and trademarks. The field definition is now extended to also include these entities. To record biography and activity note for printer/publisher use the new 341 Activity Note Pertaining to Printer/Publisher field. Note that the 340 fields in Example 3 would now be coded as 341.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$b Activity note.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$p Affiliation/Address.
2016	Update.
2024	New \$e.

341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER

Field Definition and Scope

Specific data on place, dates of activities, sign and the address of the printer and/or publisher.

Used especially for antiquarian printer/publisher in an authority or reference record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
341	ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER	R	O
a	Place of Activity	NR	O
b	Dates of Activity	NR	O
c	Address	R	O
d	Sign	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Place of Activity

Place where the printer/publisher carries on his activity.

Not repeatable.

\$b Dates of Activity

Dates of activity of the printer/publisher referring to the place.

Not repeatable.

\$c Address

Address of printer/publisher referring to the place as it appears on the publication.

Repeatable.

\$d Sign

Sign attributed to the house/workshop of the printer/publisher as appears on the publication.

Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The contents of the field will be determined by the provisions of the cataloguing rules used by the cataloguing agency.

Related Fields

340 BIOGRAPHICAL AND ACTIVITY NOTE
640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY

Examples

EX 1
210 00\$aSermartelli,\$gBartolomeo\$c<1.>
341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1553-1591\$cin la via nuova da San Giuliano presso al Castello\$cpresso il Vescovado\$dTestuggine
##\$aVenezia\$b1574
EX 2
210 00\$aBonetti,\$gLuca
341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1569
341 ##\$aSiena\$b1571-1609\$cAlla loggia del Papa
EX 3
210 00\$aMeietti,\$gPaolo
341 ##\$aPadova\$b1578-1599\$cPorteghi alti in contrada San Lorenzo\$dDue Galli
341 ##\$aBologna\$b1590
341 ##\$aVenezia\$b1577-1600
341 ##\$aVicenza\$b1588-1595
EX 4
200 #1\$aChevalier\$bAndré\$f1660?-1747
300 0#\$aDevise(s) : Legent haec nostra nepotes
340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire ; imprimeur ordinaire du Roi [de France] (et du conseil provincial de Luxembourg) (1686-1698) ; de la ville (et du collège de la Compagnie de Jésus) ; de Sa Majesté Impériale et Catholique (1721-1740) ; de Sa Majesté la Reine de Hongrie et de Bohême (1741-1747)\$aNatif de Bourg-en-Bresse, il fait son apprentissage chez Jean Antoine, à Metz, où il est reçu maître le 24 mai 1685. Il s'établit à Luxembourg en juin 1686 à l'invitation de l'intendant français d'occupation et sous garantie d'exclusivité pour 20 ans. À la suite de l'évacuation de Luxembourg par les troupes françaises (janv. 1698), il perd son monopole puis ses titres (décret impérial du 16 mai 1716), mais un privilège d'imprimeur impérial lui est octroyé par décret du 15 janv. 1721. Conserve, jusqu'en 1697 au moins, une boutique de libraire à Metz. Publie, à partir de 1704, la "Clef du cabinet des princes de l'Europe" sous le pseudonyme de "Jacques Le Sincère, à l'enseigne de la Vérité" et sans indication de lieu. Âgé de 87 ans lors de son décès
341 ##\$aMetz\$b1685-1686
341 ##\$aLuxembourg\$b1686-1747\$cAu carré de (ou : Dans) la rue Neuve (, proche les Révérends pères jésuites)\$cPlace Neuve\$cPrès la place d'Armes
640 1#\$dBourg-en-Bresse\$f#1660####?
640 2#\$dLuxembourg\$f#17470410#
640 3#\$dMetz\$f#16850524#\$i#1686#####

640 3# \$dLuxembourg\$f#168606#### \$i#1747#####
EX 5
200 #1 \$aJore\$bClaude\$f1668-1736
340 ## \$aImprimeur-libraire ; imprimeur de l'archevêque et du clergé (1728)\$aFils de Claude I Jore. Reçu maître le 10 juin 1683, il ne s'établit à Rouen qu'en 1699, après avoir travaillé à Paris à partir de 1686. Banni pour 9 ans du ressort du parlement de Paris par sentence du Châtelet du 19 nov. 1698. Embastillé pour impressions prohibées en sept. 1712, déchu de la maîtrise par lettre de cachet du 1er déc. 1712. Continue néanmoins à exercer dans son propre atelier sous le nom de Jean-Robert Viret. À nouveau embastillé suite à une perquisition du 29 mars 1714, il ne sera élargi que le 13 sept. 1715 et rétabli dans sa maîtrise en 1716\$aAssocié à son fils Claude-François Jore à partir de 1725 environ
341 ## \$aRouen\$b1699-1736\$cRue aux Juifs (, près le Palais)\$cAu haut des degrés du Palais\$cDerrière le Palais, proche la Poterne\$cDans la cour du Palais et à côté de l'hôtel du premier président\$dAux Armes de monseigneur le (ou : du) premier président
640 1# \$f#16680410#
640 2# \$f#17360330#
640 3# \$dRouen\$f#1699##### \$i#1736#####
400 #1 \$aJores\$bClaude\$f1668-1736
400 #1 \$aJorre\$bClaude\$f1668-1736
700 #1 \$aJore\$bClaude\$dII
EX 6
200 #1 \$aDu Fossé\$bNicolas\$f1569-1645
300 0# \$aDevise(s) : Petit à petit
340 ## \$aImprimeur-libraire\$aÂgé de 25 ans en déc. 1594\$aÀ partir de 1607, associé à ses beaux-frères Rolin Thierry et Pierre II Chevalier, parfois sous la raison : "Officina Tri-adelphorum" ou "Typographia Tri-adelphorum" et avec pour devise : "Quam bonum et quam jucundum sperare fratres in unum"
341 ## \$aParis\$b1586-1629?\$cRue Saint-Jean-de-Beauvais\$cRue Saint-Jacques\$cRue Saint-Jean-de-Latran\$dAu Vase d'or
640 1# \$f#1569#####
640 2# \$f#1645#####
640 3# \$dParis\$f#1586##### \$i#1629#####?
EX 7
200 #1 \$aRoux\$bPierre\$f15..-1586?
300 0# \$aDevise(s) : Coelo tutissima basis. – Nul ne s'y frote. Patere aut abstinere
340 ## \$aImprimeur-libraire ; à Avignon, imprimeur de l'archevêché (1564)\$aOriginaire de Lyon. Lors de son séjour à Aix, son atelier d'Avignon continue à fonctionner. Veuve attestée, à Lyon, en mars 1586
341 ## \$aAvignon\$b1557-1586\$dÀ l'enseigne de la Sphère
341 ## \$aAix-en-Provence\$b1574-1577\$dAu devant de la grande église Saint-Sauveur
640 1# \$dLyon\$f#15#####
640 2# \$dLyon\$f#1586#####?
640 3# \$dAvignon\$f#1557##### \$i#1586#####
640 3# \$dAix-en-Provence\$f#1574##### \$i#1577#####
EX 8
200 #1 \$aCouterot\$bJean\$f1636?-1714?
340 ## \$aLibraire\$aFrère puîné d'Edme I Couterot. Natif des Ormes-sur-Voulzie (Seine-et-Marne). Reçu apprenti en mai 1650 chez son frère Edme I Couterot. Reçu imprimeur-libraire en mars 1664, il

n'a jamais exercé l'imprimerie. Vend son fonds en 1693. Dit âgé de 65 ans lors de l'enquête de nov. 1701. Mort avant 1714

341 ##\$aParis\$b1664-1693\$cRue Saint-Jacques\$cAu Palais, dans la grande salle, au pilier vis-à-vis des degrés de la cour des Aides\$dAu Petit Jésus\$dÀ l'Image Saint Pierre\$dÀ la Fleur de lys\$dAux Cigognes

640 1#\$cSeine-et-Marne\$dOrmes-sur-Voulzie\$f#1636####?

640 2#\$f#1714####?

640 3#\$dParis\$f#1664#####\$i#1693#####

History

2009	New field.

356 GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Geographical details about the entity recorded in the 215 field.

This field is used in authority or a reference record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
356	GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE	R	O
a	Geographical Note	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Geographical Note

Text of the geographical note.

Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
215 ##\$aПа-де-Кале, пролив
415 ##\$aДуврский пролив
356 ##\$aМежду островом Великобритания и материковой частью Европы

History

2001	New field.

370 NOTE ON WORK

Field Definition and Scope

Information pertaining to the work, namely a specific character of the primary content of a work, a chronological or geographic coverage of the content of a work and a summary of information about the history of a work, or information about works that are added to the primary content of work.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
370	NOTE ON WORK	NR	O
a	Nature of Content	R	O
b	Coverage of Content	R	O
c	Historical Information	R	O
d	Additional Content	R	O
f	Note on Other Attributes of Work	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Nature of Content

Note on the primary content of a work.

It may be used to complete information on the attribute Form of Work. (EX [4](#), [5](#), [6](#), [10](#))

Repeatable.

\$b Coverage of Content

Note on the chronological and/or geographical coverage of content of a work.

It may be used to give precisions about elements recorded in other fields, such as coordinates, specific geographical or chronological aspects of subject access points, etc. (EX [6](#), [7](#), [8](#), [9](#))

Repeatable.

\$c Historical Information

Note on events relative to the history of the work, such as the context of its creation, successive issuing models, agents associated to the work (dubious attribution of authorship, dedicatees, sponsoring agents, etc.).

It can also be used to give precisions about elements recorded in other fields, such as variant titles, dates, places, etc. Repeatable. (EX [1](#), [2](#), [3](#), [10](#))

\$d Additional Content

Contains a note on augmentations to the main content of a work, such as bibliographies, indexes, glossaries, illustrations, etc. Repeatable. (EX [11](#))

This subfield is used to record a relationship between the work described and its augmentations, as far as these augmentations are indissociable from the original work. It should be repeated for each distinct augmentation of the primary work.

\$f Note on Other Attributes of Work

Note on attributes of work or a title different from those specified in subfields \$a-\$c.

It may be used to complete information provided elsewhere in structured form in an authority record. Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE
240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE
440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE
740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1
241 #1\$3FRBNF11900118\$aDickens, Charles (11812-1870)\$tThe Pickwick papers
370 ##\$cOriginally written as a serial and published in 19 issues over 20 months from March 1836 to October 1837. There was no issue in May 1837 as Dickens was in mourning for his sister-in-law
EX 2
241 #1\$3FRBNF16248697\$aBryant, Brantley L. (1977-....)\$tGeoffrey Chaucer hath a blog
370 ##\$cBlog created by Middle Ages specialist Brantley L. Bryant, who takes the name of Geoffrey Chaucer (1340?-1400)
EX 3
241 #1\$3FRBNF11890041\$aBalzac, Honoré de (1799-1850)\$tLe curé de village
370 ##\$cRoman d'abord paru dans "La presse", en feuilleton (janvier-août 1839), puis en volume (1841) avant d'être intégré à "La comédie humaine" dans les "Scènes de la vie de campagne" (tome XIII, 1846) dans la partie intitulée "Études de mœurs"
EX 4
241 #1\$3FRBNF13921393\$aRoché, Jean-Claude (1931-....)\$tOiseaux virtuoses
370 ##\$aField recording of birdsong

EX 5
241 #1\$3FRBNF12220832\$aIsouard, Nicolò (177.-1818)\$tAladin ou La lampe merveilleuse
370 ##\$aOpéra-féerie en 5 actes
EX 6
241 #1\$aIstituto idrografico della marina (Italia)\$tAtlante climatologico del Mediterraneo
370 ##\$aMedie mensili di temperatura, salinità, densità\$bAnni 1950-2005
EX 7
241 #1\$3FRBNF12072570\$aFlodoard de Reims (0894?-0966)\$tAnnales
372 ##\$bA chronicle covering the period from 919 to 966. One part covering the period from 877 to 919 is lost
EX 8
241 #1\$3FRBNF11887103\$aNerval, Gérard de (1808-1855)\$tVoyage en Orient
370 ##\$bRécit du voyage fait par l'auteur en 1843: Grèce, Égypte, Liban, Turquie
EX 9
231 ##\$3FRBNF16923052\$aPaths of glory\$cfilm
370 ##\$bL'action se déroule pendant la Première Guerre mondiale\$cInspiré du livre de même titre de Humphrey Cobb paru en 1935\$cSortie en salle 18 ans après la réalisation pour raison de censure
EX 10
240 ##\$3FRBNF12156216\$aThéopompe\$f0378?-0323? Av. J.-C.\$tHistoires Philippiques
370 ##\$aHistoire de Philippe de Macédoine et histoire universelle de la Grèce en 58 livres\$bCouvre la période de 362 à la mort de Philippe de Macédoine en 336\$cTexte connu uniquement par des fragments
EX 11
241 #1\$aPalma, Paola (1971-....), Vezyroglou, Dimitri (1970-....)\$t"Nosferatu le vampire"
370 ##\$dBibliographie\$dWebographie\$dFilmographie\$dGlossaire
EX 12
241 #1\$aOdumakin, Israel\$t100 hip-hop facts (1973-2000)
370 ##\$dDiscography
EX 13
241 #1\$aSessions, Roger, 1896-1985\$tOrchestra music\$jSelections
370 ##\$dBibliography\$dDiscography

History

2019	New field.
2020	New subfield \$f.
2022	Added control subfields \$6 and \$7.
2024	New subfield \$d. and ex. 11-13.

371 NOTE ON EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

Information on the attributes of the expression, namely a specific character of the sound and colour content, the form of notation, capture, the medium of performance, and others.

This field can only be used at the expression level.

This field is not repeatable. If several notes of the same kind need to be recorded, subfields may be repeated.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
371	NOTE ON EXPRESSION	NR	O
a	Details on Sound Content	R	O
b	Details on Colour Content	R	O
c	Details on Form of Notation	R	O
d	Note on Capture	R	O
e	Details on Medium of Performance	R	O
f	Note on Other Attributes of Expression	R	O
g	Expression Designation	R	O
h	Note on Language	R	O
i	Note on the Content of the Aggregating Expression	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Details on Sound Content

Note on the sound content of an expression.

Repeatable. (EX. [2](#), [3](#))

\$b Details on Colour Content

Note on the colour content of an expression.

Repeatable. (EX. [1](#))

\$c Details on Form of Notation

Note on the form of notation of an expression.

Repeatable. (EX. [3](#))

\$d Note on Capture

Note on the capture of an expression.

Repeatable. (EX. [7](#))

\$e Details on Medium of Performance

Note on the medium of performance of an expression.

Repeatable. (EX. [5](#), [6](#))

\$f Note on Other Attributes of Expression

Note on attributes of expression different from those specified in subfields \$a-\$e.

Repeatable. (EX. [1](#), [2](#), [7](#))

\$g Expression Designation

Contains a note on expression designation.

It is used to provide a designation used to identify the expression. (EX [8](#))

Repeatable.

\$h Note on Language

Contains a note on the language of the expression.

It should be used to comment or give additional details on the information entered in field 101. (EX [8](#))

Repeatable.

\$i Note on the Content of the Aggregating Expression

Contains a note on the content of the aggregating expression.

It provides details on expressions that are embodied in the aggregating expression. (EX [9](#))

Repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Use for detailed notes on the expression attributes in coded form in fields [101](#), 105, 127, 146 and 147.

Related Fields

101 CODED DATA FIELD: LANGUAGE OF ENTITY
105 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF NOTATION OF EXPRESSION
127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION AND CAPTURE INFORMATION
145 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT TYPE OF EXPRESSION
146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1

147 ##\$acg#\$ce\$cz\$ca\$cf
242 #1\$3FRBNF17729594\$aGervais, Alban\$tFête des vendanges de Montmartre, le 18e fête la liberté, 5 - 9 octobre 2016\$wModèle fond bleu
371 ##\$bFond bleu, lettrage en blanc, rouge et prune\$fTirage avec logos
Details of colour content for a poster with a blue background, and lettering in three colours (white, red and purple). Note indicates that the logos of the bodies sponsoring the event announced by the poster are present in this expression is recorded in the subfield \$x.
EX 2
147 ##\$as# c\$ev
232 #1\$3<AR_ID>\$aEcologia del delitto\$cfilm\$mFrançais
371 ##\$aVersion française disponible en surround et stéréo\$fVersion remastérisée
Details of sound content for a new remastered version of a movie. The original captation was monaural, but the new French version is available with stereophonic sound or with surround sound depending on the viewer's choice.
EX 3
127 ##\$a000548\$bc
147 ##\$dd\$eb
242 #1\$3FRBNF13920354\$aTelemann, Georg Philipp (1681-1767)\$tSonates\$rFlûte à bec, basse continue\$s TWV 41 F 2\$uFa majeur\$nMusique exécutée\$wVetera et Nova
371 ##\$aEnregistrement Dolby
640 7#\$aFR\$dParis\$eCrypte de l'église des Dominicains
The recording is analog and stereophonic. It has been made in the presence of an audience at a public performance. Technical details of the recording are given in field 371, subfield \$a.
EX 4
105 ##\$b1002\$2RDAftn
145 ##\$ai\$baxxd##
145 ##\$ctct\$2rdacontent
242 #1\$3<AR_ID>\$aGounelle, Laurent (1966-....)\$t\$t≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠philosophe qui n'était pas sage\$mFrançais\$nTexte tactile
371 ##\$cBraille intégral, table française
The tactile notation used here is computing braille (value "1002" in RDA Registry Vocabulary Encoding System for Form of Tactile Notation recorded in field 105), in the unabridged version of the Braille table for the French language.
EX 5
146 1#\$ab\$b01tgu####
242 #1\$3FRBNF13911639\$aDowland, John (1563?-1626)\$tIf my complaints could passions move\$lArrangement\$Vcharango\$nMusique exécutée
371 ##\$eArrangement pour charango (guitare andine) solo
This is an arrangement of an ayre (song) for voice and lute by John Dowland for an Andean ethnic guitar. A note in 371 gives more details about the medium of performance.
EX 6
146 0#\$ab\$c01wcl####c01svc####c01svl####c01kor####
242 #1\$3FRBNF14843704\$aSeitz, Albert (1872-1937)\$tAndante cantabile\$rClarinete, orgue\$sOp. 33\$nMusique notée
371 ##\$ell existe des versions pour violon ou violoncelle et orgue

The note in field 371 indicates in textual form the possibility to substitute a violin or a cello for the clarinet, as recorded in a coded form in field 146.

EX 7

242 #1\$3FRBNF13923059\$aCavalli, Francesco (1602-1676)\$tEgisto\$nMusique exécutée\$wHirsch, Hans-Ludwig

371 ##\$dEnregistré à l'occasion de la 1ère représentation donnée en Allemagne en juin 1973, à Munich\$fLes scènes 7 et 9 sont omises

640 7#\$aDE\$dMunich\$f197306##

Field 371 gives information on the choice of a slight abridgement of the work in this performed expression in subfield \$f, and precises the occasion of the recording in subfield \$d.

EX 8

232 ##\$3FRBNF42632683\$7ba0yba0y\$8freger\$aNosferatu, eine Symphonie des Grauens\$cfilm\$IVersion restaurée\$w60mn\$o1995\$mFrançais

371 ##\$gVersion restaurée, restauration de 1995 : 60 min (24 im./s), musique de Galeshka Moravioff\$hFilm muet avec intertitres en français

Field 371 gives information on the movie version in subfield \$g and the language of the intertitles in subfield \$h.

EX 9

232 ##\$3FRBNF4019109\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aJean-Claude Gallotta, Nosferatu, ballet de l'Opéra\$cprogramme\$d2006-05\$nTexte noté. Image fixe

371 ##\$iRéunit des analyses sur l'œuvre présentée, l'argument du ballet et des notices biographiques sur les interprètes

Field 371 gives details on expressions that are embodied in the aggregate.

History

2020	New field.
2022	Text errata. Added control subfields \$6 and \$7.
2024	New subfields \$g, \$h, \$i, ex. 8-9.

378 ABSTRACT OF WORK OR EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

A brief, objective representation or in-deep analysis of content provided by the author of the work or another entity with authority.

The field may contain any kind of abstract, whether informative, indicative, critical, or evaluative on the level of work or expression.

Occurrence & Subfields

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
378	ABSTRACT OF WORK OR EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	MA
b	Creator/Provider	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
z	Language	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Text of Note

Note on the content of the abstract.

Not repeatable.

\$b Creator/Provider

Identification of the creator of abstract or source that provided the abstract.

Optional. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield \$u may therefore be used to link to a site when the abstract is online available. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$z Language

Language of the abstract. (EX [1](#))

For language codes use ISO 639-2, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format Manual, Appendix A. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The abstract may be provided by the cataloguer, the author (EX [1](#)), a data provider (EX [2](#)), a publisher (EX [3](#)), etc.

The field is not used for commercial presentations which should be recorded at the manifestation level.

If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 378 (EX [1](#)).

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)	
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)	
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)	
UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
330 SUMMARY OR ABSTRACT	In IFLA LRM-compliant entity records, this field is applicable at the manifestation level only, to record commercial abstracts found on a resource.

Examples

EX 1	
241 #1\$3FRBNF19089668X\$aDuval, Suzanne (1986-....)\$4070\$tNSB#La ≠NSE# prose poétique du roman baroque (1571-1670) : histoire d'un patron stylistique de la première modernité\$cThèse de doctorat	
378 ##\$aNotre thèse se propose de définir les traits formels permettant d'appréhender la prose poétique du roman baroque. Nous montrons que la notion de prose poétique, traditionnellement associée aux siècles de la "modernité" poétique, est envisagée à l'époque baroque en vertu de critères différents de ceux qui sont établis par la stylistique contemporaine. Nous analysons ensuite le faisceau de traits qui constitue un patron stylistique de la prose poétique au sein de notre corpus, susceptible d'être remanié et adapté à la logique spécifique de l'œuvre dans laquelle il s'inscrit. Nous montrons enfin que la prose poétique se situe au fondement d'une poétique romanesque qui allie les agréments de la poésie à ceux du "naturel" de la conversation et illustre ainsi la valeur esthétique de la prose\$bauteur\$zfre	
378 ##\$aThis study seeks to define the formal features characteristic of the poetical prose used in baroque novels. It shows that poetical prose, although traditionally considered as a form belonging to "modern" poetics, was used in the baroque age: but what the baroque age understood as poetical prose was very different from what contemporary stylistics defined as such. We then proceed to analyse the different features of poetical prose across our corpus, to identify a general pattern: this basic pattern can then be variously modified or adapted to suit the specific logic of the works in which poetical prose is used. Finally, we show that poetical prose lies at the heart of a new kind of poetics for the novel, which	

combines the beauty of poetry with the “natural” beauty of conversation, and thus ennobles prose by giving it aesthetic value.\$bauteur\$zeng

Record for a work (PHD thesis) with abstract provided by the student both in French and in English.

EX 2

241 #1\$3FRBNF12056668\$aMurail, Marie-Aude (1954-....)\$4070\$tNSB#Le #NSE# Hollandais sans peine

378 ##\$aJean-Charles a 9 ans. Il part camper avec sa famille. Cela ne l'enchant guère de faire connaissance avec son voisin hollandais, sauf quand cela tourne au jeu et qu'il enseigne à son nouvel ami une drôle de langue française de son invention.\$bElectre\$zfre

The abstract of this children's novel was provided by a commercial bibliographic data provider (Electre).

EX 3

242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the Work>\$aFavoreu, Louis (1936-2004\$tLes grandes décisions du Conseil constitutionnel\$o2018\$nTexte

378 ##\$aDepuis l'entrée en vigueur de la procédure de la question prioritaire de constitutionnalité, la jurisprudence constitutionnelle a pris une très grande importance puisque désormais le justiciable a la possibilité de faire valoir devant toute juridiction une méconnaissance de ses droits et libertés que la Constitution garantit. Et cela concerne non seulement les particuliers mais aussi les associations, les syndicats ou les collectivités territoriales. Cette 19e édition des Grandes décisions du Conseil constitutionnel intègre plusieurs nouvelles affaires et revoit et augmente celles déjà présentes dans la précédente édition. Elle permettra aux justiciables de mieux connaître l'ensemble des droits et libertés que la Constitution garantit et dont ils peuvent désormais se prévaloir.\$béditeur\$zfre

In this record for an expression of a constitutional law casebook, the abstract provided by the publisher through an automated workflow gives details on the specific content of this version: this 19th edition dated 2018 gathers several new cases and the additional commentaries are updated. This abstract is objective and non-commercial. It may be recorded at the expression level.

History

2020	New field.
2022	Added control subfields \$6 and \$7.
2024	Text edit.

4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains variant access points that form the reference structure for the access point in the 2-- fields. The following fields are defined:

400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
415 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
416 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
417 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE
420 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
423 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER
430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE
431 VARIANT ACCESS POINT –TITLE (WORK)
432 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
441 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
442 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
443 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
450 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
460 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE ETC.
480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Notes on Field Contents

The fields for the 2-- authorized access point and the 4-- variant access points have the same indicators and subfield identifiers. The data subfields in the 4-- block are identical to those specified in the 2-- block, therefore the specifications are not repeated in the 4-- block.

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2001	New subfields/values: \$j Form Subdivision.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	New paragraphs: Notes on Field Contents: rewording of the text.
2016	Update.
2019	Table updated. Deleted paragraph in the section Notes on Field Contents.

400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the personal name in field 200.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
400	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
k	Attribution Qualifier	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the way the name is entered
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name.

It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office.

Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics.

If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included. The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates.

Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form. All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

Full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required.

Not repeatable.

\$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 400. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aDuMaurier,\$cDame\$bDaphne
400 #1\$aMaurier,\$cDame\$bDaphne du
EX 2
200 #1\$aWaterman,\$bAnthony M.C.,\$f1931-
400 #1\$aWaterman,\$bA.M.C.
EX 3
200 #1\$aRolfe,\$bFr.

400 #1\$aCorvo,\$cBaron
400 #1\$aRolfe,\$bFrederick William
EX 4
200 #1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936
400 #1\$5f\$aПешков\$bА. М.\$gАлексей Максимович\$f1868-1936
EX 5
200 #0\$aАвраамий\$cДернов, Анатолий Иванович, архиепископ\$f1874-1939
400 #1\$5m\$aДернов\$bА. И.\$gАнатолий Иванович\$d1874-1939
EX 6
200 #0\$aВиктория Федоровна\$свеликая княгиня\$f1876 – 1936
400 #0\$5k\$aВиктория Мелита\$f1876 – 1936
EX 7
200 #0\$aМихаил Федорович\$сцарь русский\$f1596 – 1645
400 #1\$aРоманов\$gМихаил Федорович\$bМ. Ф.\$f1596 – 1645

History

2016	Update.
2024	Text edit.

410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the corporate body name in field 210.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 410); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 415).

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
410	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Corporate Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Specifies the Way the Names are Entered
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction

	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body. If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place.

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference.

Repeatable.

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

Number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series.

Not repeatable.

\$e Location of Meeting

Place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Meeting

Date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points. (EX [5](#))

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

Part of the name following the inversion in a access point with an inverted element.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 410. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1
210 02\$aDelaware Racing Commission
410 01\$aDelaware.\$bRacing Commission
EX 2
210 02\$aSchweizerisches Rotes Kreuz
410 02\$8gerfre\$aCroix-Rouge suisse
EX 3
210 12\$aSymposium on Endocrines and Nutrition\$f(1956 ;\$eUniversity of Michigan)
410 12\$aNutrition Symposium\$f(1956 ;\$eUniversity of Michigan)
EX 4
210 01\$aUnited States.\$bCongress\$xCommittees
410 01\$aUnited States.\$bCongress\$xSubcommittees
EX 5
210 02\$aD.B. Lister & Associates
410 00\$aLister\$gD.B.\$h& Associates
EX 6
210 02\$aМеждународный союз по чистой и прикладной химии
410 02\$5d\$aИЮПАК
410 02\$5z\$aСоюз по чистой и прикладной химии
410 02\$5z\$aМеждународный союз по теоретической и прикладной химии
410 02\$5d\$aИЮПАК
410 02\$5z\$aМеждународный союз теоретической и прикладной химии
EX 7
210 02\$aВАСХНИЛ\$bНаучная сессия\$f1980
410 12\$5z\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Пути увеличения производства зерна, кормов, повышения эффективности и устойчивости земледелия”, научная сессия ВАСХНИЛ\$f1980
EX 8
210 ##\$aKiel-Russee (Allemagne ; camp de concentration)
410 01\$aArbeitserziehungslager Nordmark
410 01\$aKonzentrationslager Hassee
410 01\$aKonzentrationslager Russee
410 01\$aNordmark
410 01\$aRussee
410 01\$aHassee

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Updated definition/scope: Indicator 1.
2016	Update.
2024	Text edit.

415 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the territorial or geographical name in field 215.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Territorial names alone or only with subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 415); territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate names (field 410).

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
415	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 415. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
215 ##\$aAustralia
415 ##\$aCommonwealth of Australia

415 \$\$\$aNew Holland
EX 2
215 \$\$\$aMcAlester (Okla.)
415 \$\$\$aMcAlester, Okla.
EX 3
250 \$\$\$aВойна в зоне Персидского залива\$z1990 – 1991
415 \$\$\$aПерсидский залив\$xВооруженный конфликт\$z1990 – 1991
EX 4
215 \$\$\$aМорейский принципат
415 \$\$\$aАхейское княжество
EX 5
215 \$\$\$aПа-де-Кале, пролив
415 \$\$\$aДуврский пролив
EX 6
250 \$\$\$aФалеристика\$уАндропов, г.
415 \$\$\$aАндропов, г.\$xФалеристика
EX 7
250 \$\$\$aGuerres napoléoniennes (1800-1815)\$xCampagnes et batailles\$yRussie
415 \$\$\$aFrance\$z+* 1812.....- 1812.....+:1812: (Invasion de la Russie)
415 \$\$\$aRussie\$z+* 1812.....- 1812.....+:1812: (Invasion)
450 \$\$\$aCampagne de Russie (1812)

History

2024	Text edit.

416 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the trademark name in field 216.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
416	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Name of the trademark in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers.

Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 416. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1
216 ##\$aHis Master's Voice
416 ##\$aHMV
EX 2
216 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8frerus\$aMelodiâ\$cmarque russe
216 ##\$7ba0yca0y\$8frerus\$aМелодия
416 ##\$7ba0yba0e\$8frerus\$aMelodiya
The first field 216 contains the transliterated form using the ISO transliteration scheme. The qualifier is necessary to distinguish the name of the Russian trademark from an otherwise identical New-Caledonian trademark. The second field 216 contains the Cyrillic. The variant form, in 416, appears on the products edited in France and follows no identified transliteration table.

History

2001	New field.
2024	Text edit.

417 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the printer/publisher device name in field 217.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
417	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE	R	O
a	Printer/Publisher Device Description	NR	MA
b	Motto	R	O
c	Standard Citation	R	O
d	Size	NR	O
f	Date	NR	O
g	Iconographic Term	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Printer/Publisher Device Description

Description of the figurative elements of the device.

Not repeatable.

\$b Motto

Short sentence or phrase chosen as encapsulating the beliefs or ideals.

Repeatable.

\$c Standard Citation

Citation which identifies unambiguously a device.

Repeatable.

\$d Size

Size, in centimetres, of a device.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date

Dates of a printer/publisher when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Iconographic Term

Term relating to the main iconographic elements present in the device.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a printer/published device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a printed/publisher device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 417. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit.

420 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the family name in field 220.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
420	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Family name in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

Categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection.

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 420. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1
220 ##\$aMedici\$cHouse of
420 ##\$aHouse of Medici
EX 2
220 ##\$aБаратынские\$сроа
420 ##\$aБоратынские\$сроа
EX 3
220 ##\$aГурко-Ромейко\$сроа
420 ##\$aРомейко\$сроа
420 ##\$aГурко\$сроа
420 ##\$aРомейко-Гурко\$сроа

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$d Places associated with the family.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$c Type of family.
2016	Update.
2024	Text edit.

423 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the fictitious character name in field 223.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
423	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name of the Character	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name.

Not repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Name of the Character

Additions to name of character which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets, indications of office, or the relationship with another character.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 416. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

223 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER

Examples

EX 1
146 ##\$b01vte####
223 ##\$aConte d'Almaviva
423 ##\$aConte di Almaviva
423 ##\$aAlmaviva
541 ##\$1200#1\$aRossini\$bGioachino\$1231##\$aIl barbiere di Siviglia\$copera buffa
Variant names of Count Almaviva for Gioachino Rossini's opera buffa <i>Il barbiere di Siviglia</i> .
EX 2
146 ##\$b01vbs####
223 ##\$aRobineau\$cL'ispettore
423 ##\$aL'ispettore
541 #0\$3CFIV088333\$aDallapiccola, Luigi\$4230\$tVolo di notte
The variant name of one character (with proper name and a generic term) in Luigi Dallapiccola's <i>Volo di notte</i> . Voice range specified in coded field 146. Field 541 in standard subfields technique.

History

2019	New field.
2024	Text edit.

430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the title in field 230.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If compliance with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “expression”) instead.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
430	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	General Material Designation	R	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
l	Form Subheading	NR	O
m	Language	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
q	Version (or Date of Version)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used. Not repeatable.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of the general material designation.

Repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$k Date of Publication

Date of publication of the item when it is added to the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language

Language of the item, when required as part of the title.

If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m. Not repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$q Version (or Date of Version)

Identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version.

Not repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the item.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

Statement that a musical work is an arrangement.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 430. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value "0".

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1
230 ##\$aNibelungenlied
430 ##\$aLied der Nibelungen
EX 2
230 ##\$aBible\$xMusic
430 ##\$aBible\$iO.T.\$iPsalms\$xMusic
EX 3
230 ##\$aSymphonies\$zOrgue\$sNo. 9\$sOp. 70\$uDo Mineur
430 ##\$aSymphonie gothique\$sOp. 70
EX 4
230 ##\$aСлово о полку Игореве
430 ##\$aСлово о походе Игоря Святославовича
430 ##\$aСлово о полку Игоревом, Игоря Святославовича внука Олега
430 ##\$aИгорь, Великий князь Северский
430 ##\$5z\$aИроническая песнь о походе на половцов удельного князя Новгорода Северского Игоря Святославича
EX 5
240 ##\$1200#1\$aПалиашвили\$gЗахарий Петрович\$b3. П.\$f1871 – 1933\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Абесалом и Этери≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$loпера
430 ##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Абесалом и Этери≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$loпера

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2023	Errata/text edit: \$l label.
2024	Text edit.

431 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the title for the work entity in field 231.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
431	VARIANT ACCESS POINT –TITLE (WORK)	R	O
a	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title

Title by which the work is known.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - TITLE (WORK)
531 RELATED ACCESS POINT - TITLE (WORK)
731 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT - TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1
231 ##\$8frefre\$aProphéties de la Sibylle érythréenne\$fcatalan
431 ##\$8frecat\$aCant de la Sibil·la
EX 2
231 ##\$8freger\$a≠NSB≠Der ≠NSE≠Struwwelpeter
431 ##\$8freger\$aLustige Geschichte und drollige Bilder für Kinder von 3-6 Jahren
431 ##\$8frefre\$aPierre l'Ébouriffé
431 ##\$8frefre\$aPierre l'Embroussaillé
431 ##\$8freng\$aSlovenly Peter
431 ##\$8frelat\$aPetrus Hirsutus

History

2012	New field.

432 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the title for the expression entity in field 232.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
432	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
a	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title [Work]

Title by which the work is known.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression.

The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
532 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
732 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aОткровение Варуха\$wГреческий вариант
432 ##\$aАпокалипсис Варуха\$wГреческий вариант
Greek Apocalypse of Baruch (one of two different Jewish pseudepigraphical texts, attributed to Baruch ben Neriah).
EX 2
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aКнига Еноха\$wЭфиопская версия
432 ##\$aБиблия\$иВ.3.\$иПсевдоэпиграфы\$иКнига Еноха\$wЭфиопская версия
Ethiopian version of “Книга Еноха” (The Book of Enoch), one of ancient Jewish religious works.
EX3
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$a Bible.\$иN. T.\$mFrancés\$wOstervald
432 ##\$aBible\$иN. T.\$mFrancés\$wBible d' Ostervald
432 ##\$aBible.\$иN. T.\$mFrancés\$wJean Frédéric Ostervald
Ostervald's Bible, a revision of the French translation, in particular, was well known in Great Britain.
EX4
232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aMahābhārata\$иVanaparva\$иNalopākhyāna\$мvertimas į lietuvių k.
432 ##\$aNala ir Damayanti

History

2012	New field.
2021	Deleted \$4 according to Control subfield (update 2019). Changed status: deleted provisional.

440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the name/title in field 240.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If compliance with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “expression”) instead.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
440	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Title	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 440. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 230 for the title. The field, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 440, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 440. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value "0".

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1
240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$1230##\$aHamlet
440 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616\$1230##\$aTragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark
Example of embedded fields technique.
EX 2
240 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tHamlet
440 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tTragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark
Example of standard subfields technique.
EX 3
240 ##\$1200#0\$aУ ЧЭНГЭЭНЬ\$фок.1500 – 1582\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Путешествие на Запад≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠
440 ##\$1200#0\$aУ ЧЭНГЭЭНЬ\$фок.1500 – 1582\$1430##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Си ю цзи≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠
EX 4
240 ##\$1200#0\$aСаксон Грамматик\$фок.1140 - ок.1208\$1230##\$a”Деяния датчан”
430 ##\$a”Gesta Danorum”
440 ##\$1200#0\$aСаксон Грамматик\$фок.1140 - ок.1208\$1230##\$a”Gesta Danorum”

History

2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.
2009	Change to status: A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2024	Text edit.

441 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the name/title for the work entity in field 241.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
441	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point		O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	O
t	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 231 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 441, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1. Subject subdivisions are carried in the embedded title field.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data. (Control subfields defined for the 200, 210, 215, 220, 230, 231 or 232 fields are not embedded in a \$1 subfield.)

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements.

When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)
541 RELATED ACCESS POINT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)
741 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT - NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1200#1\$aVerdi\$bGiuseppe\$f1813-1901\$4070\$1231##\$aNabucco\$sH39
441 ##\$1200#1\$aVerdi\$bGiuseppe\$f1813-1901\$4070\$1231##\$aNabucodonosor\$sH39
Nabucodonosor is the original title of Verdi's opera, best known under the title <i>Nabucco</i> .

History

2012	New field.
2022	Deleted \$2, \$3 and \$5 in embedded fields techniques.
2024	Text edit.

442 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the name/title in field 242.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
442	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name [Work]	NR	MA
t	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 232 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 442, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1. Subject subdivisions are carried in the embedded title field.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data. (Control subfields defined for the 200, 210, 215, 220, 230, 231 or 232 fields are not embedded in a \$1 subfield.)

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

In the list of data subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording “[Work]”. They can be copied from the record describing the related work. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with “[Expression]”.

\$a Name [Work]

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements.

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title [Work]

The title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements. When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 241 is used.

Mandatory.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m. Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression.

The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression.
Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

Code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the Work to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 4](#).

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
542 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
742 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aBrontë,\$bEmily,\$f1818-1848.\$4070\$1232## \$aWuthering heights\$mfrançais\$wMonod
442 ##\$1200#1\$aBrontë,\$bEmily,\$f1818-1848.\$4070\$1232##\$aHurlemont
Example of embedded field technique. Emily Brontë's <i>Wuthering Heights</i> has numerous translations in French, including the one made by Sylvère Monod, which is known under the title Hurlemont. Other translations bear different titles.

History

2012	New field.
2022	Deleted \$2, \$3 and \$5 in embedded fields techniques.
2024	Text edit.

443 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the conventional name/title for legal and religious texts in field 243.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
443	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of the Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Form of Conventional Name/Title
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Specifies the Form of Conventional Name/Title

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value 2: Name entered under other form

Used for church names.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy.

Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions.

Repeatable.

\$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued.

If necessary, subfield \$b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or \$c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used. Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing

Date of legal issue or version when added to the authorized conventional name access point.

The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the authorized conventional name access point. Repeatable.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the authorized conventional name access point is being applied is only a part of the text named in the access point.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the authorized conventional name access point.

Repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$t Conventional Title

Authorized form of a conventional title for the text being catalogued.

The term(s) of the title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the conventional name access point which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the conventional name access point that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 443. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value "0".

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit.

445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the name/collective title in field 245.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
445	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Collective Title	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system or a cataloguing rules that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 445. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 235 for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 445, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**\$a Name**

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$t Collective Title

Title proper of a bibliographic item containing several works by one or more authors issued in a single volume or uniform set.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/collective title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/collective title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

EX 1
245 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks.\$mRussian
445 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks.\$mUkrainian
Example of the embedded fields technique.
EX 2
245 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tWorks. Russian
445 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tWorks. Ukrainian
Example of the standard subfields technique.
EX 3
245 ##\$1200#0\$aРафаэль Санти\$f1483 – 1520\$12350#\$aФрески
445 ##\$1400#0\$aРафаэль Санцио\$f1483 – 1520\$12350#\$aФрески

History

2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	Change to status: A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields.
2024	Text edit.

450 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the topical subject or subject category in field 250.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

A topical subject or subject category may be coded and/or textual form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
450	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	R	O
a	Topical Subject or Subject Category	NR	MA
n	Subject Category Code	R	O
m	Subject Category Subdivision Code	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Topical Subject or Subject Category

Term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points or subject categories used.

Not repeatable.

\$n Subject Category Code

Coded representation of a subject category.

Repeatable.

\$m Subject Category Subdivision Code

Coded representation of a subject category subdivision.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) or material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents, or a term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the \$a subfield.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 450. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1
250 ##\$aFederal aid to education
450 ##\$aEducation\$xFederal aid
EX 2
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aМультикультурное образование
450 ##\$aОбразование мультикультурное
450 ##\$aПоликультурное образование
450 ##\$aИнтеркультурное образование
EX 3
250 ##\$aВойна в зоне Персидского залива\$z1990 – 1991
450 ##\$aИрако-Кувейтский конфликт\$z1990 – 1991
EX 4
250 ##\$aЧелдоны
300 1#\$aСоциальная группа старожильческого населения Сибири
450 ##\$aЧалдоны
EX 5
250 ##\$aЗаповеди библейские
430 ##\$aДекалог
450 ##\$aБиблейские заповеди
EX 6
210 \$aRussie\$cTerritoire sous le contrôle des armées blanches\$c1918-1920
330 ##\$aSous cette vedette on trouve les documents sur les gouvernements russes blancs constitués à Omsk puis à Irkoutsk en 1918-1920, dirigés par A.V. Koltchak, puis A.I. Denikine (04-01-1920), enfin par P.N. Wrangel (04-04-1920)
410 \$aRussie\$cGouvernements russes blancs\$c1918-1920
450 ##\$aBlancs, Russes
450 ##\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aRusses blancs
515 ##\$5g\$311939739\$aURSS\$z1917-1921 (Révolution)
Example of referring to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

History

2009	New indicators and subfields/values:\$m Subject category subdivision code.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values:\$n Subject category code.
2009	Changes in name and function:\$x Topical subdivision or subject category subdivision text.
2009	Changes in name and function:\$a Topical subject or subject category.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2017	Text errata: Examples misprints.
2018	Text errata: Field definition.
2024	Text edit.

460 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the place and date of publication, production, performance, recording or provenance in field 260.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
460	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE ETC.	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)	NR	MA
b	State or Province, Etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, Etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date	NR	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, Etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Country (Nation State)

Political unit where the state and nation are congruent.

Not repeatable.

\$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country.

Not repeatable.

\$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$d City, etc.

Name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one

For smaller units, see \$k.

Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc.

Repeatable.

\$f Date

A date is a specific time that can be named.

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats.

\$g Season

Each of the four divisions of the year (spring, summer, autumn, and winter) marked by particular weather patterns.

Not repeatable.

\$h Occasion

A special or formal event.

Not repeatable.

\$i Final Date

Date on which something ends.

Not repeatable.

\$k Subsection of City, etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$n Extra-terrestrial Areas

Any extra-terrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$o Geographical Area

Larger area than country, such as world, hemisphere, continent.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 460. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION,
PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1
260 ##\$8hrvita\$aItalija\$dVenezia
460 ##\$8hrvhrv\$aItalija\$dBenetki
460 ##\$8hrvlat\$aItalija\$dVinegia
EX 2
260 ##\$8hrvhrv\$aHrvatska\$dOsijek
460 ##\$8hrvlat\$aHrvatska\$dMursa
460 ##\$8hrvlat\$aHrvatska\$dEssekinum
460 ##\$8hrvhun\$aHrvatska\$dEssek

History

2001	New field.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$c Intermediate political jurisdiction.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: subfields \$e - \$o.
2024	Text edit.

480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition and Scope

Variant or non-preferred form of the form, genre, or physical characteristics in field 280.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

In some cases, this field may refer to another 2-- field following the subject system in use by the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
480	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Type of Entity
	#	Not defined
	0	Work
	2	Manifestation
	3	Item

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Term in the form prescribed by the system of form access points used.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to the form access point to specify the aspect that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

Use for identification code of a subject system that differ from the system in subfield 152b, and in which the variant access point appears.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Use for the control number identifier of the related reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 480. Subfield \$3 may be used when the field also contains subfields \$2 and \$5 in which character position 1 contains value “0”.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$brbpap

280 ##\$aMarbled papers
480 ##\$aMarble papers
The term “Marbled papers” is used in preference to “Marble papers” by the ACRL Paper Terms: a Thesaurus for Use in Rare Book and Special Collections Cataloging.
EX 2
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aErotic stories
480 ##\$aAdult fiction
The Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc., prefer Erotic Stories to Adult Fiction.

History

2001	New field.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Indicator 3.
2024	Text edit.

5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains the related access points that form the reference structure for the access point in the 2-- fields. The following fields are defined:

500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
501 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK
502 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
511 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK
512 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION
515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
516 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
517 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE
520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
521 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK
522 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION
523 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER
530 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE
531 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
532 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
540 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
541 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
542 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
543 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
550 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
580 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Notes on Field Contents

The fields for the 2-- authorized access point and the 5-- related access points have the same indicators and subfield identifiers. The subfields used in the 5-- block are the same as those specified under the respective 2-- fields and the full specifications are not repeated below.

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2001	New subfields/values: \$j Form Subdivision.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Text errata.

5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

2016	Update.
2019	Table updated. Deleted paragraph in the section Notes on Field Contents.
2023	Table update.

500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the personal name related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

When a personal name is part of “name/title or collective title”, the field 500 should hold a control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Repeatable for each subsequent personal name.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
500	RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
o	International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Way the Name is Entered
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name.

It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office.

Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics.

If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included. The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates.

Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form. All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

Full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required.

Not repeatable.

\$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work. Repeatable.

\$o International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)

The subfield \$o (International Standard Name Identifier) is used in field 510 to record the ISNI of the related identity. When the preferred access point of an authority record that contains field 010 is transferred to the 500/510/520 access point of another record (while establishing a link between both authority records), the number contained in the 010 field of the first record will also be transferred in a devoted subfield \$o. Repeatable.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

In fields 500, 510, 520, and 241 the code in the subfield \$4 used to designate the relationship between the person, corporate body, or family name in the field and the work or expression to which the record refers. In fields 500, 510, and 520, subfield \$4 should be used only when subfield \$5 character position 4 is set to value “a” (creator). Compare \$5/4 Relationship Code Between Agents and a Work or an Expression. The relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. If greater precision in 500 is required for performers, the alphabetical codes that have been designed for field 146 (UNIMARC/Bibliographic format) can be used in subfield \$4. The list of codes values is found in the IAML web site <http://www.iaml.info/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium>. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield.

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aEdwards,\$bP.\$g(Paul)
500 #1\$aEdwards,\$bPaul
EX 2
200 #0\$aPseudo-Brutus
500 #1\$aBrutus,\$bMarcus Junius,\$f85?-42 B.C.
EX 3
200 #0\$aKumbel
500 #1\$5f\$aHein,\$bPiet
EX 4
200 #1\$aRossi\$bJean-Baptiste
500 #1\$5e\$aJaprisot\$bSébastien
EX 5
200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJohn
300 0# \$aJoint pseudonym of Morris Cargill and John Hearne
500 #1\$5f\$aCargill,\$bMorris
500 #1\$5f\$aHearne,\$bJohn,\$f1925-
EX 6
200 #0\$aКукрыниксы\$схудожники
305 1# \$aКоллективный псевдоним художников\$bКуприянов Михаил Васильевич\$bКрылов Порфирий Никитич\$bСоколов Николай Александрович
400 #1\$5f\$aКуприянов\$bМ. В.\$gМихаил Васильевич\$f1903-
500 #1\$5f0\$aКрылов\$bП. Н.\$gПорфирий Никитич\$f1902-
500 #1\$5f0\$aСоколов\$bН. А.\$gНиколай Александрович\$f1903-
EX 7
215 ##\$aЕлец, город (Липецкая область)\$xИстория
500 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661417544\$5h\$aЗаусайлов\$bА. Н.\$gАлександр Николаевич\$f1860 – 1915

500 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661426748\$5h\$aСтахович\$bМ. А.\$gМихаил Александрович\$f1861 – 1923
EX 8
215 ##\$aРоссия\$xИстория\$z1-я пол. 19 в.
500 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661471681\$5h\$aКарамзин\$bА. Н.\$gАндрей Николаевич\$f1814 – 1854
EX 9
241 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$aDebussy, Claude (1862-1918)\$4230\$tPelléas et Mélisande\$sFL 93
500 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$5xxxxa\$aDebussy\$bClaude\$f1862-1918\$4230
500 #1\$3FRBNF119138653\$5xxxxa\$aMaeterlinck\$bMaurice\$f1862-1949\$4480
Debussy's opera Pelléas et Mélisande, with a libretto by Maurice Maeterlinck. Field 241 illustrates the standard subfields technique.
EX 10
241 ##\$8itaita\$1001<AR_ID for the name>\$1200#1\$aMonti\$bElvio\$4230\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠canzone di Marinella
500 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$8itaita\$5xxxxa\$aMonti\$bElvio\$4230
500 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$8itaita\$5xxxxa\$aDe André\$bFabrizio\$f1940-1999\$4520
A song by Fabrizio De André (lyrics) and Elvio Monti (music). Field 241 illustrates the embedded fields technique.

History

2012	Additional subfields to field.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition, Occurrence.
2012	Updates.
2016	Updates.
2019	Editorial changes. New examples (9, 10).
2023	Changed definition, scope, and examples.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

501 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the personal name related to the work entity in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Mandatory if the work involves at least one person responsible for creation.

Describing the relationship between the agent and the work, use the value “a” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4. For recording the relationship between other related agents and the work, use value “c” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Repeatable for each subsequent personal name.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
501	RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK	R	MA
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Way the Name is Entered
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name.

It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office.

Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics.

If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included. The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates.

Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form. All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

Full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required.

Not repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
511 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK
520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
521 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK

Examples

EX 1A, with the “name” part of field 241 present
241 #1\$aDebussy, Claude (1862-1918)\$4230\$tPelléas et Mélisande
501 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$5xxxxa\$aDebussy\$bClaude\$f1862-1918\$4230
501 #1\$3FRBNF119138653\$5xxxxa\$aMaeterlinck\$bMaurice\$f1862-1949\$4480
501 #1\$3FRBNF136131015\$5xxxxc\$aHartmann\$bGeorges\$f1843-1900\$4280
Debussy’s opera <i>Pelléas et Mélisande</i> , with a libretto by Maurice Maeterlinck. Field 241 illustrates the standard subfields technique. Georges Hartmann is recorded in a related access point as the dedicatee of the opera, with value “c” in \$5 pos. 4 as he is not one of the creators of the opera but an agent associated with the work.
EX 1B, without the “name” part of field 241
241 #1\$tPelléas et Mélisande
501 #1\$3FRBNF138930724\$5xxxxa\$aDebussy\$bClaude\$f1862-1918\$4230
501 #1\$3FRBNF119138653\$5xxxxa\$aMaeterlinck\$bMaurice\$f1862-1949\$4480
501 #1\$3FRBNF136131015\$5xxxxc\$aHartmann\$bGeorges\$f1843-1900\$4280
Debussy’s opera <i>Pelléas et Mélisande</i> , with a libretto by Maurice Maeterlinck. Field 241 illustrates the standard subfields technique. Georges Hartmann is recorded in a related access point as the dedicatee of the opera, with value “c” in \$5 pos. 4 as he is not one of the creators of the opera but an agent associated with the work.
EX 2, with the “name” part of field 241 present
241 #1\$1200#1\$aFerrão,\$bRaúl,\$f1890-1953\$4230\$1231##\$aNoite de Santo António
501 #1\$3<AR_ID>\$5xxxxa\$aFerrão,\$bRaúl,\$f1890-1953\$4230

501 #1\$3<AR_ID>\$5xxxxa\$aAraújo,\$bNorberto de,\$f1889-1952\$4520
<i>Noite de Santo Antônio</i> , a song composed by Raúl Ferrão with words by Norberto de Araújo. Field 241 illustrates the embedded fields technique.
EX 2B, without the “name” part of field 241
241 #1\$1231##\$aNoite de Santo Antônio
501 #1\$3<AR_ID>\$5xxxxa\$aFerrão,\$bRaúl,\$f1890-1953\$4230
501 #1\$3<AR_ID>\$5xxxxa\$aAraújo,\$bNorberto de,\$f1889-1952\$4520
<i>Noite de Santo Antônio</i> , a song composed by Raúl Ferrão with words by Norberto de Araújo. Field 241 illustrates the embedded fields technique.

History

2012	New field.
2023	Changed scope, occurrence, and examples.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

502 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the personal name related to the expression entity in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The field contains a personal name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules in use by the agency which creates it, related to the access point in the 2-- field of the linked authority record, except for subfield \$r (see full description under UNIMARC Bibliographic Manual, Fields 702, 712, and 722).

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

This field is used only for agent related to the expression. If explicit information regarding the relationship between the agent and the expression is needed, use the value “b” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
502	RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
r	Part or Role Played (Operas, Theatrical Performances, Etc.)	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Way the Name is Entered
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name.

It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office.

Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics.

If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included. The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates.

Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form. All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

Full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required.

Not repeatable.

\$r Part or Role Played (Operas, Theatrical Performances, Etc.)

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
512 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION
522 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

Examples

EX 1
242 #1\$3FRBNF147158759\$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)\$tCarmen\$hActe 2, n° 17\$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée\$nMusique interprétée\$o1995\$wAlagna\$wArmstrong\$wLondon Philharmonic
502 #1\$3FRBNF139819374\$aAlagna\$bRoberto\$f1963-....\$rDon José\$4721\$4vte
502 #1\$3FRBNF138908852\$aArmstrong\$bRichard\$f1943-....\$4250
512 02\$3FRBNF139047022\$aLondon philharmonic orchestra\$4545\$4oun

History

2012	New field.
2023	Changed definition, scope, and the name of the field. Deleted section Notes on Field Contents.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the corporate body name related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

When a corporate body name is part of “name/title or collective title”, the field 500 should hold a control subfield \$5, pos. 4.

When a corporate body is associated with the work, field 510 is used for the name of the corporate body with the primary intellectual responsibility for the work. This field should hold a \$5 subfield with value “a” on character position 4.

Repeatable for each subsequent corporate body name.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
510	RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
o	International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Specifies the Way the Names are Entered
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body. If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place.

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference.

Repeatable.

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

Number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series.

Not repeatable.

\$e Location of Meeting

Place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Meeting

Date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points. (EX [5](#))

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

Part of the name following the inversion in a access point with an inverted element.

Not repeatable.

\$o International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)

The subfield \$o (International Standard Name Identifier) is used in field 510 to record the ISNI of the related identity. When the preferred access point of an authority record that contains field 010 is transferred to the 500/510/520 access point of another record (while establishing a link between both authority records), the number contained in the 010 field of the first record will also be transferred in a devoted subfield \$o. Repeatable.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

In fields 500, 510, 520, and 241 the code in the subfield \$4 used to designate the relationship between the person, corporate body, or family named in the field and the work or expression to which the record refers. In fields 500, 510, and 520, subfield \$4 should be used only when subfield \$5 character position 4 is set to value “a” (creator). Compare \$5/4 Relationship Code Between Agents and a Work or an Expression. The relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. If greater precision in 500 is required for performers, the alphabetical codes that have been designed for field 146 (UNIMARC/Bibliographic format) can be used in subfield \$4. The list of codes values is found in the IAML web site <http://www.iaml.info/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium>. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield.

Related Fields

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1
210 01\$aGreat Britain.\$bBoard of Trade
510 01\$5b\$aGreat Britain.\$bDepartment of Trade and Industry
510 01\$5b\$aGreat Britain.\$bDepartment of Trade
EX 2
210 02\$aAmerican Material Handling Society
510 02\$5b\$aInternational Material Management Society
EX 3
210 12\$aMeeting in the Matter of Pollution of Lake Erie and Its Tributaries
510 12\$5a\$aConference in the Matter of Pollution of Lake Erie and Its Tributaries
EX 4
216 ##\$aDanone\$cmarque
510 02\$3<AR_ID>\$aDanone
510 02\$3<AR_ID>\$aCompagnie Gervais Danone
300 0#\$aMarque des différentes firmes du groupe Gervais

In this record there are related access points between the trademark (indicated in field 216) and two different firms of the Gervais Group (indicated in fields 510).

EX 5

210 02\$aРоссийская государственная библиотека

510 02\$5a\$aГосударственная библиотека СССР им. В.И.Ленина

EX 6

210 02\$aВсероссийский НИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cСанкт-Петербург

305 0#\$aС 1930 по 1992 гг. см. в каталоге:\$bВНИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова (Ленинград)

305 0#\$aДо 1930 г. см. в каталоге:\$bВсесоюзный институт прикладной ботаники и новых культур (Ленинград)

410 02\$5z\$aИнститут растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cСанкт-Петербург

510 02\$5a0\$aВсесоюзный институт прикладной ботаники и новых культур\$cЛенинград

510 02\$5a0\$aВНИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cЛенинград

EX 7

250 ##\$aБереговые батареи\$yГермания

510 02\$5h\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Мирус≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, батарея

History

2009	Updated definition/scope: Indicator 1.
2012	Additional subfields to field.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition, Occurrence.
2012	Updates.
2016	Updates.
2019	Editorial changes, added text from the restructured section Control Subfields, subfield \$4.
2023	Changed definition and scope.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

511 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the corporate body name related to the work entity in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Mandatory if the work involves at least one corporate body responsible for creation.

Repeatable for each subsequent corporate body name.

Describing the relationship between the agent and the work, use the value “a” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4. For recording the relationship between other related agents and the work, use value “c” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
511	RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK	R	MA
a	Entry element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Subdivision	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Corporate Body
	0	Corporate Name
	1	Meeting
2		Specifies The Way The Names Are Entered

	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body. If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place.

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference.

Repeatable.

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

Number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series.

Not repeatable.

\$e Location of Meeting

Place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Meeting

Date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points. (EX [5](#))

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

Part of the name following the inversion in a access point with an inverted element.

Not repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
501 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
521 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK

Examples

EX 1, with the “name” part of field 241 present
241 ##\$3FRBNF138930724\$8frefre\$aMousseigne, Alain (1946-....)\$4070\$tBarceló avant Barceló, 1973-1982
501 #1\$3FRBNF140457673\$5xxxxa\$8frefre\$aMousseigne\$bAlain\$f1946-....\$4070
511 02\$3FRBNF124940968\$8frecat\$5xxxxa\$aFundació Pilar i Joan Miró a Mallorca\$4070
511 02\$3FRBNF125470329\$8frefre\$5xxxxa\$a≠NSB≠Les≠NSE≠Abattoirs\$cToulouse\$4070

511 02\$3FRBNF125024348\$8frecat\$5xxxxa\$aCentre d'art Santa Mònica\$cBarcelone, Espagne\$4070

The catalogue of an exhibition with multiple creators (one person and three corporate bodies). Field 241 illustrates the standard subfields technique.

History

2012	New field.
2023	Changed definition, scope, occurrence, and examples.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

512 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the corporate body name related to the expression entity in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

This field is used only for agent related to the expression. If explicit information regarding the relationship between the agent and the expression is needed, use the value “b” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
512	RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
r	Part or Role Played (Operas, Theatrical Performances, Etc.)	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Corporate Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Specifies the Way the Names are Entered
	0	Name in inverted form

	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body. If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place.

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference.

Repeatable.

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

Number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series.

Not repeatable.

\$e Location of Meeting

Place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Meeting

Date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points. (EX [5](#))

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

Part of the name following the inversion in a access point with an inverted element.

Not repeatable.

\$r Part or Role Played (Operas, Theatrical Performances, Etc.)

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
502 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION
522 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

Examples

EX 1
242 #1\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aDebussy, Claude (1862-1918)\$tPelléas et Mélisande\$sFL 93\$nMusique interprétée\$qAuberson\$qSuisse romande\$k1969
502 #1\$3FRBNF138909534\$aAuberson\$bJean-Marie\$f1920-....\$4250

502 #1\$3FRBNF13900289\$aTappy\$bÉric\$f 1931-....\$4721\$4vbr\$rPelléas
[...]
512 02\$3FRBNF139056167\$aOrchestre de la Suisse romande\$4545\$4oun
512 02\$3FRBNF13903781\$aGrand Théâtre\$cGenève\$bChœurs\$4721\$4cmi
An interpretation of Debussy's opera <i>Pelléas et Mélisande</i> showing some of the entries for the contributors. Field 242 illustrates the standard subfields technique.

History

2012	New field.
2023	Changed definition, scope and name of the field. Deleted section Note on Field Contents.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of territorial or geographical name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (fields 515); territorial names followed by a corporate subdivision are considered corporate names (fields 510).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
515	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
215 ##\$aSri Lanka
515 ##\$aCeylon
EX 2

215 ##\$aKabwe (Zambia)
515 ##\$5a\$aBrokes Hill (Zambia)
EX 3
215 ##\$aПри Ланка
515 ##\$5a\$aЦейлон
EX 4
220 ##\$aРамессиды\$dдинастия\$f1206 – ок.1070 до н.э.
515 ##\$5g\$aЕгипет Древний\$xИстория
EX 5
250 ##\$aВойна в зоне Персидского залива\$z1990 – 1991
515 ##\$5g\$aИрак\$xВзаимоотношения с Кувейтом
515 ##\$5g\$aКувейт\$xВзаимоотношения с Ираком

History

1994	Text errata.
2023	Deleted section Note on Field Contents.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

516 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the trademark name related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
516	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Name of the trademark in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers.

Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1
216 ##\$aColumbia\$cmarque américaine
516 ##\$3<AR_ID>\$5h\$aColumbia Masterworks
EX 2
210 02\$aDanone
516 ##\$3<AR_ID>\$aDanone\$cmarque
In this record the field 516 is used to make a related access point between a corporate body access point (210 \$aDanone) and a trademark access point (516 \$aDanone\$cmarque).

History

2001	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

517 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the printer/publisher device name related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
517	RELATED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE	R	O
a	Printer/Publisher Device Description	NR	MA
b	Motto	R	O
c	Standard Citation	R	O
d	Size	NR	O
f	Date	NR	O
g	Iconographic Term	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Printer/Publisher Device Description

Description of the figurative elements of the device.

Not repeatable.

\$b Motto

Short sentence or phrase chosen as encapsulating the beliefs or ideals.

Repeatable.

\$c Standard Citation

Citation which identifies unambiguously a device.

Repeatable.

\$d Size

Size, in centimetres, of a device.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date

Dates of a printer/publisher when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Iconographic Term

Term relating to the main iconographic elements present in the device.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a printer/published device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a printed/publisher device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$aRICA
210 00\$aSermartelli,\$gBartolomeo\$c<1>
340 ##\$aTipografo e libraio attivo a Firenze, figlio di Michelangelo de' Libri. Aggiunse al proprio nome il cognome del suo mecenate, che apparteneva alla famiglia Martelli. Cominciò a stampare nel 1553, ma fino al 1563 lavorò poco. Nel 1553 aveva casa e bottega presso il Castello, dal 1559 si spostò nelle vicinanze del Vescovado. M. l'11.4.1604. Dal 1591 gli successe nella direzione dell'Officina il figlio Michelangelo, che stampò fino al 1608.
341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1553-1591\$c In la via nuova da San Giuliano presso al Castello\$cpresso il Vescovado\$dTestuggine
341 ##\$aVenezia, 1574
410 00\$aSermartellius\$gBartholomaeus\$c<1>\$3IT\Edit16\CNCT005648
410 02\$aBartolomeo di Michelagnuolo S. M.\$3IT\Edit16\CNCT004089
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM001081\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cU132
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000202\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cV78\$cZ1153
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000083\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cV78\$cZ1153
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000084\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cZ1152
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM001267\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela. In cornice figurata\$cU255
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000082\$aTartaruga che tiene una vela con giglio fiorentino\$cZ1154
517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000614\$aTartaruga che tiene una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cA58\$cZ1155
801 ##\$3aIT\$bICCU\$c2004108
810 ##\$aIndex Aureliensis Catalogus Librorum sedecimo saeculo impressorum. Tertia pars. Tomus III. Clavis typographorum librorumque saeculi sedecimi, 1992. – IACLA\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
810 ##\$aMaracchi Biagiarelli, Berta. I Sermartelli, discendenti di Bartolomeo de' Libri. In: La Bibliofilia, 63 (1961), 3, p. 281-288. – MBSDB\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
810 ##\$aBorsa, Gedeon Clavis typographorum librorumque italiae, 1465-1600., 1980. – BORSA\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo

810 ##\$aShort-title Catalogue of Books printed in Italy and of Italian Books printed in other countries from 1465 to 1600 now in the British Library, 1986. – BMSTC\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
810 ##\$aCatalogue of Books printed on the Continent of Europe, 1501-1600 in Cambridge Libraries. Compiled by H. M. Adams, 1967 – ADCAM\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
810 ##\$aAscarelli, Fernanda – Menato, Marco. La tipografia del “500 in Italia, 1989 – AMTCI\$bSermartelli Bartolomeo sen.
810 ##\$aEDIT16\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo\$c<1>
856 4#\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/scripts/iccu_ext.dll?fn=13&i=160

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the family name that is either related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

When a family name is part of “name/title or collective title”, the field 500 should hold a control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Repeatable for each subsequent family name.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
520	RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
o	International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Family name in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

Categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection.

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$o International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)

The subfield \$o (International Standard Name Identifier) is used in field 510 to record the ISNI of the related identity. When the preferred access point of an authority record that contains field 010 is transferred to the 500/510/520 access point of another record (while establishing a link between both authority records), the number contained in the 010 field of the first record will also be transferred in a devoted subfield \$o. Repeatable.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

In fields 500, 510, 520, and 241 the code in the subfield \$4 used to designate the relationship between the person, corporate body, or family named in the field and the work or expression to which the record refers. In fields 500, 510, and 520, subfield \$4 should be used only when subfield \$5 character position 4 is set to value “a” (creator). Compare \$5/4 Relationship Code Between Agents and a Work or an Expression. The relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix B. If greater precision in 500 is required for performers, the alphabetical codes that have been designed for field 146 (UNIMARC/Bibliographic format) can be used in subfield \$4. The list of codes values is found in the IAML web site <http://www.iaml.info/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium>. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield.

Related Fields

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1
220 ##\$aDuecker family
520 ##\$aDruecker family
EX 2
215 ##\$aЮгославия\$xИстория\$z20 в.
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661336492\$5g\$aКарагеоргиевич\$dдинастия
EX 3
200 #0\$aКонстантин Николаевич\$свеликий князь\$f1827 – 1892
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5xxx1\$aРомановы\$ссемья

History

2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$d Places associated with the family.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$c Type of family.
2012	Additional subfields to field.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition, Occurrence.
2012	Updates.
2016	Updates.
2017	Text errata: Examples misprints.
2019	Editorial changes, added text from the restructured section Control Subfields, subfield \$4.
2023	Changed definition and scope.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

521 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the family name related to the work entity in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Mandatory if the work involves at least one family responsible for creation.

Describing the relationship between the agent and the work, use the value “a” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4. For recording the relationship between other related agents and the work, use value “c” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Repeatable for each subsequent personal name.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
521	RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK	R	MA
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Family name in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

Categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection.

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
501 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

511 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE WORK

520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

History

2012	New field.
2023	Changed definition, scope, and occurrence.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

522 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the family name related to the expression entity in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

This field is used only for agent related to the expression. If explicit information regarding the relationship between the agent and the expression is needed, use the value “b” in the control subfield \$5 pos. 4.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
522	RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
r	Part or Role Played (Operas, Theatrical Performances, Etc.)	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Family name in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

Categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection.

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$r Part or Role Played (Operas, Theatrical Performances, Etc.)

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

512 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

522 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME WITH RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE EXPRESSION

History

2012	New field.
2023	Changed definition, scope, and the name of the field. Error correction (Indicator 2). Deleted section Note on Field Contents.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

523 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the fictitious character name related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The access point in the 523 is a related access point of the character name in the 2-- field in a performance-related resource (notably audio or video recordings, movies, opera scores, plots, and librettos).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
523	RELATED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name of the Character	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name.

Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Name of the Character

Additions to name of character which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets, indications of office, or the relationship with another character.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

223 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER
230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE
231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE
241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1a
128 ##\$aops
241 ##\$1200#1\$aZeno\$bApostolo\$1231##\$aVologeso\$cdramma per musica
500 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxa\$aZeno\$bApostolo\$f1668-1750\$4480
523 1#\$aVologeso\$cre de' Parti\$csposo di Berenice
523 1#\$aBerenice\$cregina d'Armenia\$csposa di Vologeso
523 1#\$aLucio Vero\$cImperatore\$csposo di Lucilla\$camante di Berenice
523 1#\$aLucilla\$cfiglia di Marc'Aurelio imperadore\$csposa di Lucio Vero
523 1#\$aAniceto\$concidente di Lucio Vero
523 1#\$aFlavio\$cambasciatore di Marc'Aurelio
Name/title and characters of the work <i>Il Vologeso</i> by Apostolo Zeno. Field 241 in embedded fields technique.
EX 1b

231 ##\$aVologeso\$cdramma per musica\$c1785
146 ##\$6z01523\$b01vso####
146 ##\$6z02523\$b01vso####
146 ##\$6z03523\$b01vte####
500 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxa\$aSacchini\$bAntonio Maria Gasparo Gioacchino\$f1730-1786\$4230
501 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$5xxxa\$aZeno\$bApostolo\$f1668-1750\$4480
523 ##\$6z01146\$aVologeso
523 ##\$6z02146\$aBerenice
523 ##\$6z03146\$aLucio Vero
Title and part of the characters of the work <i>Il Vologeso</i> set to music by Antonio Maria Sacchini, libretto by Apostolo Zeno. Voice ranges of characters specified in interlinked 146 fields.
EX 1c
242 ##\$1200#1\$aZeno\$bApostolo\$1232##\$aVologeso\$cdramma per musica\$o1748\$wRoma, Teatro di Torre Argentina
500 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$aZeno\$bApostolo\$4480
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$aGaluppi\$bBaldassare\$4230
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z01\$aElisi\$bFilippo\$rVologeso\$4590
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z02\$aRicciarelli\$bGiuseppe\$rBerenice\$4590
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z03\$aGiorgi\$bFilippo\$rLucio Vero\$4590
523 ##\$6z01\$aVologeso\$cre de' Parti\$csposo di Berenice
523 ##\$6z02\$aBerenice\$cregina d'Armenia\$csposa di Vologeso
523 ##\$6z03\$aLucio Vero\$cImperatore\$csposo di Lucilla\$camante di Berenice
Name/title and part of cast and characters of the textual expression contained in the libretto of <i>Il Vologeso dramma per musica da rappresentarsi nel carnovale dell'anno 1748 nel teatro di Torre Argentina</i> , set to music by Baldassare Galuppi. Voice ranges are not specified in the sources, relationships between characters are interlinked through \$6 subfields.
EX 2
242 ##\$1200#1\$aVerdi\$bGiuseppe\$1232##\$a≠NSB≠I ≠NSE≠lombardi alla prima crociata\$iQual voluttà trascorrere\$cPreludio e terzetto
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z01523\$aDérivis\$bProsper\$f1808-1880\$4590\$4vbs
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z02523\$aFrezzolini\$bErminia\$4590\$4vso
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z03523\$aGuasco\$bCarlo\$4590\$4vte
523 ##\$6z01502\$aPagano
523 ##\$6z02502\$aGriselda
523 ##\$6z03502\$aOronte
Cast and characters derived from the expression embodied in the manuscript score <i>I Lombardi alla prima Crociata</i> Preludio e Terzetto Finale Terzo Qual voluttà trascorrere Eseguito Dalla Sig.a Frezzolini Poggi e dai Signori Guasco e Derivis Musica Del Mae.o Giuseppe Verdi and other printed sources. Voice ranges are indicated in the resource, and specified only as relator codes in \$4 subfields.
EX 3
231 ##\$a ≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠clan of the cave bear
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z01523\$aHannah\$bDaryl\$4005
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z02523\$aReed\$bPamela\$4005
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z03523\$aRemar\$bJames\$4005
523 ##\$6z01502\$aAyla
523 ##\$6z02502\$aIza

523 ##\$6z03502\$aCreb
Main characters and cast in Michael Chapman's film <i>The clan of the cave bear</i> .
EX 4
231 ##\$aLulu
300 ##\$6z01523\$aHoher Sopran
300 ##\$6z02523\$aDramatischer Mezzosopran
300 ##\$6z03523\$aAlt
300 ##\$6z04523\$aAlt
300 ##\$6z05523\$aSprechrolle (Spielbariton)
300 ##\$6z06523\$aLyrischer Tenor
300 ##\$6z07523\$aHeldenbariton
300 ##\$6z08523\$aJugendlicher Heldentenor
300 ##\$6z09523\$aHeldenbaß mit Buffo-Einschlag
300 ##\$6z10523\$aHeldenbaß mit Buffo-Einschlag
300 ##\$6z11523\$aHoher Charakterbaß
300 ##\$6z12523\$aTenorbuffo
300 ##\$6z13523\$aBaßbuffo (tief)
500 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$aBerg\$bAlban\$4230
523 ##\$6z01300\$aLulu
523 ##\$6z02300\$aGräfin Geschwitz
523 ##\$6z03300\$aEine Theatergarderobiere
523 ##\$6z04300\$aEin Gymnasiast
523 ##\$6z05300\$aDer Medizinalrat
523 ##\$6z06300\$aDer Maler
523 ##\$6z07300\$aDr. Schön\$cChefredakteur
523 ##\$6z08300\$aAlva\$cSchriftsteller\$cDr. Schöns Sohn
523 ##\$6z09300\$aEin Tierbändiger
523 ##\$6z10300\$aRodrigo\$cein Athlet
523 ##\$6z11300\$aSchigolch\$cein Greis
523 ##\$6z12300\$aDer Prinz\$cein Afrikareisender
523 ##\$6z13300\$aDer Theaterdirektor
Characters (with proper name or generic term) for Alban Berg's <i>Lulu</i> , with voice ranges in interlinked note fields as indicated in the vocal score.
EX 5
146 ##\$6z01523\$b01vbrf###
146 ##\$6z02523\$b01vbs####
146 ##\$6z03523\$b01vte####
146 ##\$6z04523\$b01vte####
146 ##\$6z05523\$b01vreb###
146 ##\$6z06523\$b02vte####\$b01vbr####\$b01vbs####
146 ##\$6z07523\$b01vso####
146 ##\$6z08523\$b01vso####
146 ##\$6z09523\$b01cun####
146 ##\$6z10523\$b01cun####
241 #0\$3CFIV088333\$aDallapiccola, Luigi\$4230\$tVolo di note
523 ##\$6z01146\$aRivière\$cdirettore di una Compagnia di Navigazione Aerea
523 ##\$6z02146\$aRobineau\$cL'ispettore
523 ##\$6z03146\$aPellerin\$cIl pilota

523 ##\$6z04146\$aIl radiotelegrafista
523 ##\$6z05146\$aLeroux\$cIl vecchio caposquadra
523 ##\$6z06146\$aQuattro impiegati
523 ##\$6z07146\$aFabien\$cLa signora
523 ##\$6z08146\$aUna voce interna
523 ##\$6z09146\$aOperai
523 ##\$6z10146\$aMaestranze
Characters (with proper name, generic or collective terms) in Luigi Dallapiccola's <i>Volo di notte</i> . Voice ranges specified in coded field 146, with suffixes. Field 241 in standard subfields technique.
EX 6
242 ##\$1200#1\$aDallapiccola\$bLuigi\$4230\$1232##\$aUlisse
300 ##\$6z01523\$asoprano
300 ##\$6z02523\$acontralto
300 ##\$6z03523\$asoprano leggero
300 ##\$6z04523\$asoprano
300 ##\$6z05523\$atenore
300 ##\$6z06523\$atenore
300 ##\$6z07523\$asoprano
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z01523\$6z07523\$aBernard\$bAnnabelle\$4590\$4vso
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z02523\$aMikes\$bGitta\$4590\$4val
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z03523\$aGayer\$bCatherine\$4590\$4vso
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z04523\$aWisniewska\$bHelga\$4590\$4vso
502 #1\$3<AR_ID for the name>\$6z05523\$6z06523\$aMelchert\$bHelmut\$4590\$4vte
523 ##\$6z01300\$6z01502\$aCalypso
523 ##\$6z02300\$6z02502\$aPrima ancella
523 ##\$6z03300\$6z03502\$aNausicaa
523 ##\$6z04300\$6z04502\$aSeconda ancella
523 ##\$6z05300\$6z05502\$aDemodoco
523 ##\$6z06300\$6z06502\$aTiresia
523 ##\$6z07300\$6z07502\$aPenelope
Part of the characters and cast for the first performance of Luigi Dallapiccola's <i>Ulisse</i> , as defined in a vocal score. Some of the characters are interpreted by the same performers. Voice ranges are indicated as in the score in interlinked note fields and coded as relator codes in fields 502. Field 242 in embedded fields technique.
EX 7
146 ##\$6z01523\$b01vso####
146 ##\$6z02523\$b01vms####
146 ##\$6z03523\$b01vso####
146 ##\$6z04523\$b01vbr####
146 ##\$6z05523\$b01vte####
241 ##\$1200#1\$aPrey\$bClaude\$4230\$1231##\$aLes liaisons dangereuses
300 ##\$6z01523\$asoprano
300 ##\$6z02523\$amezzo-soprano et cithare
300 ##\$6z03523\$asoprano léger
300 ##\$6z04523\$abaryton
300 ##\$6z05523\$aténor léger
523 ##\$6z01146\$6z01300\$aMarquise de Merteuil
523 ##\$6z02146\$6z02300\$aPrésidente de Tourvel

523 ##\$6z03146\$6z03300\$aVolanges\$bCécile
523 ##\$6z04146\$6z04300\$aVicomte de Valmont
523 ##\$6z05146\$6z05300\$aChevalier Danceny
<i>Les liaisons dangereuses</i> by Claude Prey. Voice ranges are indicated as interlinked coded 146 fields and note fields.

History

2019	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

530 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the title of a work or work/manifestation related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If compliance with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is needed, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “expression”) instead.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
530	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	General Material Designation	R	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
l	Form Subheading	NR	O
m	Language	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
q	Version (or Date of Version)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used. Not repeatable.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of the general material designation.

Repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$k Date of Publication

Date of publication of the item when it is added to the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language

Language of the item, when required as part of the title.

If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m. Not repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$q Version (or Date of Version)

Identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version.

Not repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the item.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

Statement that a musical work is an arrangement.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1
230 ##\$aCaedmon manuscripts
530 ##\$aDaniel (Anglo-Saxon poem)
EX 2
230 ##\$aKoran\$xReadings
530 ##\$aKoran\$xCriticism, Textual
EX 3
230 ##\$aAbschied\$sD 957 no 7
530 ##\$h\$aSchwanengesang\$sD957 et 965 A
EX 4
230 ##\$aБиблия\$iВетхий завет
305 0#\$aОдин из разделов Библии, издания которой см. в каталоге:\$bБиблия
430 ##\$aБиблия\$iВосемь книг Ветхого Завета
430 ##\$aВетхий Завет
430 ##\$aКниги Священного писания Ветхого Завета в русском переводе
530 ##\$aБиблия
530 ##\$aБиблия\$iВетхий Завет\$iПятикнижие
530 ##\$aПророки
530 ##\$aИезикииль
EX 5
200 #1\$aЛютер\$bM.\$gМартин\$f1483 – 1546
530 ##\$aБиблия Мартина Лютера
EX 6
200 #0\$aИов (библейский персонаж)
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6674151\$aБиблия\$iВетхий Завет
EX 7
230 ##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Легенды о Граале≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$lсредневековый рыцарский роман
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66332490\$aГрааль\$lзападноевропейская средневековая легенда о таинственной чаше
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66417440\$aСредневековая литература
EX 8
250 ##\$aЛетописи русские\$z15 – 16 вв.

530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661311133\$aТверская летопись
EX 9
215 ##\$aБольшое княжество Литовское
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661310904\$5z\$aЛитовский статут\$z1529

History

2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2023	Errata/text edit: \$l label.
2024	Text edit.

531 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the title for the work related to the access point in in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model for work.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
531	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)	R	O
a	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
p	Precision on Relationship	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title

Title by which the work is known.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$p Precision on Relationship

The designation of a relationship between works and/or expressions in textual form.

This subfield is used only for descriptive cataloguing and contains a term from a controlled vocabulary that specifies the relationship given in the control subfield \$5.

Subfield \$p follows the control subfield \$5 and cannot be present without it.

Not repeatable. ([EX 2-5](#)).

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the system from which the term is derived.

When \$2 is used to identify the source of the term used for subfield \$p, enter it directly after this subfield; when it is used to identify the subject system, enter it at the end of all subfields.

Mandatory if \$p is present.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The meaning of the relationship code (control subfield \$5/2) and the additional relationship designation in textual form (subfield \$p) are used for relationship information in the authority data display.

Related Fields

231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
431 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
731 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1
231 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8fresan\$aMahābhārata\$iVanaparva\$iNalopākhyāna
531 ##\$5xxe\$3FRBNF12271283\$7ba0yba0a\$8fresan\$aMahābhārata\$iVanaparva
Mahābhārata. Vanaparva. Nalopākhyāna (field 231) is a part of Mahābhārata. Vanaparva (field 531). 531 \$5, pos. 2 has value “e”, “part of the larger work”.
EX 2
241 #1\$3FRBNF138992163\$aRota, Nino (1911-1979)\$t≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠gattopardo
531 ##\$3FRBNF12220541\$5xxg\$p musique utilisée dans\$2RDA-FR\$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠gattopardo \$c film
The relationship between the music composed by Nino Rota for the motion picture <i>Il gattopardo</i> and the motion picture itself. In this example, subfields \$p and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.
EX 3
231 ##\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠Monde\$eParis\$d1944
531 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$5xxr\$p Version ressource intégratrice d’une publication en série \$2RDA-FR\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠Monde\$kEn ligne
The relationship between two versions of a newspaper published simultaneously as a printed and an online edition (integrating resource). In this example, subfields \$p and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.
EX 4
231 ##\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
531 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$5xxc\$p Devient\$2RDA-FR\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠ recherche aérospatiale
The relationship between serials after major title change. In this example, subfields \$p and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.
EX 5
231 ##\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
531 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$5xxr\$p a pour édition linguistique alternative\$2RDA-FR \$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale\$kEnglish ed.

The relationship between two linguistic editions of serials published simultaneously in French and English. In this example, subfields \$p and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.

History

2012	New field.
2021	New subfield \$p, examples and text edit.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

532 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the title for the expression entity related to the access point in in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
532	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
a	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
p	Precision on Relationship	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title [Work]

Title by which the work is known.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression.

The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$p Precision on Relationship

The designation of a relationship between works and/or expressions in textual form.

This subfield is used only for descriptive cataloguing and contains a term from a controlled vocabulary that specifies the relationship given in the control subfield \$5.

Subfield \$p follows the control subfield \$5 and cannot be present without it.

Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the system from which the term is derived.

When \$2 is used to identify the source of the term used for subfield \$p, enter it directly after this subfield; when it is used to identify the subject system, enter it at the end of all subfields.

Mandatory if \$p is present.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
432 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
732 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1

232 ##\$3<AR_ID for the work>\$aСиндбад-мореход\$mpyc.\$wБ.Д. Порозовская
532 ##\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$aСиндбад-мореход\$mфранц.
Translation of <i>Синдбад-мореход</i> (Sindbad the Sailor) into Russian is made by B.Porozovskaya not from the original version, but based on French translation. The relationship is established between two expressions (translations) of the same work. Subfield \$3 in 532 contains Authority Record identifier for the expression (French translation).

History

2012	New field.
2020	Deleted \$4 according Control subfield (update 2019).
2021	New subfield \$p and text edit. Changed status: deleted provisional.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

540 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/title related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If compliance with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is needed, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “expression”) instead.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
540	RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Title	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 230 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 540, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**\$a Name**

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1
240 ##\$1200#1\$aFauré,\$bGabriel,\$f1845-1924.\$1230##\$aBallades,\$rpiano,\$sop.19
540 ##\$100185023456\$1200#1\$aFauré,\$bGabriel,\$f1845-1924.\$1230##\$aBallades,\$rpiano and orchestra,\$sop.19
EX 2
240 ##\$1200#1\$aЧайковский\$gПетр Ильич\$bП. И.\$f1840 - 1893\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Ромео и Джульетта≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠
540 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661390050\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bУ.\$gУильям\$f1564 – 1616\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Ромео и Джульетта≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠\$xМузыкальные интерпретации
EX 3
250 ##\$aМонументальная скульптура русская\$yВеликий Новгород, города
540 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66744978\$5h\$1200#1\$aМикешин\$bМ. О.\$gМихаил Осипович\$f1836 – 1896\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠Тысячелетию России≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, памятник\$yВеликий Новгород, города
EX 4
245 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936\$12352#\$aАвтобиографические повести
305 1#\$aСм. также под названиями отдельных повестей\$bГорький, Максим, 1868 – 1936. Детство\$bГорький, Максим, 1868 – 1936. В людях\$bГорький, Максим, 1868 – 1936. Мои университеты
540 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aДетство
540 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aВ людях

540 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aМои университеты

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.
2009	Change to status: A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields.
2012	Text errata.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2024	Text edit.

541 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/title for the work entity related to the access point in field 241.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
541	RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	O
t	Title		MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
p	Precision on Relationship	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O

7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 231 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 541, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1. Subject subdivisions are carried in the embedded title field.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data. (Control subfields defined for the 200, 210, 215, 220, 230, 231 or 232 fields are not embedded in a \$1 subfield.) A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

If the particular relationship between the 2-- access point and the 541 related access point is not one of those for which a code value is defined in the relationship code in subfield \$5/2, the precision designation of a relationship in textual form may be provided in control subfield \$0. Note, users of standard subfield technique may for the designation of a relationship between works and/or expressions in textual form, use subfield \$p.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements.

When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

\$p Precision on Relationship

The designation of a relationship between works and/or expressions in textual form.

This subfield is used only for descriptive cataloguing and contains a term from a controlled vocabulary that specifies the relationship given in the control subfield \$5.

Subfield \$p follows the control subfield \$5 and cannot be present without it.

Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the system from which the term is derived.

When \$2 is used to identify the source of the term used for subfield \$p, enter it directly after this subfield; when it is used to identify the subject system, enter it at the end of all subfields.

Mandatory if \$p is present.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The meaning of the relationship code (control subfield \$5/2) and the additional relationship designation in textual form (subfield \$p) are used for relationship information in the authority data display.

Related Fields

241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
441 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
741 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1 Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7752996\$1200#1\$aДаргомыжский\$bА. С.\$f1813-1869\$gАлександр Сергеевич\$1231##\$aБог помочь вам!...\$сроманс
541 ##\$5xxa\$1200#1\$aПушкин\$bА. С.\$f1799-1837\$gАлександр Сергеевич\$1231##\$a19 октября 1827
Romance “Бог помочь вам!...” by Alexander Dargomyzhsky based on the poem “19 октября 1827” by Alexander Pushkin.
EX 2 Embedded fields technique
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\773529\$1200#1\$aБулгаков\$gМихаил Афанасьевич\$bМ. А.\$f1891–1940\$1231##\$aМастер и Маргарита\$сроман
541 ##>\$5xxc\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aПетров\$bА. П.\$скомпозитор\$f1930-2006\$gАндрей Павлович\$1231##\$aМастер и Маргарита\$ссимфония-фантазия
541 ##\$5xxc\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aВиктюк\$bР.Г.\$f1936-\$gРоман Григорьевич\$4300\$1231##\$aМастер и Маргарита, или Сны Ивана Бездомного\$сспектакль
541 ##\$5xxc\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aВайда\$bА.\$f1926-\$gАнджей\$4300\$1231##\$aПилат и другие\$скинофильм
Novel “Мастер и Маргарита” by Mikhail Bulgakov and three other works based on the novel – symphony “Мастер и Маргарита” by Andrey Petrov, play “Мастер и Маргарита, или Сны Ивана Бездомного” by Roman Viktyuk and film “Пилат и другие” by Andrzej Wajda.
EX 3 Standard fields technique
241 #1\$3FRBNF12223382\$aDufy, Raoul (1877-1953)\$tIllustrations pour “Le Bestiaire” de Guillaume Apollinaire
541 #1\$3FRBNF12209476\$5xxg\$pillustre\$2RDA-FR\$aApollinaire, Guillaume (1880-1918)\$t≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠ bestiaire
The relationship between the woodcut plates by Raoul Dufy illustrating a collection of poems by Apollinaire and the work of Apollinaire. Subfields \$5, \$p, and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.
EX 4A Standard fields technique
231 ##\$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠gattopardo\$сfilm
541 #1\$3FRBNF12295040\$5xxa\$pEst une adaptation dans un autre mode de création de\$2RDA-FR\$aTomasi di Lampedusa, Giuseppe (1896-1957)\$t≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠gattopardo
The relationship between the motion picture directed by Luchino Visconti and the novel on which it was based, described according to the RDA-FR cataloguing code in the main catalogue of the National Library of France. Subfields \$5, \$p, and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.
EX 4B Standard fields technique
231 ##\$aGattopardo\$сMotion picture
541 #1\$3LoCno2015015062\$5xxa\$pmotion picture adaptation of work\$2RDA\$aTomasi di Lampedusa, Giuseppe, 1896-1957\$tGattopardo
The same relationship described according to the RDA cataloguing code in the main catalogue of the Library of Congress. Subfields \$5, \$p, and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.
EX 5 Standard fields technique
241 #1\$3FRBNF11926939\$aTournier, Michel (1924-2016)\$tVendredi ou La vie sauvage
541 #1\$3FRBNF11964570\$5xxa\$pEst une adaptation pour la jeunesse dans le même mode de création de\$2RDA-FR \$aTournier, Michel (1924-2016)\$tVendredi ou Les limbes du Pacifique

The novel for children is adapted from “Vendredi ou les limbes du Pacifique”. The adaptation has been made by the author of the original work. Subfields \$5, \$p, and \$2 precede all alphabetical subfields.

History

2012	New field.
2020	Added \$4 editorial updated see table control subfield update 2019.
2021	New subfield \$p, examples and text edit.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

542 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/title related to the access point in field 241.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
542	RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name [Work]	NR	MA
t	Title [Work]		MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O

z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
p	Precision on Relationship	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 232 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 542, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1. Subject subdivisions are carried in the embedded title field.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data. (Control subfields defined for the 200, 210, 215, 220, 230, 231 or 232 fields are not embedded in a \$1 subfield.) A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

If the particular relationship between the 2-- access point and the 541 related access point is not one of those for which a code value is defined in the relationship code in subfield \$5/2, the precision designation of a relationship in textual form may be provided in control subfield \$0. Note, users of standard subfield technique may for the designation of a relationship between works and/or expressions in textual form, use subfield \$p.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name [Work]

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements.

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title [Work]

Title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements. When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 241 is used.

Mandatory.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e. Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f. Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m. Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communicate on in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression.

The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$p Precision on Relationship

The designation of a relationship between works and/or expressions in textual form.

This subfield is used only for descriptive cataloguing and contains a term from a controlled vocabulary that specifies the relationship given in the control subfield \$5.

Subfield \$p follows the control subfield \$5 and cannot be present without it.

Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form for the system from which the term is derived.

When \$2 is used to identify the source of the term used for subfield \$p, enter it directly after this subfield; when it is used to identify the subject system, enter it at the end of all subfields.

Mandatory if \$p is present.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The meaning of the relationship code (control subfield \$5/2) and the additional relationship designation in textual form (subfield \$p) are used for relationship information in the authority data display.

Related Fields

242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
442 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
742 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Examples

EX 1
242 ##\$1001<AR_ID for the work>\$1200#1\$aМусоргский\$bМ. П.\$f1839-1881\$gМодест Петрович\$1241###\$aБорис Годунов\$слибретто\$o1872
542 ##\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$1200#1\$aМусоргский\$bМ. П.\$f1839-1881\$gМодест Петрович\$1241###\$aБорис Годунов\$слибретто\$mфранц.\$wЛ. Лалюа
542 ##\$3<AR_ID for the expression>\$1200#1\$aМусоргский\$bМ. П.\$f1839-1881\$gМодест Петрович\$1241###\$aБорис Годунов\$опера\$wН.А.Римский-Корсаков
The expression (field 242) is the libretto by M. Musorgsky to his opera “Boris Godunov” (revised version of 1872). First 542 contains access point for the expression – translation of the libretto into French (author of translation – Lui Lalua), i.e. relationship is established between expressions of the same work. Second 542 contains access point for the expression – version of the opera arranged by N. Rimsky-Korsakov (relationship is established between expressions of different works). In both cases 542 subfield \$3 includes Authority Record Identifier for the expression.

History

2012	New field.
2021	New subfield \$p, examples and text edit.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

543 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the conventional name/title for legal and religious texts related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
543	RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of the Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
t	Uniform Title	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Form of Conventional Name/Title
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Specifies the Form of Conventional Name/Title

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value 2: Name entered under other form

Used for church names.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy.

Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions.

Repeatable.

\$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued.

If necessary, subfield \$b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or \$c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used. Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing

Date of legal issue or version when added to the authorized conventional name access point.

The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the authorized conventional name access point. Repeatable.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the authorized conventional name access point is being applied is only a part of the text named in the access point.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the authorized conventional name access point.

Repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$t Conventional Title

Authorized form of a conventional title for the text being catalogued.

The term(s) of the title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the conventional name access point which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the conventional name access point that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit.

545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/collective title related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
545	RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Collective Title	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 235 for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 545, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**\$a Name**

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$t Collective Title

Title proper of a bibliographic item containing several works by one or more authors issued in a single volume or uniform set.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/collective title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/collective title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

EX 1
245 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aPlays
545 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks
EX 2
240 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936\$1230##\$aДетство
545 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936\$12351#\$aАвтобиографические повести
EX 3
250 ##\$aКнижная иллюстрация\$yГермания\$z16 в.
545 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66314598\$1200#1\$aГольбейн\$gГанс\$bГ.\$f1497 – 1543\$12351#\$aИллюстрации к Ветхому Завету
545 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661309695\$1200#1\$aАльтдорфер\$bЭ.\$gЭрхард\$f1490 – 1562\$12351#\$aИллюстрации к Библии
EX 4
250 ##\$aХоровая музыка русская\$z18 в.

545 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66156841\$1200#1\$aБортнянский\$gДмитрий Степанович\$bД. C.\$f1751 – 1825\$12351#\$aХоровая музыка

History

2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2009	Change to status: A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields.
2024	Text edit.

550 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the topical subject or a subject category related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
550	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	R	O
a	Topical Subject or Subject Category	NR	MA
n	Subject Category Code	N	O
m	Subject Category Subdivision Code	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Topical Subject or Subject Category

Term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points or subject categories used.

Not repeatable.

\$n Subject Category Code

Coded representation of a subject category.

Repeatable.

\$m Subject Category Subdivision Code

Coded representation of a subject category subdivision.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) or material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents, or a term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the \$a subfield. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1
250 ##\$aElectronic data processing\$xData preparation
550 ##\$aInput design, Computers
EX 2
200 #0\$aВильгельм\$dI Молчаливый\$спринц Оранский\$f1533 – 1584
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66254765\$aНидерландская буржуазная революция\$z1566 – 1609
EX 3
250 ##\$aТабасаранский язык
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6612121\$5g\$aИберийско-кавказские языки
EX 4
210 02\$a≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠St.Petersburger Zeitung≠NSB≠”≠NSE≠, газета\$cСанкт-Петербург, город
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66765267\$5g\$aНемецкие газеты\$уРоссия
EX 5
215 ##\$aКударо I, палеолитическая стоянка (Грузия)
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66871997\$5g\$aПалеолит\$уКавказ
EX 6
220 ##\$aВоронцовы-Дашковы\$срод
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66341021\$5g\$aДворянские роды\$уРоссия

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$m Subject category subdivision code.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$n Subject category code.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$x Topical subdivision or subject category subdivision text.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$a Topical subject or subject category.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name of a place and date of publication, production, performance, recording or provenance related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
560	RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)	NR	MA
b	State or Province, Etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, Etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date	R	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, Etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Country (Nation State)

Political unit where the state and nation are congruent.

Not repeatable.

\$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country.

Not repeatable.

\$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$d City, etc.

Name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one

For smaller unites, see \$k.

Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc.

Repeatable.

\$f Date

A date is a specific time that can be named.

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats.

\$g Season

Each of the four divisions of the year (spring, summer, autumn, and winter) marked by particular weather patterns.

Not repeatable.

\$h Occasion

A special or formal event.

Not repeatable.

\$i Final Date

Date on which something ends.

Not repeatable.

\$k Subsection of City, etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$n Extra-terrestrial Areas

Any extra-terrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$o Geographical Area

Larger area than country, such as world, hemisphere, continent.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

History

2001	New field.
2009	Changes in name and function.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$c Intermediate political jurisdiction.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: subfields \$e - \$o.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

580 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the form, genre and/or physical characteristics related to the access point in the 2-- field.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
580	RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Type of the Entity
	0	Work
	2	Manifestation
	3	Item
	#	Not defined

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Term in the form prescribed by the system of form access points used.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to the form access point to specify the aspect that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$brbpap
280 ##\$aMarbled papers
480 ##\$aMarble papers
580 ##\$5g\$a[Surface applications of paper]

580 ##\$5h\$aAntique marbled papers
580 ##\$5h\$aBritish marbled papers
580 ##\$5h\$aCocoa marbled papers
In the ACRL Thesaurus of Paper Terms, “Marbled papers” has a broader term, “Surface applications or paper” and several narrower terms, e.g., Antique marbled papers, etc.
EX 2
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aAdventure stories
480 ##\$aSuspense novels
480 ##\$aSwashbucklers
580 ##\$aThrillers
580 ##\$5h\$aDetective and mystery stories
580 ##\$5h\$aPicaresque literature
580 ##\$5h\$aRobinsonades
580 ##\$5h\$aRomantic suspense novels
In the Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc., “Adventure stories” has the related term “Thrillers” and many narrower terms, including “Robinsonades”.
EX 3
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
230 ##\$7ca0yba0y\$8ruseng\$a≠NSB≠’≠NSE≠Harry Potter and the Philosopher’s Stone≠NSB≠’≠NSE≠\$lкомпьютерная игра
580 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661388068\$5g\$aПриключенческие компьютерные игры
EX 4
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
280 ##\$aВидеокомпакт-диски
480 ##\$aКомпакт-диски видео
580 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661370327\$5g\$aКомпакт-диски

History

2001	New field.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Indicator 4.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

6-- SUBJECT ANALYSIS AND ENTITY HISTORY BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

Information that has a subject correspondence with the 2-- authorized access point of the record, these subject data being constructed according to various systems, both verbal and notational, as well as information on places and dates associated with the described entity, either this entity is a person, corporate body, family, work, or expression.

The following fields are defined:

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME
606 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL NAME
607 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
608 FORM OR GENRE OF WORK
610 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS
616 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
617 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
631 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
632 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY
641 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (WORK)
642 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (EXPRESSION)
675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)
676 DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (DDC)
680 LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION (LCC)
686 OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS

Notes on Field Contents

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2009	Changes in name and function.
2012	Change in name and function of a block, and subfield.
2016	Update.
2020	Update.

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Name of a person who is one of the subjects of the work, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

The access point is structured in the same form as the access points for persons responsible for the content of a work or an expression and recorded in fields 50-. Subfields \$a, \$b, \$c, \$d, \$f, \$g and \$p follow the same form as in field 50- and further explanation of the scope and content of these subfields can be found there.

In the field 600 terms may be added to a subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These and the order of all the subfields follow the rules of the subject system or thesaurus used by the agency preparing the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield Name	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
600	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name Other than Dates	NR	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name entered under forename or in direct order
	1	Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic etc.)

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the name is entered under the first occurring name (forename) or a name in direct order or whether it is entered under a surname, family name, patronymic or equivalent, usually with inversion.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name. It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Name Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office.

Repeatable for second and subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics. If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included.

The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should also be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form. All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required. Not repeatable.

\$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived.

It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the person for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	When a corporate body rather than a person is the subject, field 601 is used.
602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	When a family rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 602 is used.
607 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	Political jurisdictions represented by geographical names are entered in field 607 if they appear alone or subdivided only by subject terms.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1200#1\$aДонован\$gДжеймс\$1231##\$aНезнакомцы на мосту
600 1#\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661191908\$aАбель\$bP. И.\$f1903 - 1971\$gРудольф Иванович\$2nlr_sh
A subject access point assigned to the record for the work Донован Д. Незнакомцы на мосту (Strangers on a bridge, by James B. Donovan). The work is about the trial of Soviet colonel, Rudolf Abel in USA.
EX 2
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\77104297\$1200#1\$aБейр\$bX. де\$f1570-ок.1598\$gХеррит де\$4070\$1231##\$aАрктические плавание Виллема Баренца, 1594-1597 гг.
600 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66163782\$aБаренц\$bB.\$gВиллем\$f1550 - 1597\$xЭкспедиции\$z1594 - 1597\$2nlr_sh
A subject access point assigned to the record for the work Бейр, X. Арктические плавание Виллема Баренца, 1594-1597 гг. (Arctic Voyages of William Barentsz, by Gerrit De Veer).
EX 3
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7728031\$1200#1\$aБыков\$bД. А.\$f1967-\$спублицист\$gДмитрий Львович\$4070\$1231##\$aБулат Окуджава
600 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661499710\$aОкуджава\$bБ. III.\$gБулат Шалвович\$f1924 - 1997\$xБиография\$2nlr_sh

A subject access point assigned to the record for the work БЫКОВ, Д. А. Булат Окуджава. The work is about Bulat Okudzhava - Soviet and Russian poet, writer, musician, novelist.

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Name of a corporate body which is one of the subjects of the work, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

These access points are structured in the same form as corporate body name access points for bodies responsible for the contents of a work or an expression and recorded in fields 51-. Subfields \$a, \$b, \$c, \$d, \$e, \$f, \$g and \$h follow the same form as in field 51-, and further explanation of the scope and content of these subfields can be found there.

In the field 601 terms may be added to a subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These and the order of all the subfields follow the rules of the subject system or thesaurus used by the agency preparing the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
601	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision (or Name if Entered Under Place)	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of a Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Corporate Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name in inverted order
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body. If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name as follows:

Value 0: Name in inverted order

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name.

Value 1: Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place. According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions which are associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g., universities, learned societies, art galleries.

Value 2: Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision (or Name if Entered Under Place)

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place.

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable.

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of a Meeting

The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable.

\$e Location of Meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Meeting

The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable.

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

In an access point with an inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived.

It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the corporate body for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	When a person rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 600 is used.
602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	When a family rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 602 is used.
607 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	When the subject is a geographical name, field 607 is used.

Examples

EX 1

241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7729912\$1200#1\$aПетухов\$bЮ. Д.\$f1951-2009\$gЮрий Дмитриевич\$4070\$1231##\$aЧетвертая Мировая. Вторжение. Хроника оккупации
601 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661404743\$aОрганизация Североатлантического договора\$xВоенная политика\$z21 в.\$2nlr_sh
A subject access point (North Atlantic Treaty Organization – Military politics – 21 cent.) assigned to the record for the work Петухов, Ю. Д. Четвертая Мировая. Вторжение. Хроника оккупации. The work is about war in Yugoslavia in 1999.
EX 2
241 ##\$1200#1\$aГервиц\$bМ. В.\$gМайя Владимировна\$4070\$1231##\$aЛео фон Кленце и Новый Эрмитаж в контексте европейского музейного строительства
600 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6674789\$aКленце\$gЛео фон\$bЛ. фон\$f1784 - 1864\$2nlr_sh
601 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661356710\$aГосударственный Эрмитаж\$cСанкт-Петербург, город\$xАрхитектура\$2nlr_sh
The work <i>Гервиц, М. В. Лео фон Кленце и Новый Эрмитаж в контексте европейского музейного строительства</i> is about Leo von Klenze, master of museum ensemble, who developed a project of the New Hermitage, the first public art museum in Russia. Two subject access points assigned to the record represent personal name of the architect - <i>Leo von Klenze (1784 - 1864)</i> and corporate name used as a subject – <i>State Hermitage (Saint-Petersburg) -- Architecture</i> .

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Name of a family which is one of the subjects of the work, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

These access points are structured in the same form as name access points for a family responsible for the content of a work or an expression and recorded in fields 52-. Subfield \$a includes the name of the family. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$d and \$f.

This field can contain more than the name of the family in subfield \$a. In addition, terms may be added to the subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These follow the rules of the subject system used by the agency preparing the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
602	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
o	International Standard Name Identifier	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The name of the family in access point form. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$o International Standard Name Identifier

The ISNI or other international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived.

Not repeatable. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the family for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	When a person rather than a family name is the subject, field 600 is used.
601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	When a corporate body rather than a family is the subject, field 601 is used.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7735973\$1200#1\$aКлимова\$bМ. А.\$gМарина Александровна\$4070\$1231##\$a”Край отеческий...”
602 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661439993\$aБаратынские\$срoд\$2nlr_sh

A subject access point Баратынские (род) (Baratynskiye (family)) assigned to the work Климова, М. А. “Край отеческий...”. The work is about the history of Baratynsky’s family and family estate in the village of Mara.

EX 2

241 ##\$1200#1\$aБлагово\$bН. В.\$gНикита Владимирович\$4070\$1231##\$aСемья Рерихов в гимназии К.И. Мая

601 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661465837\$aСанкт-Петербургская мужская гимназия и реальное училище К.И. Мая\$2nlr_sh

602 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661347942\$aРерихи\$срод\$2nlr_sh

The work is about the school period of life of Nicholas Roerich, his two brothers and sons in the Karl May private gymnasium school in Saint-Petersburg. Two subject access point are assigned to the work – corporate name (name of the school) and family name used as subject – Рерихи (род) (Roerichs (family)).

EX 3

602 ##\$aSwinnerton\$cfamily\$jPeriodicals\$21c

A subject access point assigned to a document entitled Swinnerton family history : heraldic and genealogical studies of the Swinnerton family.

EX 4

602 ##\$aArchaemenids\$cdynasty\$f559-330 B.C.

EX 5

602 ##\$312128766\$aChoiseul\$cfamille de\$311932940\$xPatrimoine\$2rameau

In the database, a pre-coordinated subject system code (RAMEAU) is used, so the \$3 is repeated and one authority record number is given for each part of the access point.

History

2012	New field.
2016	Update.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

606 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Common noun or noun phrase used as a subject access point.

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject access points used.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
606	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	System Code	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Level of the Subject Item
	0	No level specified
	1	Primary term
	2	Secondary term
	#	No information available
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Level of the Subject Item

The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. A term is considered primary (value “1”) if it covers the main focus or subject of the material. A term covering a less important aspect is considered secondary (value “2”). Value “0” is used when no decision has been made as to whether the term is primary or secondary.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points used. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the topical access point to specify the aspect that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the topical access point to specify a place in relation to the topic that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the topical access point to specify the period of time in relation to the topic that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived.

It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the topical subject for which an access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

607 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	Field 607 is used instead of 606 when the subject access point is a geographical name.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1200#1\$aШаманов\$bН. П.\$4070\$gНиколай Павлович\$1231##\$aЦивилизация, энергетика, климат в XXI веке
606 0#\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66175552\$aКлимат\$xВлияние антропоических факторов\$2nlr_sh
606 0#\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66623030\$aКлимат\$xВлияние Мирового океана\$2nlr_sh
Topical subject access points (Climate – Human impact and Climate – Impact of the World Ocean) assigned to the work Шаманов, Н. П. Цивилизация, энергетика, климат в XXI веке (Civilization, energetics, climate in XX cent., by N.Shamanov).
EX 2
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7723650\$1200#1\$aШолохов\$bМ. А.\$списатель\$f1905-1984\$gМихаил Александрович\$1231##\$aТихий Дон\$сроман
606 1#\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661431401\$aДонское казачество\$xИстория\$z20 в.\$2nlr_sh
606 1#\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6659821\$aПервая мировая война\$z1914 - 1918\$yРоссия\$2nlr_sh
Topical subject access points (Don Cossacks – History – 20 cent. and World War I – 1914 – 1918 – Russia) assigned to the work Шолохов, М.А. Тихий Дон (And Quiet Flows the Don, by M.Sholokhov).

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

607 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Geographical name used as a subject access point.

This field will contain data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject access points used.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
607	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The geographical name in the form prescribed by the system of authority access points used. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to specify the aspect that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to further specify a place that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to specify the period in time in relation to the name that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived.

It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the geographical name for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	Political jurisdictions used as subjects are entered in field 601.
617 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	A structured access point for places relating to the subject of the work is entered in field 617.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7735973\$1200#1\$aКлимкова\$bМ. А.\$gМарина Александровна\$4070\$1231##\$a”Край отеческий...”
602 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661439993\$aБаратынские (род)\$2nlr_sh
607 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661439994\$aМара, усадьба (Тамбовская область)\$xИстория\$2nlr_sh
Geographical subject access point Мара, усадьба (Тамбовская область) – История (Mara, estate (Tambov region) - History) assigned to the work Климкова, М. А. “Край отеческий...”. The work is about the history of Baratynsky’s family estate in the village of Mara.
EX 2
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7786976\$aФедоров\$bА. В.\$сполитолог\$gАндрей Владимирович\$4070\$1231##\$aПравовой статус Крыма. Правовой статус Севастополя
607 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661284579\$aКрым (Украина)\$xПравовой статус\$2nlr_sh
607 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661284580\$aСевастополь, город (Крым)\$xПравовой статус\$2nlr_sh
Geographical subject access points Крым (Украина) – Правовой статус (Crimea (Ukraine) – Legal status) and Севастополь, город (Крым) – Правовой статус (Sevastopol, town (Crimea) – Legal status) assigned to the work Федоров, А. В. Правовой статус Крыма. Правовой статус Севастополя (Legal Status of Crimea. Legal Status of Sevastopol, by A. Fyodorov).
EX 3
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7752751\$aСоколова\$bТ.\$с историк-краевед\$gТатьяна\$4070\$1231##\$aСуздаль. Кидекша
607 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661068678\$aСуздаль, город (Владимирская область)\$xИстория\$2nlr_sh
607 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661469314\$aКидекша, село (Владимирская область)\$xИстория\$2nlr_sh
Geographical subject access points Суздаль, город (Владимирская область) – История (Suzdal, town (Vladimir region) – History) and Кидекша, село (Владимирская область) – История (Kideksha, village (Vladimir region) – History) assigned to the work Соколова, Т. Суздаль. Кидекша (Suzdal. Kideksha, by T. Sokolova). The work is about history of two towns in Vladimir region

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

608 FORM OR GENRE OF WORK

Field Definition and Scope

Term for a form or a genre indicating characteristic or category to which a work or expression of work belongs.

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of form access point used.

Multiple forms of work are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
608	FORM OR GENRE OF WORK	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The term in the form prescribed by the system of form or genre access points used. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield \$u may therefore be used to link to form and genre terms in an external system. Not repeatable. (EX 5)

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the form or genre access point is derived.

It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for form or gender access point. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record identifier to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinated syntax.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities Format
140 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT AND FORM OF WORK
UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format
608 FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS ACCESS POINT

Examples

EX 1
140 ##\$ate
241 ##\$3FRBNF11925504\$aStendhal (1783-1842)\$tLa chartreuse de Parme
608 ##\$3FRBNF11940505\$aRoman\$2rameau-Genre
The cataloguing institution has chosen to indicate the genre of the work by using a term from a controlled list managed as a thesaurus, as well as with a genre entity.
EX 2
140 ##\$ate
241 ##\$3FRBNF11896014\$aChandler, Raymond (1888-1959)\$tThe big sleep
608 ##\$3FRBNF11932793\$aRoman policier\$2rameau-Genre
EX 3
140 ##\$atl
231 ##\$8frefre\$aConvention sur la protection des Alpes\$d1991-11-07
370 ##\$aTraité multilatéral qui a pour objectif à long terme la sauvegarde de l'écosystème naturel des Alpes et leur développement durable
608 ##\$3FRBNF119483336\$aTraités\$2rameau-Forme
731 ##\$8freger\$aÜbereinkommen zum Schutz der Alpen\$d1991-11-07
731 ##\$8freita\$aConvenzione per la protezione delle Alpi\$d1991-11-07
731 ##\$8freslv\$aKonvencija o varstvu Alp\$d1991-11-07
EX 4
140 ##\$amv
241 ##\$3FRBNF11893887\$aBrel, Jacques (1929-1978)\$tAmsterdam
608 ##\$3FRBNF13319048\$aChanson\$2rameau-Genre
EX 5
140 ##\$aic
231 ##\$aPaths of glory\$cfilm
608 ##\$uhttps://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q7141724\$aFilm de guerre\$2Wikidata
The cataloguing institution has chosen to indicate the genre of the work by linking to a URI.

History

2020	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

610 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS

Field Definition and Scope

Subject terms that are not derived from controlled subject access point lists.

Terms belonging to structured subject thesauri should be coded in fields 600-607 with the appropriate \$2 System Code.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
610	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS	R	O
a	Subject Term	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Level of the Subject Item
	0	No level specified
	1	Primary term
	2	Secondary term
	#	No information available
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Level of the Subject Item

The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. A term is considered primary (value “1”) if it covers the main focus or subject of the material. A term covering a less important aspect is considered secondary (value “2”). Value “0” is used when no decision has been made as to whether the term is primary or secondary.

Subfields Description

\$a Subject Term

Repeatable when more than one term is assigned for the item.

Related Fields

600-607 Subject Access Points for a Work fields

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\772621\$1200#1\$aФрейд\$b3.\$f1856-1939\$gЗигмунд\$1231##\$aПо ту сторону принципа удовольствия
610 0#\$aПсихология\$aПсихика\$aПсихические процессы\$aУдовольствия (психол.)\$a Массовидные явления психики\$aПсихоанализ
Subject terms assigned for the work Фрейд, З. По ту сторону принципа удовольствия (Beyond the Pleasure Principle, by Sigmund Freud) – Psychology; Mentality; Mental processes; Pleasures (psych.), etc.

EX 2
241 ###\$1200#1\$aПинкер\$bС.\$gСтивен\$4070\$1231##\$aЯзык как инстинкт
610 1#\$aанглийский язык\$aязыковые системы\$aкогнитивистика\$aкоммуникация\$aповеденческая теория\$aбихевиоризм\$aХомский Ноам\$aонтогенез речи\$aязыковой механизм\$aпиджин \$апсихолингвистика\$aлингвистическая прагматика
610 2#\$aорфография\$aграмматика\$aчасти речи\$aлексикология\$aморфология \$асинтаксис\$aфонетика
Subject terms assigned for the work <i>Пинкер, С. Язык как инстинкт</i> (The Language Instinct, by Steven Pinker). The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. Primary descriptors include: <i>English language, Language systems, Cognitive science, Communication, Behavioral theory, Behaviorism, etc.</i> Secondary descriptors: <i>Orthography; Parts of speech; Lexicology, etc.</i>

History

2012	New field.

616 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition and Scope

Trademark which is one of the subjects of the work, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

This field is intended for recording access points for trademarks used as subjects of a work. Terms may be added to a subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These and the order of all the subfields follow the rules of the subject system or thesaurus used by the agency preparing the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
616	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

The trademark name in access point form. Not repeatable

\$f Dates

The dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers. Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived.

It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the trademark for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

617 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Structured access point for places relating to the subject of the work.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
617	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)	R	MA
b	State or Province, Etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, Etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date	R	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, Etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Areas	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Country (Nation State)

Country. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$b State or Province, Etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable.

\$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$d City, Etc.

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see \$k). Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc. Repeatable.

\$f Date

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats.

\$g Season

Not repeatable.

\$h Occasion

Not repeatable.

\$i Final Date

Not repeatable.

\$k Subsection of City, Etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$n Extraterrestrial Areas

Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$o Geographical Areas

Includes larger area than country, such as world, hemisphere, continent.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used.

\$2 Source

The source of the terms used for subfields \$a – \$d and \$k – \$n when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes in MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions are recommended. If no code is available, an abbreviation of the full title of the source may be used.

Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the hierarchical geographical name for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g., Country, Province, County, City; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g., City alone, depending both on institutional practice and the fulness of the provenance information available.

Subfields \$a, \$c, \$k, \$m, \$n and \$o are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example \$oAmericas\$oNorth America\$aCanada. When used, \$e will normally be the last-cited alphabetic subfield.

For subfield \$2 System Code, if no approved code for the thesaurus, etc., exists, abbreviate its name using ISO 4:1997 – Rules for the abbreviation of title words and titles of publications.

Related Fields

607 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject access points used, including topical, geographical and chronological subdivisions.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7794142\$1200#1\$aПирютко\$bЮ. М.\$f1946-\$gЮрий Минаевич\$4070\$1231##\$aПо Малой Садовой: путь через три столетия
617 ##\$dСанкт-Петербург, город\$kМалая Садовая улица
Structured access point assigned for the work <i>Пирютко, Ю. М. По Малой Садовой: путь через три столетия</i> which is about the history of Malaya Sadovaya street in Saint Petersburg
EX 2
241 ##\$1200#1\$aКоротков\$bЮ. Т.\$gЮрий Терентьевич\$1231##\$aВарманкасси - Атыково - Большое Маклашкино при корабельной роце
617 ##\$aРоссия\$bЧувашская Республика\$cМарийинско-Посадский район\$dБольшое Маклашкино, деревня
617 ##\$aРоссия\$bЧувашская Республика\$cМарийинско-Посадский район\$dМалое Маклашкино, деревня
Structured access points assigned for the work <i>Коротков, Ю. Т. Варманкасси - Атыково - Большое Маклашкино при корабельной роце</i> . The work is about the history of villages Bolshoye Maklashkino and Maloye Maklashkino in Marrinsko-Posadsky region of Chuvashia (Russia).

History

2012	New field.
2022	Renamed \$o.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

631 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Title access point for a work which is one of the subjects of the work for which the record is established.

Field includes the title of a work in any form of medium, e.g. stage plays, radio programmes, etc.

This field will normally contain an authorized access point for a uniform title, since most other titles assigned as subjects will be treated using 641 or 642. Any anonymous work which is the subject of the work for which the record is established will be entered here. Further information and examples on the contents of subfields for authorized access point for uniform titles are found at field 231 and 232. A title proper which is to be entered in this field should be entered in subfield \$a including in that subfield any other title information as necessary. Field 631 is structured like field 231.

This field has been designed for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model for work.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
631	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)	R	O
a	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title

The title by which the work is known. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the item for which a subject access point is made is only a part of the work named in subfield \$a. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the item for which a subject access point is made is only a part of the work named in subfield \$a. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

\$f Original Language of the Work

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the title to specify the topic that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a title to specify a place in relation to it that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a title to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the work for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one authority record number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Related Fields

641 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (WORK)	
642 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (EXPRESSION)	When the subject is an author/title, fields 641 or 642 are used in catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, field 604 otherwise.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7746589\$1200#1\$aКулиев\$bЭ. Р. оглы\$f1975-\$gЭльмир Рафаэль оглы\$4070\$1231##\$aНа пути к Корану
631 ##\$aКоран\$xИсследование текста\$2nlr_sh
Title of the work (Quran) with topical subheading (Text Analysis) used as a subject access point for the work <i>Кулиев, Э. Р. На пути к Корану (Way to Quran, by E. Kuliev)</i> .
EX 2
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\771622\$1200#0\$aОпо\$f1931-1990\$4070\$1231##\$aСияние луны
631 ##\$aУпанишады\$xТолкование\$2nlr_sh
Titles of works (Russian fairy tales Shemyakin court and Yorsh Yershovich), with topical subheadings Comparative studies used as subject access point for the work <i>Имаева, Г. З. Народная сказка и ее литературные переложения (Folk tale and its literary adaptation, by G. Imayeva)</i> .
EX 3
241 ##\$1200#1\$aИмаева\$bГ. З.\$gГульнара Зайнетдиновна\$4070\$1231##\$aНародная сказка и ее литературные переложения
631 ##\$aШемякин суд\$сказка\$xСравнительное изучение\$2nlr_sh
631 ##\$aЕрш Ершович\$сказка\$xСравнительное изучение\$2nlr_sh
606 1#\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66106988\$aРусский фольклор и литература\$2nlr_sh

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

632 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Title access point for an expression of a work which is one of the subjects of the work for which the record is established.

The field 632 is structured like field 232 and like the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format blok 4--, Embedded fields technique or Standard subfields technique.

This field has been designed for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model for work.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
632	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
a	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

Data Subfields

In the list of subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording “[Work]”. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with “[Expression]”.

\$a Title [Work]

The title by which the work is known. When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs. Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

The language of the expression. Not repeatable. If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived. The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

The original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

The instrumentation, etc., of the expression. Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work. It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. Not repeatable. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the expression for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used to record the name of an expression of a work used as a subject, when it is represented by a name/title access point. When using the embedded fields technique, the title of the work is recorded in an embedded 231 field. If the subject is not a work but an expression, a 232 field is embedded. The subfields \$2, \$3 and any subject subdivisions (\$j, \$x, \$y, \$z) required should also be carried in the embedded 231 or 232 field. The name of the author is carried in an embedded 2-- fields.

When using the standard subfields technique, the title of the work, the name of the author and any subject subdivisions are recorded in different subfields.

Related Fields

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	
601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	
602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	
631 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)	When a personal name, corporate body, family or title alone is the subject, the above 6-- fields are used. When the subject is an author/title, fields 641 or 642 are used in catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, field 604 otherwise.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$10013RU\NLR\AUTH\7772895\$1200#1\$aГилемшин\$bФ. Ф.\$gФлер Фоатович\$4070\$1231##\$aОсобенности перевода “Тысяча и одной ночи” на татарский язык (язык и стиль)
632 ##\$aТысяча и одна ночь\$mtатарский\$wФ.Х.Халиди\$2nlr_sh
Title of an expression (Tatar translation of One Thousand and One Nights is one of subjects of the work Гилемшин, Ф. Ф. Особенности перевода “Тысяча и одной ночи” на татарский язык (язык и стиль) (Tatar translation of “One Thousand and One Nights” (Language and Style), by F. Gilemshin).

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY

Field Definition and Scope

Information on the place(s) and/or date(s) associated with entities defined in 2-- fields.

The field applies to all types of entities. It enables the establishment of access points for the places and dates associated with the described entity. The field may be repeated if one or more places and/or dates of different types apply to the described entity. However, it may contain only one place or one (or many) date(s).

The field contains a place name in a hierarchical form, i.e., country, state and city, or in a non hierarchical form, i.e., city alone, formulated in accordance with the rules in use by the agency which creates it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
640	PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY	R	O
a	Country	NR	O
b	State, Region, Etc.	NR	O
c	County	NR	O
d	City	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date of Beginning or Unique Date	NR	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Information
	#	No specification
	1	Beginning of existence (or birth)
	2	End of existence (or death)
	3	Activity
	4	Residence
	5	Creation of intellectual or artistic content
	6	First presentation to a public
	0	Other
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Information

Value #: No specification

Applies to topical subject.

Value 1: Beginning of existence (or birth)

Applies to personal, corporate body, territorial or geographic and family name, trademark and title.

Value 2: End of existence (or death)

Applies to personal, corporate body, territorial or geographic and family name, trademark and title.

Value 3: Activity

Applies to personal, corporate body and family name.

Value 4: Residence

Applies to personal, corporate body and family name.

Value 5: Creation of intellectual or artistic content

Applies to title.

Value 6: First presentation to a public

Applies to title.

Value 0: Other

If present, the field should contain subfield \$0 specifying, in a textual form, the type of place and/or dates associated with the name and/or title.

Subfields Description**\$a Country**

The country may be recorded either with a country code taken from two-character codes of ISO-3166 (EX [1](#)) or in textual form (EX [4](#)). Not repeatable.

\$b State, Region, Etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country.

Not repeatable.

\$c County

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d City

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one.

Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc.

Repeatable.

\$f Date of Beginning or Unique Date

Not repeatable.

\$g Season

Not repeatable.

\$h Occasion

Not repeatable.

\$i Final Date

Not repeatable.

Subfields \$f and \$i fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Era (Mandatory)	1	0
Date	8	1-8
Date reliability	1	9

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents**\$i/0 Era (Mandatory)**

1-character code indicates the era associated with the entity described.

#	CE
-	BC

\$i/1-8 Date

8-numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

If any digit in a year, month, and/or day is unknown, the character position should be blank.

\$i/9 Date Reliability

1-character code indicates the reliability of the date.

#	certain date
?	uncertain date

Related Fields

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE
341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER
560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1
102 ##\$aUS\$aDE
200 #1\$aArendt\$bHannah\$f1906-1975
340 ##\$aGerman by birth. Naturalized American in 1951
640 1#\$aDE\$dHanover\$f#19061014#
640 2#\$aUS\$dNew York\$f#19751204#
EX 2
200 #1\$aVirgile\$f0070-0019 av. J-C.

340 ##\$aNé à Andes (aujourd'hui Pietole) en 70 avant J.-C. et mort à Brindisi en 19 avant J.-C.
640 1#\$aItalie\$dPietole\$f-00701015#
640 2#\$aItalie\$dBrindisi\$f-00190921#
EX 3
200 #1\$aLucrèce\$f0098?-055 av. J.-C.
640 1#\$f-0098#####?
640 2#\$f-0055#####
EX 4
200 #1\$aBalthus\$f1908-2001
300 0#\$aPeintre. Directeur de la Villa Médicis à Rome (1961-1978)
640 1#\$f#19080229#
640 2#\$f#20010218#
640 4#\$aItalie\$dRome\$f#1961#####i#1978#####
EX 5
200 #1\$aChevalier\$bAndré\$f1660?-1747
340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire ; imprimeur ordinaire du Roi [de France] (et du conseil provincial de Luxembourg) (1686-1698) ; de la ville (et du collège de la Compagnie de Jésus) ; de Sa Majesté Impériale et Catholique (1721-1740) ; de Sa Majesté la Reine de Hongrie et de Bohême (1741-1747)\$aNatif de Bourg-en-Bresse, il fait son apprentissage chez Jean Antoine, à Metz, où il est reçu maître le 24 mai 1685. Il s'établit à Luxembourg en juin 1686 à l'invitation de l'intendant français d'occupation et sous garantie d'exclusivité pour 20 ans. À la suite de l'évacuation de Luxembourg par les troupes françaises (janv. 1698), il perd son monopole puis ses titres (décret impérial du 16 mai 1716), mais un privilège d'imprimeur impérial lui est octroyé par décret du 15 janv. 1721. Conserve, jusqu'en 1697 au moins, une boutique de libraire à Metz. Publie, à partir de 1704, la "Clef du cabinet des princes de l'Europe" sous le pseudonyme de "Jacques Le Sincère, à l'enseigne de la Vérité" et sans indication de lieu. Âgé de 87 ans lors de son décès
341 ##\$aMetz\$b1685-1686
341 ##\$aLuxembourg\$b1686-1747\$cAu carré de (ou : Dans) la rue Neuve (, proche les Révérends pères jésuites)\$cPlace Neuve\$cPrès la place d'Armes
640 1#\$dBourg-en-Bresse\$f#1660#####?
640 2#\$dLuxembourg\$f#17470410#
640 3#\$dMetz\$f#16850524#i#1686#####
640 3#\$dLuxembourg\$f#168606#####i#1747#####
EX 6
230 ##\$aFloire et Blancheflor
300 0#\$aPetit récit idyllique en vers du milieu du XIIe s. (ca 1120), d'après le conte des "Mille et une nuits" intitulé "Neema et Noam"
640 5#\$f#1120#####?
EX 7
230 ##\$aLettres portugaises
300 0#\$aRecueil de cinq lettres parues en 1669 et présentées comme une traduction du portugais. Longtemps attribué à Mariana Alcoforado. Attribué depuis 1962 à Guilleragues
640 6#\$f#1669#####
EX 8

240 ##\$1200#1\$aBerlioz\$bHector\$f1803-1869\$1230##\$aLes Troyens\$sH 133A
300 0#\$aOpéra en 5 actes et 9 tableaux, en deux parties : “La Prise de Troie” (actes I et II), “Les Troyens à Carthage” (actes III, IV et V)
300 0#\$aDates de composition : avril 1856-1858
300 0#\$aDates de révision : nos 33 et 40 (1859), no 44 (1859 ou 1860), no 52 (janvier 1860)
300 0#\$a1re éd. privée (chant et piano) : Paris : imprimé par Thierry frères, [1862]
300 0#\$a1re représentation (“La Prise de Troie”) : Karlsruhe, Hoftheater, 6 décembre 1890. 1re représentation (“Les Troyens à Carthage”) : Paris, Théâtre-Lyrique, 4 novembre 1863
640 5#\$f#185604####\$i#1858#####
640 0#\$0Révision\$f#1859#####\$i#1860#####
640 0#\$0Première édition\$f#1862#####
640 6#\$dKarlsruhe\$eHoftheater\$f#18901206#
640 6#\$dParis\$eThéâtre Lyrique\$f#18631104#
EX 9
240 ##\$1200#1\$aSchein\$bJohann Hermann\$f1586-1630\$1230##\$aBeati omnes qui timent Dominum
300 0#\$aComposé à l’occasion du mariage de Heinrich Höpner et Veronica Jordan
300 0#\$a1re exécution : Leipzig, 16 octobre 1620
300 0#\$a1re éd. : Leipzig : J. Glück, 1620
640 5#\$f#1620#####\$hMariage de Heinrich Höpner et Veronica Jordan
640 6#\$dLeipzig\$f#16201016#
640 0#\$0Première édition\$dLeipzig\$f#1620#####
EX 10
240 ##\$1200#1\$aCostanzi\$bGiovanni Battista\$f1704-1778\$1230##\$aCarlo Magno
300 0#\$aFesta teatrale en 3 actes
300 0#\$a1re représentation : Rome, Palazzo Ottoboni, octobre 1729, en l’honneur de la naissance de Louis, dauphin de France
640 6#\$dRome\$ePalazzo Ottoboni\$f#172910#####\$hNaissance de Louis, dauphin de France
EX 11
240 ##\$1200#1\$aBianchi\$bFrancesco\$f1752?-1810\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Villanella rapita
300 0#\$aOpera giocosa en 2 actes, sur un livret de Giovanni Bertati
300 0#\$a1re représentation : Venise, Théâtre San Moisè, automne 1783
300 0#\$a1re représentation en France : Paris, Théâtre de Monsieur, 15 juin 1789
640 6#\$dVenise\$eThéâtre San Moisè\$f#1783#####\$hautomne
640 6#\$0Première représentation en France\$dParis\$eThéâtre de Monsieur\$f#17890615#

History

2009	New field.

641 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Name/title access point for a work which is one of the subjects of the work for which the record is established.

The field is structured like field 241.

This field has been designed for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model for work.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
641	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (WORK)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

(A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

(B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t. When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

The title by which the work is known. When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

\$f Original Language of the Work

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. Not repeatable. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the work for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used to record the name of a work used as a subject, when it is represented by a name/title access point. When using the embedded fields technique, the title of the work is recorded in an embedded 231 field. The subfields \$2, \$3 and any subject subdivisions (\$j, \$x, \$y, \$z) required should also be carried in the embedded 231 field. The name of the author is carried in an embedded 2-- fields.

When using the standard subfields technique, the title of the work, the name of the author and any subject subdivisions are recorded in different subfields.

Related Fields

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	
601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY	
602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY	When a personal name, corporate body, family or title alone is the subject, the above 6-- fields are used. When the subject is a title, fields 631 or 632 are used in catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, field 605 otherwise.

Examples

EX 1	
241 ##\$1001RU\NLR\AUTH\7717177\$1200#1\$aДобролюбов\$bН. А.\$f1836-1861\$gНиколай Александрович\$1231##\$aЛуч света в темном царстве	
641 ##\$1200#1\$aОстровский\$gАлександр Николаевич\$bА. Н.\$f1823 - 1886\$1231##\$aГроза\$2nlr_sh	
Title of the work Островский, А.Н. Гроза (The Storm, by N.Ostrovsky) used as subject for the work Добролюбов, Н. А. Луч света в темном царстве (A Ray of Light in the Dark Kingdom, by N. Dobrolyubov)	
EX 2	
241 ##\$1200#1\$aТелетова\$bН.К.\$gНаталья Константиновна\$1231##\$aСвятогорская повесть и отражение ее в “Борисе Годунове” Пушкина	
631 ##\$aСвятогорская повесть\$2nlr_sh	
641 ##\$1200#1\$aПушкин\$bА. С.\$f1799-1837\$gАлександр Сергеевич\$1231##\$aБорис Годунов\$2nlr_sh	
Subject access points assigned to the work Телетова Н.К. Святогорская повесть и отражение ее в “Борисе Годунове” Пушкина (Svyatogorsk novell and its reflection in Pushkin’s “Boris Godunov”, by N.Telegina): title of the work in the field 631 (Svyatogorskaya novell) and name/title of the work in the field 641 (Pushkin A.S. Boris Godunov).	
EX 3	
241 ##\$1200#1\$aКазанцева\$bГ. В.\$gГалина Владимировна\$4070\$1231##\$aБеллетризованные биографии В.П. Авенариуса “Пушкин” и “Михаил Юрьевич Лермонтов”: история, теория, поэтика жанра	
641 ##\$1200#1\$aАвенариус\$bВ. П.\$gВасилий Петрович\$f1839 - 1919\$1231##\$aМихаил Юрьевич Лермонтов\$2nlr_sh	
641 ##\$1200#1\$aАвенариус\$bВ. П.\$gВасилий Петрович\$f1839 - 1919\$1231##\$aПушкин\$2nlr_sh	
The work Казанцева, Г. В. Беллетризованные биографии В.П. Авенариуса “Пушкин” и “Михаил Юрьевич Лермонтов”: история, теория, поэтика жанра contains analysis of biographies of A. Pushkin and M. Lermontov by V.Avenarius. Two access points in the fields 641 are name/title of the works (biographies): Avenarius V.P., Mikhail Yuryevich Lermontov and Avenarius V.P., Pushkin.	

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

642 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Name/title access point for an expression of a work which is one of the subjects of the work for which the record is established.

The field is structured like field 242.

This field has been designed for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model for expression.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
642	SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
Subfields: Standard Fields Technique			
a	Name [Work]	NR	MA
t	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)

	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

(A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

(B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

In the list of subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording “[Work]”. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with “[Expression]”.

\$a Name [Work]

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t. When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title [Work]

The title by which the work is known. When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs. Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

The language of the expression. Not repeatable. If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived. The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

The original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

The instrumentation, etc., of the expression. Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work. It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

Identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. Not repeatable. It is recommended that subfield \$2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The control number for the authority record for the expression for which a subject access point is established in the record for a work. Repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used to record the name of an expression of a work used as a subject, when it is represented by a name/title access point. When using the embedded fields technique, the title of the expression is recorded in an embedded 232 field. The subfields \$2, \$3 and any subject subdivisions (\$j, \$x, \$y, \$z) required should also be carried in the embedded 232 field. The name of the author is carried in an embedded 2-- field.

When using the standard subfields technique, the title of the work, the name of the author and any subject subdivisions are recorded in different subfields.

Related Fields

600 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	
601 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	
602 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	
641 SUBJECT ACCESS POINT – NAME AND TITLE (WORK)	When a personal name, corporate body, family or title alone is the subject, the above 6-- fields are used. When the subject is a title, fields 631 or 632 are used in catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, field 605 otherwise.

Examples

EX 1
241 ##\$1200#1\$aНикифоровская\$gНадежда Алексеевна\$1231##\$aШекспир Бориса Пастернака
642 ##\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bУ.\$gУильям\$f1564 - 1616\$1232##\$aГамлет\$mpус.\$wБ.Л. Пастернак\$2nlr_sh

642 ##\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bУ.\$gУильям\$f1564 - 1616\$1232##\$aРомео и Джульетта\$mрус.
\$wБ.Л. Пастернак\$2nlr_sh

642 ##\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bУ.\$gУильям\$f1564 - 1616\$1232##\$aАнтоний и Клеопатра\$mрус.
\$wБ.Л. Пастернак\$2nlr_sh

The work *Никифоровская, Н. А. Шекспир Бориса Пастернака (Shakespeare of Boris Pasternak, by N. Nikiforovskaya)* is about translation of Shakespeare's plays by B.Pasternak. Access points in the fields 641 are name/title of the expressions – Pasternak's Russian translations of Shakespeare's plays *Hamlet, Romeo and Juliet, Antony and Cleopatra*.

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)

Field Definition and Scope

UDC number or range of numbers associated with an authority access point.

The UDC number may be accompanied by terms that describe the UDC number.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
675	UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)	R	O
a	UDC Number, Single or Beginning of a Range	NR	O
b	UDC Number, End of a Range	NR	O
c	Explanatory Terms	R	O
v	UDC Edition	NR	O
z	Language of Edition	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a UDC Number, Single or Beginning of a Range

The class number as taken from the UDC schedules. Not repeatable.

\$b UDC Number, End of a Range

The class number as taken from the UDC schedules. Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory Terms

Explanatory terms associated with the class number in \$a (and if applicable \$b) as taken from the UDC schedules. Repeatable.

\$v UDC Edition

The edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken. Not repeatable.

\$z Language of Edition

The language in coded form of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken. For language codes use ISO 639-2 Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is taken from the version of the UDC schedules used by the agency preparing the record. UDC is produced in various language versions each of which is revised from time to time and published as a new edition. Each published edition of UDC is derived from the UDC Consortium's Master Reference File.

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aИонный обмен\$xПрименение в водоочистке
675 ##\$a628.337\$cЭлектрические методы очистки\$v3\$zrus
EX 2
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aАбдулатипов\$bР. Г.\$gРамазан Гаджимурадович\$f1946-\$cГосударственный деятель России, доктор филос. наук, профессор
675 ##\$a342.53(470)(092)\$v3\$zrus

History

2009	Notes on Field Contents.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

676 DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (DDC)

Field Definition and Scope

DDC number or range of numbers associated with an authority access point.

The DDC number may be accompanied by terms that describe the DDC number.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
676	DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (DDC)	R	O
a	DDC Number, Single or Beginning of a Range	NR	O
b	DDC number, End of a Range	NR	O
c	Explanatory Terms	R	O
v	DDC Edition	R	O
z	Language of Edition	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a DDC Number, Single or Beginning of a Range

The number as taken from the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules. Prime marks are indicated by /.
Not repeatable.

\$b DDC number, End of a Range

The number as taken from the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules. Prime marks are indicated by /.
Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory Terms

Explanatory terms associated with the class number in \$a (and if applicable \$b) as taken from the DDC schedules (EX [1](#)). Repeatable.

\$v DDC Edition

The number of the edition used (EX [1](#), [2](#)). An “a” is added to the number to indicate abridged edition.
Not repeatable.

\$z Language of Edition

The language, in coded form, of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken (EX [2](#)). For language codes use ISO 639-2 Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages (<https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/>). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is entered in subfield \$a in the form prescribed by the schedules used by the agency preparing the record. The number may include prime marks (/), which indicate internationally agreed points at which the number may be truncated. The number should not include extensions used solely to assign a bookmark to an individual item.

Subfield \$z should be used only if the translated version contains differences from the original, e.g., when parts of the schedule have been rewritten to cover local requirements.

Examples

EX 1
250 ##\$aGold
676 ##\$a669.22\$cInterdisciplinary\$v19
676 ##\$a549.23\$cMineralogy\$v19
676 ##\$a553.41\$cEconomic geology\$v19
EX 2
250 ##\$aPhilosophy, parapsychology and occultism
676 ##\$a153.94001\$b153.94999\$v21\$zeng

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

680 LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION (LCC)

Field Definition and Scope

LC number or range of numbers associated with an authority access point.

The LC number may be accompanied by terms that describe the LC number.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
680	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION (LCC)	R	O
a	LC Number, Single or Beginning of a Range	NR	O
b	LC Number, End of a Range	NR	O
c	Explanatory Terms	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a LC Number, Single or Beginning of a Range

The class number taken from the Library of Congress classification schedules. Not repeatable.

\$b LC Number, End of a Range

The class number taken from the Library of Congress classification schedules. Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory Terms

Explanatory terms associated with the class number in \$a (and if applicable \$b) as taken from the LC Classification schedules. (EX 2). Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A Library of Congress class number may be applied by any agency in possession of the Library of Congress Classification Schedules.

Examples

EX 1
250 ##\$aScaffolding
680 ##\$aTH5281

EX 2
250 ##\$aString quartet
680 ##\$aML1160\$cHistory
680 ##\$aMT728\$cInstruction and study

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

686 OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS

Field Definition and Scope

Class number or range of numbers (from classification systems which are not internationally used but which are widely understood published schemes) associated with an authorized access point.

The classification scheme is identified in a subfield \$2. Codes for identification of classification schemes are given in UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
686	OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS	R	O
a	Class Number, Single or Beginning of a Range	NR	O
b	Class Number, End of a Range	NR	O
c	Explanatory Terms	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object	O	R

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Class Number, Single or Beginning of a Range

The class number taken from the classification scheme. Not repeatable.

\$b Class Number, End of a Range

The class number applied by the assigning agency. Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory Terms

A subdivision of the class number taken from the classification scheme. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

A code for the classification scheme used in formulating the number. For a list of system codes, see UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#).

\$R Real World Object URI

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
686 ##\$2usnlm\$aW1\$bRE359
A U.S. National Library of Medicine class number.
EX 2
686 ##\$2usnal\$a281.9\$bC81A
A U.S. National Agricultural Library class number.
EX 3
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aАбдулатипов\$bП. Г.\$gРамазан Гаджимурадович\$f1946-\$cГосударственный деятель России, доктор филос. наук, профессор
686 ##\$2rugasnti\$a10.15
686 ##\$2rubbk\$a67.99(2Рос)06\$vLBC/PL
EX 4
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
215 ##\$aЯлта\$xНародное хозяйство\$z1956
686 ##\$2rubbk\$aY03(2P-4Крм-2Я)74\$vLBC/SL
EX 5
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
240 ##\$1210##\$aСоединенные Штаты Америки\$1230##\$aКонституция\$xИстория
686 ##\$2rubbk\$aT3(7США)0-52\$cИстория\$vLBC/SL
686 ##\$2rubbk\$aX809(7США)1-1\$cПраво\$vLBC/SL

History

1994	Text errata.
2024	Text edit. New subfield \$R.

7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains parallel or alternative language and/or script forms of the access point in the 2-- block and link to a separate record in which the 7-- access point is the primary entity.

The following fields are defined:

700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME
710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME
716 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TRADEMARK
717 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE
720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME
723 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CHARACTER
730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE
731 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (WORK)
732 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE
741 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
742 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
760 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Notes on Field Contents

Under certain practices additional parallel forms of the access point, in a language other than that which is the valid form under the Language of Cataloguing specified in field 100, character positions 9-11, may be specially identified and carried in this block. For each parallel access point the language of the catalogue into which the access point fits is recorded in a \$8 subfield.

These fields are also used to record alternate script representations of the 2-- record authorized access point when another record exists for the alternative script access point and its reference structure. For an alternative script access point, a \$7 subfield is added to the 7-- field. (A \$6 subfield is not required since all access points in 7-- fields link to the access point in the 2-- field by definition.) The fields in this block are repeatable to accommodate multiple access points.

The subfields in the 7-- block have the same definitions and specification as the equivalent subfields in the 2-- block, therefore these specifications are not repeated in the field descriptions below.

For general discussion of these types of data see section 6.7.

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2001	New subfields/values: \$j Form Subdivision.
2009	Changes in terminology.
2016	Update.
2019	Table updated. Editorial changes. Deleted paragraph in the section Notes on Field Contents.

700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the personal name in another language and/or script in field 200.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
700	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Way the Name is Entered
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name.

It contains forenames and other given names.

The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office.

Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions.

\$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics.

If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included. The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates.

Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form. All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

Full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
Record in English language catalogue:
001 e79-392225
100 ##\$a19790723aengy0103####ba0
200 #0\$aVictoria,\$cQueen of Great Britain
700 #0\$3f79-034678\$8frefre\$aVictoria,\$creine de Grande-Bretagne
The language of cataloguing in record ID no. e79-392225 is English. There is a parallel French catalogue record, ID no. f79-034678. See next record.
Record in French language catalogue:
001 f79-034678
100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103####ba0
200 #0\$aVictoria,\$creine de Grande-Bretagne
700 #0\$3e79-392225\$8engeng\$aVictoria,\$cQueen of Great Britain
This is the equivalent record in the French language catalogue. It will be seen that the \$8 in this record corresponds to the 100 in the preceding record. Note also that script is coded neither in the 200 nor 700 using \$7. This is because the script for the whole record is Latin, which is coded in the 100/21-22.
EX 2
Record in Roman script catalogue:
001 23469
100 ##\$a19790723ajpna50#####ba0
200 #1\$7ba0aba0a\$aSuzuki,\$bKenzi
700 #1\$336298\$7db0ydb0y\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]
This record is in a Roman script catalogue. The script of cataloguing is coded in 100/21-22. The 700 field contains an access point which links to the equivalent record in a Kanji script catalogue. The script of cataloguing and the script of the base access point are both coded in the 700. subfield \$7.
Record in Japanese script catalogue:
001 36298
100 ##\$a19790723ajpny50#####db0
200 #1\$7db0ydb0y\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]
700 #1\$323469\$7ba0aba0a\$aSuzuki,\$bKenzi

This is the Kanji equivalent of the preceding record. The script of cataloguing is coded in the 100/21-22. This should be in Kanji, but for the purposes of illustration is shown in Roman script. The 700 authorized field contains the linking access point from the equivalent Roman script record.

History

1994	Text errata.
2024	Text edit.

710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the corporate body name in another language and/or script in field 210.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 710); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 715).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
710	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Corporate Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Specifies the Way the Names are Entered
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Type of Corporate Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body. If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary.

This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place.

This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference.

Repeatable.

\$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

Number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series.

Not repeatable.

\$e Location of Meeting

Place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Meeting

Date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought.

Not repeatable.

\$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

Part of the name following the inversion in a access point with an inverted element.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1
Record in English language catalogue:
001 80-123456
100 ##\$a19800723aengy0103####ba0

710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY
NAME

210 02\$aNational Library of Canada
710 02\$380-239876\$8frefre\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada
Record in French language catalogue:
001 80-239876
100 ##\$a19800723afrey0103####ba0
210 02\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada
710 02\$380-123456\$8engeng\$aNational Library of Canada

History

2009	Updated definition/scope: Indicator 1.
2024	Text edit.

715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the territorial or geographical name in another language and/or script in field 215.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 715); territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 710).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
715	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists.

This subfield must be present when the field is present.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.
Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.
Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents.
Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Examples

EX 1
Record in German language catalogue:
001 A123456
100 ##\$a19790723agery0103####ba0
215 ##\$aSchweiz
715 ##\$3A234567\$8frefre\$aSuisse
715 ##\$3A345678\$8itaita\$aSvizzera
Record in French language catalogue:
001 A234567
100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103####ba0
215 ##\$aSuisse
715 ##\$3A123456\$8gerger\$aSchweiz
715 ##\$3A345678\$8itaita\$aSvizzera
Record in Italian language catalogue:
001 A345678

715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR
GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

100 ##\$a19790723aitay0103####ba0
215 ##\$aSvizzera
715 ##\$3A123456\$8gerger\$aSchweiz
715 ##\$3A234567\$8frefre\$aSuisse

History

2024	Text edit.

716 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the trademark name in another language and/or script in field 216.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
716	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TRADEMARK	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Name of the trademark in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present.

Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers.

Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1
216 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8frerus\$aMelodiâ
716 ##\$3<AR_ID>\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$aМелодия

History

2001	New field.
2012	Text errata.
2024	Text edit.

717 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the printer/publisher device name in another language and/or script in field 217.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
717	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE	R	O
a	Printer/Publisher Device Description	NR	MA
b	Motto	R	O
c	Standard Citation	R	O
d	Size	NR	O
f	Date	NR	O
g	Iconographic Term	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Printer/Publisher Device Description

Description of the figurative elements of the device.

Not repeatable.

\$b Motto

Short sentence or phrase chosen as encapsulating the beliefs or ideals.

Repeatable.

\$c Standard Citation

Citation which identifies unambiguously a device.

Repeatable.

\$d Size

Size, in centimetres, of a device.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date

Dates of a printer/publisher when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$g Iconographic Term

Term relating to the main iconographic elements present in the device.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a printer/published device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a printed/publisher device which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit.

720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the family name in another language and/or script in field 220.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
720	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Family name in access point form.

This subfield must be present if the field is present.

Not repeatable.

\$c Type of Family

Categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

Not repeatable.

\$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection.

Repeatable.

\$f Dates

Dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1
220 ##\$aDuecker family
720 ##\$3<AR_ID>\$aDuecker (famille)

History

2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$d Places associated with the family.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$c Type of family.
2024	Text edit.

723 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGEAND/OR SCRIPT – CHARACTER

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the fictitious character name in another language and/or script in field 223.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
723	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGEAND/OR SCRIPT – CHARACTER	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name of the Character	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point.

This subfield must be present if the field is present.

Not repeatable.

\$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

Remainder of the name.

Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to Name of the Character

Additions to name of character which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets, indications of office, or the relationship with another character.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

223 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CHARACTER

Examples

EX 1
146 ##\$b01vbr####
223 ##\$7ba0aba0a\$8itarus\$aEvgenij Onegin
541 ##\$7ba0aba0a\$8itarus\$1200#1\$aČajkovskij\$bPëtr Il'ič\$4230\$1231##\$aEvgenij Onegin
723 ##\$7ba0aca0y\$8itarus\$aЕвгений Онегин
The language of cataloguing is Italian. There is a parallel Cyrillic name of the protagonist for Pëtr Il'ič Čajkovskij's opera <i>Evgenij Onegin</i> .

History

2019	New field.
2024	Text edit.

730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the title in another language and/or script in field 230.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field does not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If compliance with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “expression”) instead.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
730	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	General Material Designation	R	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
l	Form Subheading	NR	O
m	Language	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
q	Version (or Date of Version)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field is used.

Not repeatable.

\$b General Material Designation

Text of the general material designation.

Repeatable.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$k Date of Publication

Date of publication of the item when it is added to the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language

Language of the item, when required as part of the title.

If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

Not repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$q Version (or Date of Version)

Identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version.

Not repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the item.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number.

Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

Statement that a musical work is an arrangement.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

See also field 745.

EX 1
100 ##\$a19790723aspay0103####ba0
230 ##\$aCrónica de los Reyes de Castilla
730 ##\$386123\$8engeng\$aChronicle of the Kings of Castille

History

2009	Changes in terminology.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2023	Errata/text edit: \$l label.
2024	Text edit.

731 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the title for work in another language and/or script in field 231.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
731	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (WORK)	R	O
a	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title

Title by which the work is known.

Mandatory.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released.

Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number.

Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
431 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)
531 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK)

Examples

EX 1A
231 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8fresan\$aMahābhārata\$iVanaparva\$iNalopākhyāna
731 ##\$7ba0yja0y\$8fresan\$aमहाभारत\$िवनपर्व\$िनलोपाख्यान
Field 731 is used to record the title in its Devanagari script. An alternate technique is to repeat field 231:
EX 1B
231 ##\$6a01\$7ba0yba0a\$8fresan\$aMahābhārata\$iVanaparva\$iNalopākhyāna
231 ##\$6a01\$7ba0yja0y\$8fresan\$aमहाभारत\$िवनपर्व\$िनलोपाख्यान
In this case, both fields carry a \$6 subfield.

History

2012	New field.

732 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the title for the expression entity in another language and/or script in field 232.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
732	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
a	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	R	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Title [Work]

Title by which the work is known.

Mandatory.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released.

Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number.

Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase.

Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression.

The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression.

Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

232 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
432 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)
532 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (EXPRESSION)

History

2012	New field.
2021	Changed status: deleted provisional.

740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/title in another language and/or script in field 240.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model. If compliance with the FRBR/IFLA LRM structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR/IFLA LRM entity “expression”) instead.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
740	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE	R	O
Subfield: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Title	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfield: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 230 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 240, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**\$a Name**

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements.

Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1
100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103####ba0
240 ##\$121002\$aUniversité Laval\$1230##\$aRépertoire des cours
740 ##\$34936289\$8engeng\$121002\$aUniversity Laval\$1230##\$aCourse catalogue

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name.
2012	Updated definition/scope: Field Definition: This field is intended for records that do not comply with the FRBR model. If compliance with the FRBR structure and entities is desired, use fields -31 and -41 (FRBR entity “work”) or -32 and -42 (FRBR entity “expression”) instead.
2024	Text edit.

741 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/title for the work entity in another language and/or script in field 241.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
741	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	O
t	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work	NR	O
4	Relator Code	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210, 215, or 220 for the name; and a 231 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 741, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1. Subject subdivisions are carried in the embedded title field.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data. (Control subfields defined for the 200, 210, 215, 220, 230, 231 or 232 fields are not embedded in a \$1 subfield.)

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements.

Optional. Not repeatable.

\$t Title

Title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements.

When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

Mandatory.

\$h Number of Section or Part

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released.

Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number.

Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music)

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

241 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
441 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)
541 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (WORK)

History

2012	New field.
2020	Added \$4 according updates control subfield table 2019.
2024	Text edit.

742 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/title for the work entity in another language and/or script in field 242.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
742	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN ANOTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
0	Instruction Phrase	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	NR	O
5	Relationship Control	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name [Work]	NR	MA
t	Title [Work]	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O

x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier for the Related Work	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (Embedded fields technique) or No information available (Standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (Standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (Standard subfields technique)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$0 Instruction Phrase

See specification of [Control Subfield 0](#). Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Not repeatable.

\$5 Relationship Control

See specification of [Control Subfield 5](#). Not repeatable.

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 6](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210 215, or 220 for the name; and a 232 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 742, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1. Subject subdivisions are carried in the embedded title field.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data. (Control subfields defined for the 200, 210, 215, 220, 230, 231 or 232 fields are not embedded in a \$1 subfield.)

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

In the list of data subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording “[Work]”. They can be copied from the record describing the related work. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with “[Expression]”.

\$a Name [Work]

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements.

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$t Title [Work]

The title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements. When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 = 1) subfield \$t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 241 is used.

Mandatory.

\$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

Number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

Name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Work [Work]

Date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released.

Not repeatable.

\$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

Place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work.

The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield \$e.

Not repeatable.

\$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

Original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work.

If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$f.

Not repeatable.

\$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body.

Repeatable.

\$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

Instrumentation, etc., of the work.

Repeatable.

\$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

Number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works.

The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number.

Repeatable.

\$u Key (for Music) [Work]

Musical key used as part of the title.

Not repeatable.

\$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs.

Not repeatable.

\$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

Language of the expression.

If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m.

Not repeatable.

\$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived.

The content type is expressed through a standard phrase.

Not repeatable.

\$o Date of Expression [Expression]

Original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression.

The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression.

Not repeatable.

\$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

Instrumentation, etc., of the expression.

Repeatable.

\$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work.

It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the Related Work

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator Code

See specification of [Control Subfield 4](#). Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

242 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
442 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)
542 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE (EXPRESSION)

History

2012	New field.
2020	Added \$4 according to the updates control subfields 2019.
2024	Text edit.

743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the conventional name/title for legal and religious texts in another language and/or script in field 243.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
743	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of the Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subdivision	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
t	Conventional Title	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Form of Conventional Name
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Specifies the Form of Conventional Name

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value 2: Name entered under other form

Used for church names.

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued.

This subfield must be present if the field is present.

Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

Name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy.

Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions.

Repeatable.

\$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued.

If necessary, subfield \$b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or \$c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used.

Not repeatable.

\$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of the Signing

Date of legal issue or version when added to the authorized conventional name access point.

The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the authorized conventional name access point.

Repeatable.

\$i Name of Section or Part

Name of a part when the item to which the authorized conventional name access point is being applied is only a part of the text named in the access point.

Repeatable for a subdivided part.

\$l Form Subdivision

Standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the authorized conventional name access point.

Repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield.

Repeatable.

\$t Conventional Title

Authorized form of a conventional title for the text being catalogued.

The term(s) of the title may include specifications by date or version of given types.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the conventional name access point which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the conventional name access point that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

History

2009	New field.
2024	Text edit.

745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the name/collective title in another language and/or script in field 245.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
745	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of The Base Access Point	NR	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	O
t	Collective Title	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	NR	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

\$1 Linking Data

See specification of [Control Subfield 1](#).

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of The Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200, 210 215, or 220 for the name; and a 235 for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 245, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

\$a Name

Name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t.

When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements.

Not repeatable.

\$t Collective Title

Title proper of a bibliographic item containing several works by one or more authors issued in a single volume or uniform set.

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/collective title which the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/collective title that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

History

2009	Changes in name and function: B) Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name. Changes in terminology.

750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the topical subject or a subject category in another language and/or script in field 250.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
750	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	R	O
a	Topical Subject or or Subject Category	NR	MA
n	Subject Category Code	R	O
m	Subject Category Subdivision Code	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Topical Subject or Subject Category

Term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points or subject categories used.

Not repeatable.

\$n Subject Category Code

Coded representation of a subject category.

Repeatable.

\$m Subject Category Subdivision Code

Coded representation of a subject category subdivision.

Repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) or material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision or Subject Category Subdivision Text

Term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents, or a term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the \$a subfield.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1
Record in English language catalogue:
100 ##\$a19790723aengy0103####ba0
250 ##\$aCivil laws\$yQuebec (Province)\$jHandbooks, manuals, etc.
750 ##\$8frefre\$aDroit civil\$yQuébec (Province)\$jGuides, manuels, etc.
Record in French language catalogue:
100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103####ba0
250 ##\$aDroit civil\$yQuébec (Province)\$jGuides, manuels, etc.
750 ##\$8engeng\$aCivil laws\$yQuebec (Province)\$jHandbooks, manuals, etc.

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$m Subject category subdivision code.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$n Subject category code.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$x Topical subdivision or subject category subdivision text.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$a Topical subject or subject category.
2024	Text edit.

760 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the place and date of publication, etc. in another language and/or script in field 260.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
760	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)	NR	MA
b	State or Province, Etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, Etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, Etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Country (Nation State)

Political unit where the state and nation are congruent.

Not repeatable.

\$b State or Province, Etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country.

Not repeatable.

\$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

Repeatable.

\$d City, Etc.

Name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one

For smaller unites, see \$k.

Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc.

Repeatable.

\$f Date

A date is a specific time that can be named.

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats.

Repeatable.

\$g Season

Each of the four divisions of the year (spring, summer, autumn, and winter) marked by particular weather patterns.

Not repeatable.

\$h Occasion

A special or formal event.

Not repeatable.

\$i Final Date

Date on which something ends.

Not repeatable.

\$k Subsection of City, Etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$n Extraterrestrial Areas

Any extra-terrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$o Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent

Larger area than country, such as world, hemisphere, continent.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

History

2001	New field.
2009	Changes in name and function: \$c Intermediate political jurisdiction.
2009	Changes in name and function.
2009	New subfields/values: subfields \$e - \$o.
2024	Text edit.

780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition and Scope

Authorized form of the form, genre and/or physical characteristics in another language and/or script in field 280.

It is formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
780	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
7	Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point	NR	O
8	Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Type of the Entity
	#	Not defined
	0	Work
	2	Manifestation
	3	Item

Subfields Description

\$a Entry Element

Term in the form prescribed by the system of form access points used.

Not repeatable.

\$j Form Subdivision

Term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead.

Repeatable.

\$x Topical Subdivision

Term added to the form access point to specify the aspect that the access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$y Geographical Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$z Chronological Subdivision

Term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents.

Repeatable.

\$2 Source

See specification of [Control Subfield 2](#). Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 7](#). Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

See specification of [Control Subfield 8](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1
152 ##\$brbpap
280 ##\$aMarbled papers
480 ##\$aMarble papers
580 ##\$5g\$a[Surface applications of paper]
580 ##\$5h\$aAntique marbled papers
580 ##\$5h\$aBritish marbled papers
580 ##\$5h\$aCocoa marbled papers
780 ##\$8frefre\$aPapiers marbrés
In the ACRL Thesaurus of Paper Terms, “Marbled papers” is the preferred form. In a bilingual catalogue, the term is translated into French.
EX 2
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aAdventure stories
480 ##\$aSuspense novels
480 ##\$aSwashbucklers

780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR
PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

580 ##\$aThrillers
580 ##\$5h\$aDetective and mystery stories
580 ##\$5h\$aPicaresque literature
580 ##\$5h\$aRobinsonades
580 ##\$5h\$aRomantic suspense novels
780 ##\$8frefre\$aHistoires d’aventure

History

2001	New field.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: Indicator 5.
2024	Text edit.

8-- SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains information concerning the agencies responsible for the record and cataloguer's notes recorded by those agencies. Cataloguer's notes are primarily intended to guide cataloguers and thus are usually not written in a form suitable to public display. Notes intended for public display are in the 3-- NOTES BLOCK.

The following fields are defined:

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE
810 SOURCE DATA FOUND
815 SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND
820 USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION
822 CORRESPONDING DATA IN OTHER SYSTEMS
825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE
830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE
835 DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION
836 REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS
886 DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT

Occurrence

Field 801 is mandatory. All other fields in the 8-- block are optional. It is recommended that all notes in a source record suitable for international exchange be entered in the UNIMARC record.

Notes on Field Contents

Punctuation should be entered as in the source format.

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

History

2019	Table update. Deleted paragraph in the section Notes on Field Contents.

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE

Field Definition and Scope

Identification of the agency responsible for the creation of the record and the date of the entry.

Mandatory in the case of exchange of **authority** data.

The date for new records is the date of the creation of the entry. For revised records, the date recorded is the date of the latest revision.

Repeatable for each agency function reported (transcribing, modifying or issuing). In many cases the same agency will have carried out some or all functions; however the field should be repeated only when there are changes to transaction dates, cataloguing rules or formats; where there are no changes only the earliest occurrence of the field should be included.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
801	ORIGINATING SOURCE	R	M
a	Country	NR	O
b	Agency	NR	O
c	Date of Latest Transaction	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Specifies the Function Performed by the Agency
	0	Original cataloguing agency
	1	Transcribing agency
	2	Modifying agency
	3	Issuing agency

Subfields Description

\$a Country

The country of the issuing agency in 2-character form. The country is coded according to ISO 3166. The full list of codes will be found in the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Not repeatable.

\$b Agency

It is recommended that the agency be identified according to the international standard ISO 15511:2003 International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL).

In this case, the whole ISIL, including its first sequence (country code or other prefix), is entered in the \$b subfield. Alternatively, it is possible to use the code from the MARC Code List for Organisations. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. The displaying of data in clear form (full name, well-known acronym) is recommended in OPACs and union catalogues. A matching between the code and the name to be displayed should be established in an appropriate reference list or tool. Not repeatable.

\$c Date of Latest Transaction

The date of latest transaction should be recorded according to ISO 8601, i.e., in the form YYYYMMDD. Not repeatable.

\$2 Source

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. See UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A for codes. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Encoding Level, (character position 17)	
005 VERSION IDENTIFIER	
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Date Entered on File (character positions 0-7)	The date in field 100 may be the same as the transcription date but should be repeated in field 801.

Examples

EX 1
801 #0\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19800516
EX 2
801 #3\$aGB\$bbl\$c19831121
EX 3
801 #0\$aFR\$bBnF\$c20061012
An authority record for a printer/publisher created and issued by the Bibliothèque nationale de France.
EX 4
801 #0\$aFR\$bFR-693836101\$c20070215
An authority record created by the Bibliothèque municipale de Lyon. The whole ISIL identifier with its two components is entered in \$b. The library identifier 693836101 in \$b refers to the RCR code (RCR: Répertoire des Centres de Ressource), the national standard used in France http://ccfr.bnf.fr/rnbcd_visu/framevisu.jsp?accueil=1
EX 5
801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c19961109

History

1994	Text errata.
2009	Updated definition/scope: \$b Agency.
2009	New indicators and subfields/values: \$2 System code.
2024	Text errata.

810 SOURCE DATA FOUND

Field Definition and Scope

Citation to a reference source when information about the access point was found.

The first 810 field usually contains the citation for the bibliographic work for the cataloguing of which the access point has been established.

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that source information is cited whenever it is available.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
810	SOURCE DATA FOUND	R	O
a	Citation	NR	O
b	Information Found	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Citation

The citation for a published work or a description of any source or action that provided information about the access point. The information provided is sufficient to identify both the work and the location within the work. Not repeatable.

\$b Information Found

A statement of the information found in the source cited in \$a. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK
5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aAvery,\$bHarold Eric
400 #1\$aAvery,\$bH.E.
810 ##\$aHis Advanced physical chemistry calculations, 1971: t.p.\$b(H. E. Avery, B. Sc., Ph.D., Dept. of Chem., Liverpool Polytechnic)
EX 2
152 ##\$aACR2
215 ##\$aCalanques, Massif des (France)
810 ##\$aDict. géogr. de la France\$b(Calanques (les), nom donné au littoral méditerranéen du département des Bouches-du-Rhône, entre Marseille et Cassis)

EX 3
200 #1\$aHailsham of Saint Marylebone,\$bQuintin Hogg,\$cBaron
810 ##\$aWho's Who
EX 4
152 ##\$aRCR
210 12\$aУральский горнопромышленный форум\$f2006\$eЕкатеринбург
810 ##\$aГорное дело. Оборудование. Технологии : I межрегиональная специализированная выставка и научно-техническая конференция, Екатеринбург, 31 января – 3 февраля 2006: официальный каталог, тезисы конференции /Уральский горнопромышленный форум. – Екатеринбург, 2006810 ##\$ahttp://kosk.ru/news/1611

History

1994	Text errata.

815 SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND

Field Definition and Scopes

Citations for consulted reference sources in which no information about the access point was found.

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that sources are cited wherever possible.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
815	SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND	NR	O
a	Citations	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Citations

A citation for a published work or a description of any source that provided no information about the access point. The subfield is repeated for each separate source cited.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that sources are cited wherever possible.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK
5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aJones,\$bA. Wesley
815 ##\$aDir. Amer. schol., 1974;\$aNational faculty dir., 1979;\$aAmer. men/women sci., soc. and beh. sci., 1978;\$aWWA., 1978-79
EX 2
240 ##\$aCalanques (France)
815 ##\$aWeb. geog. dict., 1972;\$aE. Brit. micro. gaz.;\$aCol. Lipp. gaz.;\$aTimes atlas, 1955
EX 3
200 #1\$aАландский\$бП. И.\$гПавел Иванович\$f1844-1883
810 ##\$aКулаковский Ю.А. Поминки по П.И.А. – Киев, 1884\$bАландский Павел Иванович 1844-1883 – историк
815 #1\$aСИЭ\$aБСЭ

History

1994	Text errata.

820 USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

Information limiting the use of the 2-- access point and/or differentiating persons or bodies with similar names.

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that a note is made wherever necessary to avoid confusion between similar access points.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
820	USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION	R	O
a	Note Text	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Note Text

The text of the note. Repeatable.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK
5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aSmithe,\$bSam
820 ##\$aNot to be confused with Smith, Sam
EX 2
200 #1\$aLafontaine,\$bJacques,\$f1944-
820 ##\$aNe pas confondre avec l'auteur né en 1933.
EX 3
250 ##\$aHoly Year
820 ##\$aHere are entered works on the holy or jubilee years proclaimed by the popes. For special holy years (regular or extraordinary) add date, e.g., Holy Year, 1925
EX 4
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aКомпьютерные игры
820 ##\$aДанной ПР индексируются документы аналогичные: 2003-7/5654 Компьютерные игры от А до Я : Секреты, коды, пароли. – СПб., 2003.

History

1994	Text errata.

822 CORRESPONDING DATA IN OTHER SYSTEMS

Field Definition and Scope

Information on corresponding data in external systems.

It is intended to enable interoperability between systems (subject systems, geographical databases, genre/form classifications, etc.).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
822	CORRESPONDING DATA IN OTHER SYSTEMS	R	O
a	Corresponding Data	NR	O
d	Date of Access	NR	MA
i	Class Number	NR	O
l	Explanatory Term	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
z	Date of Deprecation of URI	NR	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	System category	Specifies the Type of External System
	#	No information available
	1	Thesaurus or other type of controlled vocabulary
	2	Classification
2	Type of relationship	Specifies the Type of Relationship Between the Access Point and the Corresponding Data
	#	No information available
	1	No corresponding data in referred system
	2	Exact match
	3	Close match
	4	Partial match
	5	Hierarchical relationship: broader concept
	6	Hierarchical relationship: narrower concept

Subfields Description

\$a Corresponding Data

The corresponding data to access point in an external subject system, geographical database, etc. Use this subfield if ind. 1 is set to # or 1. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of Access

The date when the corresponding data was searched, or found, in the external system. Mandatory if field is present. Not repeatable.

\$i Class Number

The class number corresponding to access point in an external classification. Use this subfield if indicator 1 is set to 2. Not repeatable.

\$l Explanatory Term

The explanatory term associated with the class number corresponding to access point in an external classification. Use this subfield if indicator 1 is set to 2. Not repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

URI for Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number is in \$3.

\$z Date of Deprecation of URI

The date when the URI recorded in subfield \$u appeared to be deprecated, as a consequence of evolutions in the thesaurus or classification. The match is therefore no longer valid.

\$2 Source

The code for the external system that is referred to, whether a correspondence has been found in this system, or not (in this latter case, use indicator 2, value: 1). The system code may be taken from the UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A. Mandatory if field is present. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

\$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

See specification of [Control Subfield 3](#). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK
5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK
7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

Examples

EX 1
250 # \$aFantômes
822 12 \$aFantômes \$2RVMLaval \$d2013-10-22
822 1 # \$aGhosts \$2lc \$3http://id.loc.gov/authorities/subjects/sh85054821 \$d2017-02-09
The topical subject access point has an exact match in Répertoire Vedettes-Matière de l'université Laval (Québec) and another correspondence in Library of Congress Subject Headings, that has a URI.
EX 2
215 ## \$aNokoué, Lac (Bénin)
822 12 \$aLac Nokoué \$2GeoNames \$uhttp://www.geonames.org/2392481/lac-nokoue.html \$d2019-01-15
EX 3
250 ## \$aBambou frappé (instrument de musique)
822 22 \$i122.22 \$IIdiophones - Frappement - corps creux présentant une cavité - tubulaire (bambou) \$2Dournon \$d2017-02-10
822 23 \$i111.23 \$ITubes à percussion \$2H/S \$d 2017-02-10

This traditional music instrument (struck bamboo) used in Bali or Laos has an access point in the French subject system (Rameau). The access point has an exact match in the Dournon classification system, and a close match in the Hornbostel-Sachs classification system.

EX 4

250 ##\$aMélodies acc. d'ensemble à vent

822 11\$2lc\$d2017-03-20

The policy of the cataloguing agency is to check the existence of a corresponding term in Library of Congress Subject Headings. If there is none, this is stated in field 822 with \$2 to mention the external system where the term was searched for and \$d to record the date when this research was made.

EX 5

223 ##\$aDupond et Dupont

822 11\$2lc\$d2017-03-20

The policy of the cataloguing agency is to check the existence of a corresponding term in Library of Congress Authorities. If there is none, this is stated in field 822 with \$2 to mention the external system where the term was searched for and \$d to record the date when this research was made.

History

2019	New field.
2024	Update (redefine \$2 and new \$3), text errata.

825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Indication that the access point in the 2-- field has been used as an example or has been cited in a note in another record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
825	EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE	R	O
a	Note Text	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Note Text

The 2-- block access point of the record in which an established subject or authorized subdivision is cited. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Examples

EX 1
210 02\$aLeague of Nations\$xOfficials and employees
825 ##\$aExample under reference from Officials and employees
825 ##\$aNote under Public officers
EX 2
250 ##\$aJudges\$xTravel regulations
825 ##\$aExample under reference from Travel regulations.
EX 3
Record 1
240 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aДетство
305 1#\$aСм. также под названиями других частей, например:\$bГорький,Максим,1868- 1936 – В ЛЮДЯХ
Record 2
240 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aВ ЛЮДЯХ
825 ##\$aИспользуется как пример в записи: Горький, Максим, 1868 – 1936. Детство

History

1994	Text errata.

830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

Note to record biographical, historical, or other information about the access point.

The data may include references to specific rules applied, notes justifying the choice of form of access point, etc. Such data could also appear as part of other fields, e.g., field 810.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
830	GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE	R	O
a	Note Text	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Note Text

The text of the note. Repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aKorman,\$bGerd
830 ##\$ab. 1928;\$aPhD
EX 2
200 #1\$aOtter\$bA.A. den\$g(Andy Albert den),\$f1941-
830 ##\$aAACR2 22.4A. Name established according to author's preference.
EX 3
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$a≠NSB≠''≠NSE≠Путь≠NSB≠''≠NSE≠, религиозно-философская группа\$cМосква, 1910-1919
830 ##\$aВ это нео-славянофильское об-ние входили ведущие идеологи русского христианско-либерального национализма – Н.А.Бердяев, С.Н.Булгаков, М.О.Гершензон, В.И.Иванов, Е.Н.Трубецкой, П.А.Флоренский и др.

History

1994	Text errata.

835 DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

Explanation for the deletion of an access point in the 2-- from an authority file

It appears in a record in which Record Label, Record Status (character position 5), contains value d, deleted record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
835	DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION	R	O
a	Note Text	R	O
b	Replacement Access Point	R	O
d	Date of the Transaction	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Note Text

An explanatory text note. Repeatable.

\$b Replacement Access Point

The access point(s) which have replaced the deleted access point in the 2--.. Repeatable.

\$d Date of the Transaction

The date of the transaction in the form YYYYMMDD. Mandatory if field is used. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Record Status (character position 5 = d (deleted record))

Notes on Field Contents

The date of transaction in subfield \$d should be expressed as eight digits in the form YYYYMMDD.

Examples

EX 1
Record Label, character position 5 = d (deleted record)
250 ##\$aOrphans and orphan-asylums
835 ##\$aThis access point has been replaced by the access points\$bOrphans and Orphanages\$d20001017.
EX 2
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aАкадемия экон. безопасности\$cМосква

835 ##\$aЗаголовок заменен на:\$bАкадемия экономической безопасности МВД России\$d20070725

History

2009	Changes in terminology.

836 REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

Explanation for the replacement of an access point in the 2-- from an authority file

It appears in a record in which Record Label, Record Status (character position 5), contains value c (corrected record) or n (new record).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
836	REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION	R	O
b	Replaced Access Point	NR	MA
d	Date of the Transaction	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$b Replaced Access Point

The superseded access point. Mandatory when field is used. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of the Transaction

The date of the transaction in the form YYYYMMDD. Mandatory when field is used. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Record Status (character position 5 = c (corrected record) or n (new record))

Examples

EX 1
Record Label, character position 5 = c (corrected record)
250 ##\$aOrphelinats
836 ##\$bOrphelins et orphelinats\$d19930629
EX 2
Record Label, character position 5 = n (new record)
200 #1\$aDe Clerck\$bCharles
836 ##\$bClerck, Charles de\$d19871125
EX 3
Record Label, character position 5 = c (corrected record)
250 ##\$aГород\$xХудожественная литература
836 ##\$bГород в художественной литературе\$d20040701

History

2001	New field.
2009	Changes in terminology.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

Field Definition and Scope

Information required to locate an electronic resource.

The field may be used in an authority record to provide supplementary information available electronically about the entity for which the record was created. The information identifies the electronic location containing the resource or from which it is available. It also contains information to retrieve the resource by the access method identified in the first indicator position. It can be used to generate notes relating to mode of access.

Repeatable when the location data elements vary (subfields \$a, \$b, \$d) and when more than one access method may be used. It is also repeatable whenever the electronic filename varies (subfield \$f), except when a single intellectual item is divided into different parts for online storage or retrieval.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
856	ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	R	O
a	Host Name	R	O
b	Access Number	R	O
c	Compression Information	R	O
d	Path	R	O
e	Date and Hour of Consultation and Access	NR	O
f	Electronic Name	R	O
g	Uniform Resource Name	R	O
h	Processor of Request	NR	O
i	Instruction	R	O
j	Bits per Second	NR	O
k	Password	NR	O
l	Logon/Login	NR	O
m	Contact for Access Assistance	R	O
n	Name of Location of Host in Subfield \$a	NR	O
o	Operating System	NR	O
p	Port	NR	O
q	Electronic Format Type	NR	O
r	Settings	NR	O
s	File Size	NR	O
t	Terminal Emulation	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
v	Hours Access Method Available	R	O
w	Record Control Number	R	O
x	Nonpublic Note	R	O
y	Access Method	NR	O
z	Public Note	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Access Method
	#	No information provided
	0	Email
	1	FTP

	2	Remote login (Telnet)
	3	Dial-up
	4	HTTP
	7	Method specified in subfield \$y
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Host Name

Repeatable.

\$b Access Number

The access number is associated with a host.

It can contain the Internet Protocol (IP) numeric address if the item is an Internet resource, or a telephone number if dial-up access is provided through a telephone line. This data may change frequently and may be generated by the system, rather than statically stored. Subfield \$b may be repeated if all the other information in the field applies. A telephone number is recorded as follows: [country code]-[area code]-[telephone number]. Example: 49-69-15251140 (a number in Frankfurt, Germany); 1-202-7076237 (a number in the U.S., Washington, D.C.). If an extension is applicable, include it after the telephone number preceded by "x". Example: 1-703-3589800x515 (telephone number with extension). Repeatable.

\$c Compression Information

Repeatable.

\$d Path

Repeatable.

\$e Date and Hour of Consultation and Access

The time, in the form YYYYMMDDHHMM, at which the electronic item was last accessed. Not repeatable.

\$f Electronic Name

The electronic name of a file as it exists in the directory/subdirectory indicated in subfield \$d on the host identified in subfield \$a.

Subfield \$f may be repeated if a single logical file has been divided into parts and stored under different names. In this case, the separate parts should constitute a single bibliographic item. In all other cases, a file that may be retrieved under different filenames contains multiple occurrences of field 856, each with its corresponding electronic name in subfield \$f. A filename may include wildcard characters (e.g., "*" or "?") if applicable, with a note in subfield \$z explaining how files are named. NOTE: Filenames may be case sensitive for some systems. This subfield may also contain the name of the electronic publication or conference. Repeatable.

\$g Uniform Resource Name

The URN, which provides a globally unique location independent identifier. Repeatable.

\$h Processor of Request

The username, or processor of the request; generally the data which precedes the at sign ("@" in the host address. Not repeatable.

\$i Instruction

An instruction or command needed for the remote host to process a request. Repeatable.

\$j Bits per Second

The lowest and highest number of bits (binary units) of data that can be transmitted per second when connected to a host. The syntax for recording the number of bits per second (BPS) should be: [Lowest BPS]-[Highest BPS]. If only lowest given: [Lowest BPS]-. If only highest given: -[Highest BPS]. Not repeatable.

\$k Password

Used to record general-use passwords and should not contain passwords requiring security. Not repeatable.

\$l Logon/Login

General-use logon/login strings which do not require special security. Not repeatable.

\$m Contact for Access Assistance

Repeatable.

\$n Name of Location of Host in Subfield \$a

Not repeatable.

\$o Operating System

For information, the operating system used by the host specified in subfield \$a is indicated in this subfield. Not repeatable.

\$p Port

The portion of the address that identifies a process or service in the host. Not repeatable.

\$q Electronic Format Type

Contains an identification of the electronic format type, which determines how data are transferred through a network.

Usually, a text file can be transferred as character data which generally restricts the text to characters in the ASCII (American National Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set (i.e., the basic Latin alphabet, digits 0-9, a few special characters, and most punctuation marks). Text files with characters outside of the ASCII set, or non-textual data (e.g., computer programs, image data) must be transferred using another file transfer mode, usually binary mode. Electronic format type may be taken from lists such as registered Internet Media types (MIME types). Not repeatable.

\$r Settings

The settings used for transferring data.

Included in settings are: 1) Number Data Bits (the number of bits per character); 2) Number Stop Bits (the number of bits to signal the end of a byte); and 3) Parity (the parity checking technique used). The syntax of these elements is: [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-[Number of Stop Bits]. If only the parity is given, the other elements of settings and their related hyphens are omitted (i.e., [Parity]). If one of the other two elements is given, the hyphen for the missing element is recorded in its proper position (i.e., [Parity]-[Number of Stop Bits] or [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-). The values for parity are: O (Odd), E (Even), N (None), S (Space), and M (Mark). Not repeatable.

\$s File Size

The size of the file as stored under the filename indicated in subfield \$f.

It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes (octets). It may be repeated in cases where the filename is repeated and directly follows the subfield \$f to which it applies. This information is not given for journals, since field 856 relates to the entire title, not to particular issues. Repeatable.

\$t Terminal Emulation

Repeatable.

\$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Field 856 is structured to allow the creation of a URL by combining data from other 856 subfields.

Subfield \$u may be used instead of those separate subfields or in addition to them. Not repeatable.

\$v Hours Access Method Available

The hours that access to an electronic resource is available at the location indicated in this field.

Repeatable

\$w Record Control Number

Repeatable.

\$x Nonpublic Note

Repeatable.

\$y Access Method

The access method when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Method specified in subfield \$y).

This subfield may include access methods other than the main TCP/IP protocols specified in the first indicator. The data in this subfield corresponds with the access schemes specified in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) (RFC 1738), a product of the Uniform Resource Identifiers Working Group of the IETF. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) maintains a registry of URL schemes and defines the syntax and use of new schemes. Not repeatable.

\$z Public Note

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The information contained in this field is sufficient to allow for the electronic transfer of a file, subscription to an electronic journal, or logon to an electronic resource. In some cases, only unique data elements are recorded which allow the user to access a locator table on a remote host containing the remaining information needed to access the item.

Examples

EX 1
200 #1\$aRussell,\$bBertrand,\$f1872-1970
856 4#\$uhttp://plato.stanford.edu/entries/russell/russell.jpeg

The electronic resource is available by http.
EX 2
240 ##\$1200#0\$aLeonardo,\$cda Vinci,\$f1452-1519\$1230##\$aMona Lisa
856 4#\$uhttp://sunsite.unc.edu/wm/paint/auth/vinci/joconde/
856 4#\$uhttp://sunsite.unc.edu/wm/paint/auth/vinci/joconde/jpg
There are two electronic resources. The first is a description, the second is an image.
EX 3
210 02\$aLibrary of Congress.\$bCopyright Office
856 4#\$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright
EX 4
210 12\$aInternational Conference on the Principles and Future Development of AACR2
856 4#\$uhttp://www.nlc-bnc.ca/jsc/
EX 5
250 ##\$aPresidents' spouses\$zUnited States
856 4#\$ahttp://www.firstladies.com

History

2001	New field.
2009	Updated definition/scope.
2024	Text edit.

886 DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT

Field Definition and Scope

Data for which there is no specific UNIMARC field.

It is used when an agency is converting records from another format and wishes to retain elements in fields which have no equivalent.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
886	DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT	R	O
a	Tag of the Source Format Field	NR	O
b	Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Type of Field
	0	Record Label
	1	Variable control field (0-- fields without indicators or subfields)
	2	Variable data field (010-999 fields)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

\$a Tag of the Source Format Field

This subfield will not be present if Indicator 1 has the value 0. Not repeatable. This subfield can be used only once with the value Tag of the Source Format Field. All other \$a subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

\$b Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field

This subfield will contain the indicators, subfield identifiers and subfields of the original field in their original order. Not repeatable. This subfield can be used only once with the value Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field. All other \$b subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

\$2 Source

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. See UNIMARC/Bibliographic format, Appendix A codes. Not repeatable.

See also specification of [Control Subfield 2](#).

Examples

EX 1
886 2#\$2usmarc\$a042\$b##\$alc
There is no equivalent in UNIMARC for USMARC's Authentication Code. There are only three true subfield identifiers in the field – the \$2, the first \$a and the first \$b.

History

2001	New field.
2009	Updated definition/scope: \$a Tag of the source format field.
2009	Updated definition/scope: \$b Indicators and subfields of the source format field.

9-- NATIONAL USE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block is reserved for national use by agencies where UNIMARC is the basis of the domestic format. It is recommended that fields in this block be excluded from international exchange **media**. In cases of difficulty, it would be a matter for international agreement as to whether particular types of data should be held in a local field.

Agencies using this block may if they wish come to an agreement over common use of fields; but this is optional.

Notes on Field Contents

These fields may contain any information which is of local, as opposed to international, importance.

Related Fields, Indicators, and Subfields

All -9- and --9 fields throughout the format are reserved for national and local use; their definitions and indicator and subfield values remain undefined by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. This is also true of indicator value 9 and subfield \$9.

History

2024	Text edit.